

PHẠM ĐĂNG BÌNH

# ÔN LUYỆN TIẾNG ANH

DÙNG CHO

- \* HỌC SINH THI VÀO ĐẠI HỌC VÀ CAO ĐẲNG
- \* HỌC SINH THI TỐT NGHIỆP PTTH



NHÀ XUẤT BẢN ĐẠI HỌC QUỐC GIA HÀ NỘI - 1997



PHẠM ĐĂNG BÌNH

# ÔN LUYỆN TIẾNG ANH

**DÙNG CHO:**

- Học sinh thi vào Đại học và Cao đẳng
- Học sinh thi tốt nghiệp Phổ thông trung học

NHÀ XUẤT BẢN ĐẠI HỌC QUỐC GIA HÀ NỘI - 1997



## LỜI NÓI ĐẦU

Trong đời chúng ta ai cũng phải trải qua những lần thi cử. Trong thi cử khó tránh khỏi hiện tượng ngẫu nhiên, may rủi.

Nhưng chúng tôi thiết nghĩ thất bại trong mỗi kỳ thi đều có nguyên nhân của nó. Có thể lúc vào phòng thi chúng ta thiếu tự tin? Có thể trong quá trình chuẩn bị chúng ta còn có chỗ nào đó chưa kỹ lưỡng? Có thể chúng ta chuẩn bị theo kiểu đóng tủ lệch? ... Lý do có thể còn rất nhiều, nhưng việc thành hay bại chủ yếu do bản thân chúng ta quyết định. Nếu chuẩn bị chu đáo và có quyết tâm vượt khó trong từng bước ngoặt của cuộc đời mình, nhất định chúng ta sẽ đạt được những điều mong muốn.

Với mong muốn giúp các em đạt ước mơ ngồi trong giảng đường đại học, chúng tôi đã mạnh dạn biên soạn cuốn “Ôn luyện tiếng Anh”. Chúng tôi hy vọng với phần lý thuyết ngắn gọn và các dạng bài tập điển hình, đa dạng các em sẽ có trong tay một cuốn cẩm nang giúp các em thành công trong các kỳ thi tiếng Anh.

Chúc các em may mắn và thành công.

**Phạm Đăng Bình**



## **CẤU TẠO SÁCH**

Cuốn sách này được biên soạn nhằm giúp các em học sinh tìm hiểu và vào các trường Đại học chuyên tiếng Anh hoặc các trường có yêu cầu học sinh phải thi tuyển môn tiếng Anh.

Sách giúp các em làm quen với các dạng bài thi tiếng Anh phổ thông nhất hiện nay và chuẩn bị cho các em đầy đủ các kiến thức và các kỹ năng cần thiết, giúp các em có thể làm được các loại bài kiểm tra tiếng Anh khác nhau, khi thi vào các trường đại học. Sách không những có thể sử dụng như là một tài liệu dùng để tự luyện thi mà còn có thể là một tài liệu tham khảo để các giáo viên PTT luyện thi tốt nghiệp và thi đại học cho học sinh.

Sách gồm có một số phần chính như sau :

### **Phần một**

#### **NHẬN XÉT CHUNG VỀ CÁC LOẠI HÌNH BÀI THI VÀO ĐẠI HỌC VÀ HƯỚNG DẪN CÁCH GIẢI**

Ở phần này chúng tôi muốn cung cấp cho học sinh một cái nhìn tổng thể về các dạng bài thi tiếng Anh phổ thông nhất và các trường đại học hiện nay. Trên cơ sở đó giúp cho các thí sinh biết được mình phải chuẩn bị những gì nếu muốn đạt kết quả cao trong các kỳ thi tuyển sinh.

Dựa trên kinh nghiệm giảng dạy lâu năm trong trường đại học chúng tôi muốn giúp các em một số mẹo để giải bài thi một cách nhanh nhạy và chính xác. Mặt khác giúp các em nhanh chóng hình thành các kỹ năng làm bài thi và nắm vững được những kiến thức cơ bản để có thể xử lý các loại bài tập khác nhau theo yêu cầu của từng trường.



## **Phần hai**

### **CÁC DẠNG BÀI TẬP**

Trên cơ sở nhận xét về nội dung và phương pháp kiểm tra, chúng tôi đã soạn ra một loạt hệ thống bài tập bổ trợ giúp cho các em có cơ sở luyện tập để có kiến thức và kỹ năng làm bài tốt trong quá trình luyện thi và thi. Các bài tập được chọn lọc cẩn thận và rất đa dạng tạo điều kiện cho học sinh có điều kiện tiếp xúc với các hiện tượng ngữ pháp khác nhau và các hệ thống chủ điểm phong phú.

## **Phần ba**

### **TÓM TẮT CÁC HIỆN TƯỢNG NGỮ PHÁP CƠ BẢN**

Để hiểu một cách sâu sắc hệ thống ngữ pháp tiếng Anh, đòi hỏi phải mất nhiều thời giờ và công sức tìm tòi, học hỏi mà với học sinh phổ thông, việc phân bổ thời gian cho bộ môn này thường bị hạn chế rất nhiều. Vì vậy với cuốn sách này, chúng tôi muốn giới thiệu một cách ngắn gọn những hiện tượng ngữ pháp cơ bản, điển hình thường hay xuất hiện trong đề thi vào các trường đại học giúp các em dễ ghi nhớ trong quá trình ôn thi. Phần tóm tắt ngữ pháp đều có ví dụ minh họa và những ghi chú cần thiết. Nếu trong quá trình làm các bài tập ôn luyện các em gặp khó khăn, các em có thể quay trở lại phần tóm tắt ngữ pháp để kiểm tra lại phần mình còn chưa nắm vững.

## **Phần bốn**

### **MỘT SỐ BÀI THI MẪU**

Trong phần này các em sẽ được làm quen với một số đề thi vào các trường đại học ở phía Bắc. Các đề thi này mới được ra trong thời gian gần đây. Mặc dù đã có những quy định thống nhất cho việc ra đề thi môn tiếng Anh cho các trường đại học của Bộ giáo dục và đào tạo, nhưng các trường đại học khác nhau đều ra các bài thi mang sắc thái riêng của mình để chọn các thí sinh phù hợp với yêu cầu đào tạo của từng trường. Chúng tôi muốn giới thiệu phần này để các em có điều kiện định hướng cho quá trình ôn tập của mình khi chọn các trường để dự thi tuyển.



## HƯỚNG DẪN SỬ DỤNG

**Đối với giáo viên :** Khi luyện thi cho học sinh, giáo viên có thể sử dụng từng phần trong sách để ra các bài tập cho học sinh nhưng khi học sinh sắp đến thời gian thi, giáo viên nên chọn từng phần bài tập một số phần nhất định để tạo ra một loạt câu để thi có thời gian làm bài là 180 phút, sau đó cho học sinh làm để các em quen với một bài thi tổng hợp và biết cách phân phối thời gian làm bài thi.

**Đối với học sinh :** Trong khi sử dụng sách để ôn tập và luyện thi, các em có thể làm từng phần bài tập riêng lẻ, sau đó kiểm tra lại kết quả ở phần đáp án. Trong khi làm bài tuyệt đối không nên giở phần đáp án để xem câu trả lời. Nếu các em cảm thấy phần ngữ pháp chưa chắc chắn thì nên giở sang phần tóm tắt ngữ pháp để ôn tập lại trước khi làm bài tập.

## Phần một

# NHẬN XÉT CHUNG VỀ CÁC LOẠI HÌNH BÀI THI TIẾNG ANH VÀO ĐẠI HỌC VÀ HƯỚNG DẪN CÁCH GIẢI

Khác với loại bài thi của nước ngoài, các bài thi tiếng Anh vào các trường đại học của Việt Nam hiện nay không có phần kiểm tra kỹ năng nghe và nói, mặc dù đây là hai kỹ năng rất quan trọng trong khi học một sinh ngữ. Các bài kiểm tra tiếng Anh vào các trường đại học ở Việt Nam chủ yếu nhằm kiểm tra, đánh giá khả năng đọc hiểu, viết và kiến thức ngữ pháp chung của học sinh qua các phần sau :

### A. Ngữ pháp

Đây là một phần rất quan trọng trong đề thi ; điều này có thể thấy rất rõ khi chúng ta nhìn vào các đề thi đã được ra từ trước đến nay. Phần này bao gồm nhiều loại bài tập khác nhau và có tổng số điểm khá lớn. Một trong những nguyên nhân khiến cho phần này được chú trọng như vậy trong các bài thi kiểm tra hiện nay là do sự thay đổi chậm trễ trong quan niệm về việc kiểm tra đánh giá, mặt khác việc ra bài kiểm tra theo kiểu này dễ dàng hơn cho việc ra đề thi và chấm thi. Phần kiểm tra ngữ pháp này rất dễ nếu các em nắm chắc được các phần ngữ pháp đã được học và làm quen với các dạng bài tập liên quan đến các phần đó, trái lại nó sẽ trở thành rất khó nếu phần lý thuyết và bài tập chúng ta nắm lơ mơ. Qua nghiên cứu các loại bài thi tiếng Anh vào đại học trong nhiều năm, chúng tôi thấy các dạng bài tập dưới đây hay được sử dụng để kiểm tra kiến thức ngữ pháp chung của các thí sinh :

#### Dạng 1: Hãy cho dạng đúng của động từ trong ngoặc

1. Look. It (rain). *It's raining*
2. By this time last week, they (visit) Ha Long Bay. *visited*
3. I (finish) the book before my next birthday.
4. He (wake) if you spoke louder.
5. Some animals (not eat) during the winter.



Để làm bài tập này, các em phải nắm được các cách sử dụng thời trong tiếng Anh.

Câu 1 động từ phải có dạng : *is raining* vì hành động đang xảy ra.

Câu 2 động từ phải có dạng : *had visited* vì hành động đã xảy ra và hoàn thành trước một thời điểm ở quá khứ.

Câu 3 động từ phải có dạng *shall have finished* vì động từ sẽ xảy ra và hoàn thành trước một thời điểm ở tương lai.

Câu 4 động từ phải có dạng *would wake* vì đây là thời của động từ trong câu điều kiện ở hiện tại.

Câu 5 động từ phải có dạng *do not/ don't eat* vì đây là một thực tế.

## **Dạng 2 : Viết lại những câu sau theo hướng dẫn trong ngoặc**

1. The children have spent all their money at the fair ( chuyển sang câu bị động)

2. Paul informed us about his success. (chuyển sang câu bị động)

3. Do you feel comfortable in here ? The receptionist asked (chuyển sang câu gián tiếp)

4. Morris asked what it was about (chuyển sang câu trực tiếp)

5. She lived in that house. It has been sold. (Chuyển thành câu phức dùng từ nối).

6. He never saw it (chuyển sang câu nhấn mạnh với never ở đầu câu).

7. The people are injured. They go to court to prove their case. (chuyển thành câu phức dùng who).

Dạng bài tập này không chỉ kiểm tra kiến thức ngữ pháp đơn thuần mà nó kiểm tra luôn cả kỹ năng viết của thí sinh. Vì vậy khi làm bài tập kiểu này các em cần đọc đề bài thật kỹ và nhấp cẩn thận trước khi viết vào bài thi để tránh những sai sót đáng tiếc.

Câu 1 và câu 2 đòi hỏi kiến thức về thể bị động và phải chuyển như sau :

1. All their money at the fair has been spent ( by the children).

2. We were informed about his success by Paul.

Câu 3 và 4 đòi hỏi kiến thức ngữ pháp về câu gián tiếp và chuyển như sau :

3. The receptionist asked me / us if/ whether I/we felt comfortable in there.

4. "What is it about ?" Morris asked.

Câu 5 đòi hỏi kiến thức về câu phức hợp dùng đại từ quan hệ và phải chuyển như sau :

5. She lived in that house which has been sold.

Câu 6 đòi hỏi sự hiểu biết về trật tự từ trong câu đó. Câu này được chuyển như sau :

6. Never did he see it.

Câu 7 giống câu 5 phải chuyển như sau :

7. The people who go to court to prove their case are injured.

## B. Ngữ âm

Nếu đem so sánh với các phần khác trong bài kiểm tra thì đây là phần ít được quan tâm nhất và có vai trò mờ nhạt nhất. () phần này người ra đề thi muốn kiểm tra kiến thức về ngữ âm và phát âm của học sinh bằng cách đưa ra một số từ trong đó có một từ có cách phát âm khác, học sinh phải chọn ra được từ có cách phát âm khác đó.

Ví dụ :

1. ☒ a. few      b. new      ✓ c. threw      d. knew

2. a. nicest      b. largest      c. hottest      ☒ d. best.

3. a. bare      b. dare      ☒ c. care      ~~d. car.~~

4. ☒ a. can      b. cell      c. sell      d. felt

Để làm bài tập này, các em cần đọc đúng các từ trong khi học trên lớp và học cách tự đọc các từ mới trong từ điển qua các phần phiên âm quốc tế. Nếu nắm vững được cách đọc của các từ các em

sẽ thấy câu 1 có từ threw đọc khác. Câu 2 có từ best. Câu 3 có car. Câu 4 có từ can.

### C. Từ vựng

Phần này nhằm mục đích kiểm tra cách sử dụng từ đồng nghĩa, trái nghĩa, cách cấu tạo từ, việc sắp xếp từ theo điểm của thí sinh. Các dạng bài tập cho phần này cũng rất đa dạng và phong phú. Dưới đây là một số bài tập phổ biến chúng ta thường thấy trong các bài thi đại học.

**Dạng 1: Tìm một từ thích hợp để kết thúc mỗi câu sau**

1. A typist usually works in an. . . . .
2. A saleswoman usually works in a. . . . .
3. I didn't mean to do it. I did it by. . . . .
4. Your order is not ready yet. You are out of. . . . .

**Dạng 2 : Hãy chọn từ đồng nghĩa thích hợp để điền chỗ bỏ trống**

1. 

give	offer
similar	. . . . .

- a. same                      b. friendly  
c. exact                     d. shameful

2. 

Test	examination
annual	. . . . .

- a. yearly                    b. year  
c. timely                   d. monthly

**Dạng 3 : Sắp xếp các từ theo chủ điểm**

Đất nước – Ngôn ngữ

- |               |            |            |             |
|---------------|------------|------------|-------------|
| 1. England    | 2. English | 3. Vietnam | 4. Russia   |
| 5. Vietnamese | 6. China   | 7. Russian | 8. Chinese. |

**ang 4 : Chọn từ trả lời đúng trong số A, B, C, D**

1. He couldn't. . . . . his father that he was telling the truth.

A. admit      B. confide      C. trust      D. convince

His answer was so confused that I could hardly make any. . . . . of it at all.

A. meaning      B. interpretation

C. intelligibility      D. sense.

This book gives a brief. . . . . of the history of the University.

A. reference      B. outline

C. article      D. research.

My passport. . . . . last month, so I will have to get a new one.

A. ended      B. elapsed      C. expired      D. researched

If the tiger had got away from its cage, it could. . . . . have killed or injured many people.

A. equally      B. both      C. severely      D. well.

**ang 5 : Chọn đúng dạng của từ cho sẵn để hoàn chỉnh câu**

The thing I hate about John is his. *unreliability* (m)  
(unreliable)

It was complete. . . *failure* . . . . . due to poor planning  
(fail)

She upset him with a. . . *tactless* . . . . . remark about his nose  
(tact)

We love him for his. *honesty* . . . . .  
(honest)

Để làm tốt các bài tập ở phần từ vựng các em phải nắm nghĩa của các từ trong khi học và cách sử dụng chúng trong các ngữ cảnh khác nhau. Khi học từ cần chú ý các dạng khác nhau của



cùng một từ, có như vậy chúng ta mới có điều kiện để làm phong phú vốn từ vựng tiếng Anh của mình. Chẳng hạn, khi làm bài thi ở dạng 1, để chọn đúng từ, các em phải đọc hiểu cả câu rồi mới suy luận ra được từ cần phải tìm, vì vậy bài thi này không chỉ đơn thuần kiểm tra vốn từ vựng đơn lẻ của các em mà nó được dùng để kiểm tra cả kỹ năng đọc hiểu nữa. Khi làm bài tập dạng 4 và 5 các em cũng gặp phải yêu cầu tương tự như vậy. Nhưng riêng ở phần 5 yêu cầu kiểm tra khó hơn và điểm số dành cho phần này cũng cao hơn. Để làm được các bài tập ở phần 5 các em không những phải hiểu được câu văn mà còn phải tìm ra được dạng thích hợp của từ cho sẵn. Một từ có thể có nhiều dạng khác nhau, vì vậy trong khi làm bài nếu không cẩn thận chúng ta sẽ bị nhầm lẫn. Ví dụ, khi làm câu 3 của dạng 5 chúng ta thấy từ *tact* có những dạng sau : *tactful*, *tactless*. Nếu không đọc kỹ câu văn các em có thể tưởng rằng điền từ nào vào chỗ trống cũng được vì chúng đều là tính từ. Nhưng từ *upset* trong câu cho thấy chúng ta phải chọn từ *tactless* mới phù hợp.

Dưới đây là đáp án cho các bài tập từ vựng từ dạng 1 đến dạng 5 :

Dạng 1 : 1. office 2. shop 3. chance 4. stock.

Dạng 2 : 1. same 2. yearly

Dạng 3 : Đất nước : England, Vietnam, Russia, China.

Ngôn ngữ : English, Vietnamese, Russian, Chinese.

Dạng 4 : 1. b 2. d 3. b 4. c 5. d

Dạng 5 : 1. unreliability 2. failure 3. tactless 4. honesty.

### **D. Bài tập kiểm tra kỹ năng**

Kỹ năng đọc hiểu và kỹ năng viết là hai kỹ năng được chú trọng nhất trong các bài thi tiếng Anh vào các trường đại học hiện nay. Nhìn chung, về mặt dạng bài chúng ta thấy không có sự khác biệt nhiều lắm giữa các trường đại học, nhưng về mặt nội dung có nhiều điểm khác nhau. Điểm khác nhau mà chúng ta có thể thấy rõ nhất là mức độ khó của các bài đọc và bài viết giữa các trường. Chính vì vậy việc nắm vững các yêu cầu kiểm tra để làm bài cho tốt là hết sức cần thiết. Chúng tôi hy vọng các em sẽ tìm thấy ở phần hướng dẫn này những điều bổ ích và thiết thực.

## I. KỸ NĂNG ĐỌC HIỂU

### Dạng 1 : Đọc và điền từ thích hợp nhất vào chỗ trống

Manned space-craft travel at speeds of almost five miles a second. But space-craft are slow (1). . . . . with the fastest traveler in the (2). . . . . universe-light. Scientists calculate that light travels 186,000 miles in a second !

Swift (3). . . . . it is, light takes time to cross interstellar space. Light from Sirius, a neighbouring star, travels for nine years to (4). . . . . us.

Because of the time light takes to travel the (5). . . . . of space, it is possible to "see" an event long (6). . . . . is has happened. In AD 1054, Chinese astronomers recorded the (7). . . . . of an object that (8). . . . . up the night sky. They were seeing an exploding star. Yet scientists today calculate that the star (9). . . . . more than four thousand years ago. (10). . . . . the Chinese observers, we too may "see" happening vast distances away and long before our own time.

Đây là một bài tập khó vì nó đòi hỏi thí sinh phải có kỹ năng đọc hiểu tốt, kiến thức ngữ pháp chắc chắn và vốn từ vựng phong phú. Thí sinh có thể đoán đúng động từ hoặc danh từ nhưng dùng không đúng thời hoặc số thì vẫn không được tính điểm cho câu trả lời. Khi làm bài tập này các em nên đọc lướt từ đầu đến cuối để nắm chủ điểm và xác định thời của động từ trong bài. Trong quá trình đọc lướt nếu có chỗ nào các em có thể điền từ được ngay thì nên làm trước. Sau khi đã đọc nhanh một lượt, các em quay trở lại làm từng câu một. Trong khi làm các em nên chú ý dựa vào ngữ cảnh, các từ đứng trước và sau chỗ trống để tìm ra từ cần điền. Dạng bài thi này nói chung là khó và chiếm nhiều thời gian, vì vậy các em có thể tập trung làm các phần khác trước khi làm phần này.

Dưới đây là các từ cần điền vào các chỗ trống của đoạn văn :

1. compared

2. known

3. though/as

4. reach

5. distances

6. after

7. appearance

8. lit

9. exploded

10. like

## **Dạng 2 : Đọc một đoạn văn rồi trả lời các câu hỏi**

An English man living near Sheffield recently had a most unlucky day's fishing. He was standing on a low bridge when he had the misfortune to knock his tin of bait into the river. Leaning over the side of the bridge, he tried to hook the tin and pulled it out of the river. As he did so his car keys fell out of his pocket and disappeared in the water. Feeling thoroughly annoyed with himself and his luck, the fisherman leant over the bridge to try to see where his keys had gone. As he did so, the bridge collapsed and he fell into the river. This was the last straw. The fisherman crawled out of the river and went back to his car. There he discovered that he had locked the doors and he could not get in. His anti-thief lock had immobilized his car. There was nothing left for him to do but walk sadly home.

### **Câu hỏi :**

1. How did the tin of the bait get into the river ?
2. When did the fisherman first lean over the bridge ?
3. What made him fall into the river ?
4. How did he get home ?
5. What do you think is the best title for the passage ?

Dạng bài tập này dễ làm hơn so với dạng trước, nhưng khi làm các em nên viết câu trả lời cho cẩn thận và lưu ý đến thời của động từ trong câu trả lời. Các phần gạch chân sẽ giúp các em trả lời được câu hỏi từ 1 đến 4. Riêng câu 5 các em phải hiểu ý của cả bài và tự đặt ra một đầu đề cho đoạn văn. Các em có thể tìm lấy ý trong bài hoặc tự đặt ra một tựa đề dùng từ ngữ mà mình biết, với điều kiện tựa đề đó phải nêu lên được ý chính của cả bài. Trong bài đọc này các em có thể lấy tựa đề : An unlucky fishing days hoặc Misfortune never comes single.

### **ạng 3 : Sắp xếp câu thành một bài hội thoại hoàn chỉnh**

Muốn làm bài tập này tốt các em cần chú ý đến thời gian xảy ra của các sự kiện, các dạng câu hỏi đáp của từng câu. Có như vậy mới có thể tìm ra mối liên kết của các câu trong cả bài hội thoại.

1. Yes, we're catching the 8.30 train
2. Thanks. Same to you.
3. Thanks, I'll send you a card the moment we arrive there.
4. So you are off to Weymouth on Saturday.
5. I hope you have a nice holiday and a good rest.
6. Well all the best if I don't see you before you leave.

Sau khi đọc toàn bộ các câu trong hội thoại, các em có thể xếp các câu theo trật tự như sau : 4-1-5-2-6-3.

### **ạng 4 : Sắp xếp câu thành một đoạn văn hợp lý**

(1) It was raining. (2) He was lying on the ground badly injured. (3) An ambulance car was called and the injured man was taken to hospital. (4) On 29 June 1995, John, a worker was working twenty feet above the ground. (5) He slipped on the wet platform. (6) At 2.45 his workmates found him. (7) He fell against the safety rail but it was loose.

Khi làm bài tập này các em nên đọc cả bài từ đầu đến cuối để nắm các mốc của sự kiện. Các mốc này có thể là thời gian, có thể là trình tự diễn ra của hành động. . . v. v. Trong bài này sau khi đọc một lượt chúng ta thấy các sự kiện xảy ra theo trình tự của hành động như sau : 4-1-5-7-6-2-3.

### **ạng 5 : Đọc và dịch một đoạn văn trong bài**

Dịch sang tiếng Việt đoạn văn sau :

For my part I could easily do without the post office. I think there are very few important communications made through it. To speak critically, I never received more than one or two letters in my life that were worth the postage. And I am sure that I never read any memorable news in a newspaper. If we read of one man robbed, or murdered or killed by accident, or one house was burnt



or one vessel wrecked, or one cow run over the Western rail road or one mad dog killed we never need read of another. One enough. If you are acquainted with the principle what do you care for ten thousand instances and applications ? To a philosopher news, as it is called, is gossip, and those who edit and those who read it are old women over their tea. There was such a rush, I have heard, the other day at one of the newspaper offices to learn the latest foreign news, that several plate glass windows were broken by the pressure, yet it was news which I seriously think a clever man might write a year or twelve years before and with sufficient accuracy.

### **Bài dịch :**

Về phần mình, tôi có thể sống thoải mái không cần đến báo điện. Tôi nghĩ rằng có rất ít thông tin được chuyển qua đó. Nhưng một cách nghiêm túc, trong đời tôi chưa bao giờ nhận được nhiều hơn hai lá thư xứng đáng với tiền tem thư. Và tôi chắc rằng tôi chưa bao giờ đọc một cái tin đáng ghi nhớ nào trên báo cả. Nếu như chúng ta đọc về một người bị cướp, hoặc bị giết, hoặc chết trong một tai nạn, hoặc một ngôi nhà bị cháy, một con tàu bị đắm, hoặc một chú bò bị cán chết trên đường xe lửa miền tây, hoặc một con chó đại bị giết, chúng ta không cần đọc một tin nào khác. Chỉ một là đủ. Nếu bạn quen với nguyên tắc cần quan tâm đến cái gì trong hàng vạn sự kiện và các cách giải quyết. Đối với một trí tuệ gia, tất cả các tin tức, như người ta vẫn gọi, đều là sự lượm lặt còn những người tạo ra và đọc nó vào lúc uống trà đều là các ông già. Tôi được biết hôm kia tại một tòa soạn báo có sự chen lấn xô đẩy để lấy tin mới nhất của nước ngoài đến nỗi một số ô cửa kính đã bị vỡ - thế nhưng đó là một tin, tôi thật sự cho rằng mình đúng, khi nghĩ rằng một người thông minh nào đó có thể đã vì cách đây một hoặc mười năm về trước.

## KĨ NĂNG VIẾT

**ng 1: Viết câu hoàn chỉnh dựa vào các từ gợi ý**

1. go/work/by bus//
2. return/little house/after/years away//
3. if/left home/7 o'clock/(miss)/first bus//
4. my/teacher/help/get over/difficulties//
5. up/that moment/John/(not have)/doubt//

Bài tập dạng này vừa kiểm tra kĩ năng viết câu hoàn chỉnh, vừa kiểm tra kiến thức về ngữ pháp. Vì vậy khi làm bài các em lưu ý các động từ để trong ngoặc, các dạng câu, sự hợp thời... có thể tạo ra các câu vừa có ý nghĩa vừa đúng ngữ pháp. Các em trên có thể viết hoàn chỉnh lại như sau :

1. I(you/they/we) go to work by bus.
2. I(you/we/they) return to my (your/our their) little house after having been many years away.
3. If (I) left home at 7 o'clock (I) wouldn't miss the first bus.
4. My teacher helps me (to) get over the difficulties.
5. Up to that moment John didn't have any doubt.

**ng 2 : Viết lại câu sao cho nghĩa câu không thay đổi**

1. Look at the time ! We ought to be in bed.

It's time we .....

2. "I'm not frightened," he said ; in fact he was terrified.

He pretended not .....

3. If you aren't going to the party, I won't go.

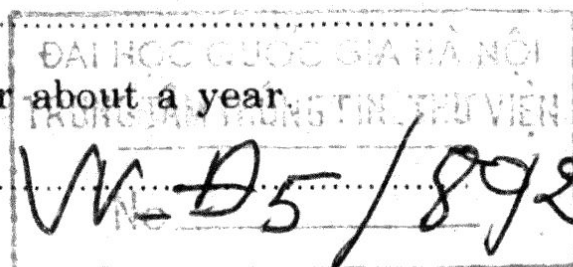
Unless .....

4. Why didn't you tell me about this yesterday ?

You should .....

5. I haven't seen them for about a year

It's .....



Dạng bài tập này khó hơn so với dạng bài ở trên vì nó không chỉ kiểm tra kĩ năng viết mà còn kiểm tra cả kĩ năng đọc hiểu và kiến thức ngữ pháp. Để giải các bài tập thuộc dạng này các em cần lưu ý tới các mẫu câu và các hiện tượng ngữ pháp đã được học. Chẳng hạn đối với câu 1 các em cần lưu ý mẫu câu : It's time (we) Đây là một mẫu câu dùng để nhấn mạnh và các động từ sau chủ ngữ luôn dùng ở quá khứ vì vậy câu phải viết lại sẽ là *It's time we were in bed.*

Các câu khác có thể viết lại như sau :

2. He pretended not to be frightened ; in fact he was terrified
3. Unless you go to the party, I won't go
4. You should have told me about this yesterday.
5. It's about a year since we last met.

### **Dạng 3 : Dùng từ gợi ý để viết thư**

Dear Mr Carison,

1. Thank you/letter/which/arrive/first post/morning.
2. Perhaps / you / like / telephone / my secretary/ arrange appointment / next week.
3. I/be/usually/free/Tuesday / Wednesday/afternoon
4. Think/you/bring/plans/new office block/when/come ?
5. I/be/very interested/see/them.
6. Of course/it/be impossible/say anything/definite/yet.
7. So much/depend/what/it/cost/my company.
8. In/meantime/I look/forward/see/you/next week.

Yours sincerely,

John Brown

Loại bài kiểm tra này rất hay được các trường sử dụng vì nó dễ chấm và tương đối khách quan trong việc đánh giá và phân loại trình độ của thí sinh. Loại bài này kiểm tra toàn diện cả kiến thức ngữ pháp, từ vựng lẫn kĩ năng viết và đọc hiểu của thí sinh. E

im tốt bài tập này, các em cần đọc toàn bộ các câu trong thư để xác định nội dung thư, các mốc thời gian để xác định thời của động từ và các mẫu câu cần được sử dụng. Ví dụ, lá thư trên có thể viết lại như sau :

Dear Mr Carson

1. Thank you for the letter which arrived in the first post this morning.
2. Perhaps you like to telephone my secretary to arrange for the appointment next week.
3. I am usually free on Tuesday and Wednesday afternoon.
4. Do you think you can bring the plans of the new office block when you come ?
5. I'll (shall) be very interested in seeing them.
6. Of course, it is impossible to say anything definite yet.
7. So much depends on what it costs for my company.
8. In the meantime I look forward to seeing you next week.

Yours sincerely,  
John Brown.

#### **Dạng 4 : Viết thư theo yêu cầu**

Em là Quang Vinh, ở số nhà 315 Bạch Mai Hà Nội. Sáng nay em viết thư cho bạn em, David Thanh ở số 25, phố King, London WC4, Vương quốc Anh, để kể cho bạn nghe về một thay đổi lớn ở hành phố quê hương em.

#### **Chú ý :**

Bức thư trên phải có hình thức của bức thư viết bằng tiếng Anh dài từ 120 đến 150 từ kể cả ngày tháng và địa chỉ).

Dạng bài này yêu cầu các em phải nắm được bố cục của một lá thư viết bằng tiếng Anh. và thể hiện rõ khả năng viết của mình qua nội dung của thư. Đề bài này yêu cầu các em phải nêu lên lược một sự thay đổi lớn ở thành phố quê hương mình và giới hạn



số lượng từ vựng là 120 đến 150 từ. Nếu các em viết quá dài thì sẽ ảnh hưởng đến thời gian làm các bài khác trong đề thi và khi chấm bài các em có thể sẽ bị trừ điểm. Tất nhiên khi viết các em sẽ có rất nhiều ý hay, nhưng đây là bài thi vì vậy chúng ta nên chọn ra một ý nổi bật nhất và để viết cho mình thì kết quả thi sẽ khả quan hơn. Trước khi đặt bút viết các em nên đọc kĩ đầu bài và phác thảo ra một số ý chính. Dưới đây là thư mẫu.

Quang Vinh  
315 Bach Mai  
Ha noi

David Thanh  
25 King Street  
London EC4

15 Dec, 1995.

Dear David ,

I received your letter two weeks ago but I am too busy to write to you. In your letter you wanted me to tell you about the changes in Ha Noi.

You know there are a lot of changes that have taken place here since the day you left Vietnam. But I think the greatest change in Hanoi is the reconstruction of Hanoi in the renovation stage. The streets are clearer and more beautiful. Many new houses, hotels, restaurants and buildings have been and are being built. More shops have been opened. In the evening all the shops and hotels are brightly lit up. If you walk along the streets of Hanoi at night you will have the impression that you are walking in the forest of stars and lights. How wonderful !

There are many other things I want to tell you, but I must finish now. I hope in the next letter I'll tell you more about other changes in Hanoi. Please, write to me and tell me about your new house.

Yours sincerely,  
Quang Vinh

## Dạng 5 : Viết một bài luận ngắn theo chủ điểm

**Đề thi :** Hãy viết một bài hoàn chỉnh (từ 120 đến 130 từ) nói về lợi ích của việc nuôi các con vật làm cảnh trong nhà.

Viết luận nói chung là khó đối với tất cả các thí sinh. Hơn nữa, phải ngồi viết trong tình trạng căng thẳng khiến cho công việc trở nên khó khăn hơn rất nhiều. Để giúp các em giải quyết những khó khăn này chúng tôi thấy các em cần làm một số việc sau :

- Các em cần đọc đề bài cho kỹ rồi dựa vào sự hiểu biết của mình để nhanh chóng tìm ra ý chính.

- Tập trung vào một hoặc hai ý chính mà bản thân mình có đủ từ để phát triển thành đoạn. Lưu ý sự nhất quán của ý và các ví dụ minh họa trong khi viết các đoạn văn. Không nên viết đoạn quá dài vì thời gian viết bị hạn chế.

- Các câu văn nên ngắn gọn, xúc tích và phải đúng ngữ pháp. Nếu trong khi viết các em cảm thấy có từ hoặc mẫu câu nào mà mình chưa thật chắc chắn thì nên chọn cách diễn đạt khác tương đương, không nên quá gò ép ý làm cho câu trở nên gượng gạo, sai ngữ pháp.

- Sau khi viết xong các em cần đọc lại bài viết để kiểm tra lại xem có lỗi ngữ pháp hoặc chính tả nào không.

Với đề bài trên các em có thể viết một bài luận hoàn chỉnh như sau :

### ADVANTAGES OF KEEPING PETS

Pets have long been human beings' friends, many people keep pets because pets have many advantages. One of the prominent advantages is that pets provide their owners with company.

Many people consider pets as their relatives or friends. When they come home their dogs or cats come to greet them. Dogs usually bark "hello" and jump up to shake hands with their owners. Cats

are quieter. They only run here and there or rub their backs against the feet of their owners in order to show their feelings and

warmth. Many lonely people spend hours talking to their cats or dogs. When their pets are sick they are ready to spend a lot of money on medicine or other medical treatments. Many pet lovers even give their dead pets a burial ceremony like that of a human being.

In short, Pets have become very close to Man since it was given a place by the cave fire. They will become more and more useful to us if we know how to keep them properly.

### **Dạng 6 : Dịch sang tiếng Anh.**

1. Việt Nam là một dân tộc yêu chuộng hòa bình nên nhân dân Việt Nam đã và đang làm hết sức mình để gìn giữ hòa bình.

2. Kể từ khi công cuộc đổi mới bắt đầu, quan hệ quốc tế của nước ta không ngừng được mở rộng.

Dịch là một bài tập khó vì nó đòi hỏi ở người dịch không những kiến thức về ngữ pháp, từ vựng, lượng từ vựng phong phú mà cả vốn kiến thức chung và sự am hiểu tiếng mẹ đẻ. Vì vậy việc đánh giá kỹ năng viết qua dịch nhiều khi không khách quan. Lí do này khiến một số trường bỏ phần dịch Việt Anh trong bài thi viết.

Khi phải làm bài tập này các em nên đọc kỹ câu cần dịch một hai lượt. Sau đó tìm mẫu câu tiếng Anh tương đương về ý. Trong khi dịch các em nên lưu ý đến thời của động từ trong câu, giới từ, cách viết từ... Các em không nên dịch ghép từ.

Hai câu trên có thể dịch như sau :

1. Vietnam is a peace-loving nation, so the Vietnamese have been trying their best to safeguard peace.

2. Our international relations have been extended since the renovation process was initiated.

Phần hai  
CÁC DẠNG BÀI TẬP

A. CÁC BÀI TẬP NGỮ PHÁP

BÀI TẬP VỀ THỜI CỦA ĐỘNG TỪ

Dạng 1: Cho các động từ trong ngoặc vào đúng thời của chúng

1. (Come) What may, we will go ahead *applying*
2. We *suggest* that this applicant (apply) next year .
3. If you (teach) me, I *taught* would learn quickly .
4. Is it not time we (set) *are setting* our house on order ?
5. The committee *recommends* that the annual subscription (be) *is* increased to \$3 .
6. (Be) *is* that as it may, our expenditure is bound to increase *have come*.
7. Hello, Ann. The party last night was great. You should (come).
8. The speed limit is 30 miles an hour but Tom is driving at 50. He shouldn't (be) *was* driving so fast .
9. They *insisted* that we (have) *had* dinner with them .
10. She *demand*ed that I should (apologize) to her .
11. If it (rain), can you bring in the washing from the garden ?
12. It *was* necessary that every member (inform) *informs* himself of these rules
13. I wish I (be) dead .
14. He spoke to me as if he (be) *are* my father .
15. It's time you (be) *was* in bed .
16. I'd rather we (have) *having* dinner now .
17. If only I (listen) *listened* to my parents !
18. He behaves as though he (be) *was* a millionaire .
19. If we had enough, we could (buy) *buy* a tape-recorder .

20. Just imagine some one (be) following us <sup>would</sup>
21. If he had listened to me, he (make) that mistake <sup>wouldn't make</sup>
22. He never could (play) the piano <sup>would have</sup>
23. We (love) to go abroad if we had a chance .
24. Mustn't there (be) another reason for his behaviour <sup>is</sup>
25. It's raining. I'd better (stay) at home <sup>to stay</sup>
26. He demands every one (be) present on time <sup>is</sup>
- 27 "God (save) the Queen !"
28. I suggest that you (feel) over-tired .
29. If I were (feel) over-tired, I wouldn't go on .
30. We (hope) <sup>felt</sup> you could come and have lunch with us tomorrow <sup>hope</sup>
31. By the time we (stop) <sup>stopped</sup> we had driven six hundred miles .
32. It is highly desirable that every effort (be) made to reduce expenditure .
33. If the truth (be) known to any of you, it must be told to us all <sup>was</sup>
34. He wishes he (pass) the exams .
35. Suppose every word of this (be) true, what action would the committee wish to take ? <sup>was</sup>
36. Whatever (be) the difficulties before us, we must face them .
37. We have already decided that this meeting (be) adjourned until tomorrow . <sup>will</sup>
38. If the truth (be) known , there would be a public outcry <sup>was</sup>
39. They wish it (not rain) so much in England <sup>didn't</sup>
40. I'd go out if it (not be) raining <sup>wasn't</sup>
41. I (give ) you a cigarette if I had one but I'm afraid I haven't <sup>would</sup> <sup>didn't</sup>
42. If I (see) you when you passed me in the street, I would have said hello <sup>had</sup> <sup>seen</sup>



43. Do you wish you <sup>studied</sup> (study) science instead of languages ?
44. We might <sup>be</sup> (win) if we'd played better .
45. Should he fail the exams, I <sup>would</sup> (be) very sad .
46. We would rather (stay at home) than (attend) the wedding .
47. He advised that we <sup>to go</sup> (go) immediately .
48. Due to Jim's Robbies, Mary recommends that we should (buy) that book for him . <sup>to buy</sup>
49. (Convince) that they were trying to poison him, he refused to eat anything.
50. Don't worry ! We <sup>to give</sup> (give) you fifteen pounds now .

**Dạng 2 : Hãy chọn từ thích hợp nhất để điền vào các chỗ trống trong các câu sau:**

1. I ...to the cinema if it doesn't rain.
- a. go      ☒ (b) will go      c. had gone      d. went
2. It's a good thing father ... dead .
- a. will be      ☒ (b) be      c. is      ☒ (d) was
3. He ought to have let me ... he was going out .
- ☒ (a) to know      b. knew      c. knows      ☒ (d) know.
4. I ... everything I can to help you !
- a. do      ☒ (b) shall do      c. would do      d. had done
5. I'll have it... to you immediately .
- ☒ (a) send      b. to send      c. sending      d. sent
6. ...what I am saying ?
- ☒ (a) Do you understand      b. did you understand
- c. you understand      d. you understood
7. I wish I ... her
- a. am      b. be      c. will be      ☒ (d) were

8. It's 10 years since I last ... her .

- a. see      b. seeing      ☒ c. saw      d. have seen

9. When was the last time you... the garage ?

- ☒ a. cleaned      b. clean      c. have cleaned      d. are clean

10. Whose babies ... they are ?

- ☒ a. Do you think \*      b. have you thought  
c. Will you think      ☒ d. were you thinking

11. How did you feel when you ...in front of the class ?

- a. stand up      ☒ b. will stand up  
☒ c. stood up \*      d. are standing up

12. He suggests we ... to the cinema together .

- a. will go      b. went      ☒ c. are going      d. go \*

☒ 13. It's very dangerous. You ... careful .

- a. will be ^      b. be ^      ☒ c. have been      d. are

14. ... out of your home without getting legal advice .

- a. Do not move x      ☒ b. Not move  
c. won't move      d. Didn't move

15. Never ...the front door without looking through the peephole

- a open ^      ☒ b. have opened  
c. to open      d. opening

16. And now, please do... crying

- a. stopping      b. stopped      c. being stopped      ☒ d. stop

☒ 17. ...for instance, the new proposals for students loans .

- a. be taking      b. takes      ☒ c. take ^      d. taken \*

18. but ... for a moment that the automobile industry had developed  
at the same rate as computers .

- ☒ a. supposed      b. suppose      c. supposing      d. to suppose

9. Now, let's ... a typical poor country like Indonesia with a rich one like Canada .

- a. comparing   b. compares   c. compared   **(d) compare**

10. Let Phillip ... a look at it .

- a. had   **(b) has**   c. is having   d. have ,

11. So you admit something... wrong ?

- (a) be'**   b. would be   c. being   d. is ,

12. Will you tell Watson I... in a little late ?

- a.. had been '   b. am being   c. be   **(d) will be ,**

13. How dare you ...to me like that ?

- a. spoke   **(b) speak ,**   c. speaking '   d. to speak

14. Why don't we ...them what they want ?

- (a) give ,**   b. gave   c. to give   d. had given

15. How about ....this motorbike to go there ?

- a. use   b. using ,   **(c) to use**   d. uses

**ạng 3 : Gạch chân từ đúng để hoàn chỉnh câu:**

. Don't forget ( locking/to lock) the door before going to bed .

. You are expected ( knowing/to know) the safety regulation of the college.

. If I followed his advice, I ( will be/ would be) a fool .

. He describes the accident as if he ( saw/ has seen) it himself .

. He left us 3 hours ago. By now he must ( has been/ have been) at home .

. The mother looks at her son as though ( to say/ saying) something .

. Oh ! There is much remains (to do/ to be done) ! .

. He was so angry that nobody dared ( to come/ come) .

9. It seemed that a lot of things which we can do now couldn't (do/ be done) a hundred years ago .
10. If we had checked the petrol before we started, we (wouldn't stop/ wouldn't have stopped) here .
11. She would do this test easily if she (practised/ practise) more .
12. Tell me what you (see/ saw) at the village this morning .
13. He (doesn't stop/ hasn't stopped) eating since he arrived .
14. It's just struck midnight. It 's high time we (leave/ left) !
15. If only we (have/had) a phone ! I am tired of queuing outside the public phone box .
16. You (had/ have) better take off your wet shoes .
17. If only he (knew/ had known) then that the disease was curable .
18. My parents were very strict. They wouldn't let me (stay/stay) out late in the evening .
19. I bought a calculator. It didn't work. I wish I (didn't buy/ hadn't bought) it .
20. I have never read Shakespeare before . Now they make me (study / study ) it at school .
21. When I was small, I used to (going/ go) fishing with my brother .
22. When I first visited Britain, I couldn't get used to (driving/drive) on the left.
23. You needn't (did/ do) it again !
24. She insisted I (attended/ attend) her party .
25. I expect he (be/is) there by now.

## KEY

ang 1 :

- |                        |                                |
|------------------------|--------------------------------|
| come                   | 26. be                         |
| apply                  | 27. save                       |
| taught                 | 28. were feeling               |
| set                    | 29. feeling                    |
| be                     | 30. were hoping                |
| be                     | 31. stopped                    |
| have come              | 32. were                       |
| have been              | 33. be                         |
| had                    | 34. would pass                 |
| 0. apologize           | 35. were                       |
| 1. rains               | 36. be                         |
| 2. informed            | 37. be                         |
| 3. was/were            | 38. were                       |
| 4. was/were            | 39. didn't rain                |
| 5. were                | 40. weren't                    |
| 6. had                 | 41. would give                 |
| 7. had listened        | 42. had seen                   |
| 8. was/ were           | 43. had studied                |
| 9. buy                 | 44. have won                   |
| 10. was/ were          | 45. would be <i>will be</i>    |
| 11. wouldn't have made | 46. <sup>s</sup> stay, attend  |
| 12. play               | 47. go                         |
| 13. would love         | 48. buy                        |
| 14. be                 | 49. convinced/ being convinced |
| 15. stay               | 50. will give                  |



## Dạng 2 :

- |      |       |       |
|------|-------|-------|
| 1. b | 10. a | 19. d |
| 2. c | 11. c | 20. d |
| 3. d | 12. d | 21. d |
| 4. b | 13. b | 22. d |
| 5. d | 14. a | 23. b |
| 6. a | 15. a | 24. a |
| 7. d | 16. d | 25. b |
| 8. c | 17. c |       |
| 9. a | 18. b |       |

## Dạng 3 :

- |                           |                   |
|---------------------------|-------------------|
| 1. to lock                | 14. left          |
| 2. to know                | 15. had           |
| 3. would be               | 16. had           |
| 4. saw                    | 17. had known     |
| 5. must have been         | 18. stay          |
| 6. to say                 | 19. hadn't bought |
| 7. to be done             | 20. study         |
| 8. to come                | 21. go            |
| 9. be done                | 22. driving       |
| 10. wouldn't have stopped | 23. do            |
| 11. practised             | 24. attend        |
| 12. saw                   | 25. is            |
| 13. hasn't stopped        |                   |

**Dạng 4 : Cho các động từ trong đoạn văn vào đúng thời của chúng :**

1. Ronnie has had a busy day. He has been making a lot of preparations. He (1) ~~wake~~ (wake) up early, went to the rent-a-car office, and (2) ~~hired~~ (hire) a new car. Then, after a quick breakfast, he (3) ~~went~~ (go) to John's house, borrowed a long ladder, which he (4) ~~putted~~ (put) on the roof of the car, and (5) ..... (drive) to work. During his coffee break, he (6) ~~made~~ (make) a copy of certificate, and before he (7) ~~had~~ (have) lunch, he visited the bank and (8) ~~closed~~ (close) his account. After lunch, he just (9) ~~had~~ (have) the travel agent's book a hotel room.
2. I was walking along the deserted main street of a small seaside town in the north of England looking for somewhere to make a phone call. My car (1) ..... (break) down outside the town and I wanted to contact the AA. The street (2) ..... (run) parallel to the sea and was joined to it by a number of narrow side streets. Low grey clouds (3) ..... (drift) across the sky and there (4) ..... (be) a cold damp wind blowing off the sea which nearly threw me off my feet when I (5) ..... (cross) one of the side streets. It (6) ..... (rain) for a long time.
3. When we talk about learning a language like English, Japanese or Spanish, we (1) ..... (speak) and (2) ..... (think) as though the language in question were a fixed unchanging thing. We (3) ..... (expect) to learn it as we learned geometry or how to ride a bicycle systematically, and with clear ultimate success. Many people subsequently (4) ..... (give) up when they discover that what a misconception this (5) ..... (be). In fact, they (6) ..... (embark) on an activity that could last the rest of their lives. The experience (7) ..... (make) them realize that they (8) ..... (not be) only go into to have to work hard indeed if they (9) ..... ( want) to succeed, but also that they are- in may cases- barely master of the language they (10) ..... (call) their own " mother tongue".

#### 4. A matter of luck

A visit to the national park is mainly a matter of luck. Some people (1) ..... (spend) as many as four days and see nothing at all, while others, in the space of a few hours, (2) ..... (see) most of what there is to see. I (3) ..... (be) one of the lucky ones, because when I was there on a two hour visit recently, I (4) ..... (manage) to see a great deal. There were many herds of deer and lots of wild bears. Elephants (5) ..... (wander) in a long grass or drinking at water-holes, and I (6) ..... (catch) sight of a fine leopard lying on top of a huge rock. A great crocodile (7) ..... (sleep) on the bank of a river, while a buffalo played happily in the thick mud. I (8) ..... (think) the reason for my good luck was that I (9) ..... (go) there just before dark on a cloudy day, which I am told is the time they (10) ..... (choose) for leaving their hiding-places.

#### 5. Hire purchase

The system of buying goods by purchase (1) ..... (become) very common during the first half of the twentieth century. Today, a large proportion of all families in Great Britain (2) ..... (buy) furniture and house hold goods by paying installments. In the USA, the proportion (3) ..... (be) much higher than in Great Britain. The price of goods bought in this way is always higher than the price that (4) ..... (be) paid in cash. One part of the price, perhaps one-quarter or one-third, is paid by the buyer before the goods (5) ..... (be) delivered to him. He then (6) ..... (make) regular payments, weekly or monthly, until the full price (7) ..... (be) paid. But if the buyer can not pay the installment at the fixed time, the goods (8) ..... (be) returned to the company.

#### 6. Many people who are in London (1) ..... (prefer) to live outside it, and to go to their offices, factories or school everyday by train, car or bus, even though this means they (2) ..... (have) to get up earlier in the morning and (3) ..... (reach) home later in the evening. One advantage of living outside London (4)

..... (be) that houses are cheaper. Even a small flat in London without a garden (5) ..... (cost) quite a lot to rent. Then in the country one can rest from the noise and hurry of the town. Even though one (6) ..... (have) to get up earlier and (7) ..... (spend) trains or buses, one can sleep better at night and, during evenings, one can enjoy the fresh, clean air of the country. If one (8) ..... (like) a garden, one can spend one's free time digging, planting, watering and one hundred other jobs which (9) ..... (be) needed in a garden.

The last time I went to London, I (1) ..... (not have) time to visit all the places I (2) ..... (want) to see. This time I hope to do better. I (3) ..... (be) able to find my way, of course, and I soon (4) ..... (get) to know where the main streets and the most famous building were. But I had no time to go inside and (5) ..... (have) a good look at them. I think I (6) ..... (spend) a day at Westminster. If I can (7) ..... (go) to the houses of Parliament of course, I can spend quite a long time in Westminster Abbey and (8) ..... (learn) about all the interesting things there. The parks (9) ..... (be) worth a longer visit too. I think the one I (10) ..... (like) best is Kensington Gardens, but they are all beautiful in their own way.

Sometimes dreams are frightening. Terrible creatures (1) ..... (threaten) and (2) ..... (pursue) us. Sometimes, in dreams, wishes (3) ..... (come) true. At other times we are troubled by dreams in which everything (4) ..... (be) confused. We are lost and can't find our way home. The world seems to (5) ..... (be) turned upside-down and nothing makes sense. In dreams, we (6) ..... (act) very strangely. We do things we never (7) ..... (do) when we are awake. We (8) ..... (think) and (9) ..... (say) things we would say. Why (10) ..... (be) dreams so strange? Where do dreams from?

There were many great names among the English writers at the beginning of this century. Most of them could be called "men of letters". That is, they (1) ..... (study) the great poetry

of the past. they would have become familiar with language like Latin and Greek. However, there was one writer who (1) ..... (know) very little of these things. the name of this writer (2) ..... (be) Herbert George Wells. He (3) ..... (write) books on many subjects. Some of his best were about simple foolish, eager young men such as he himself (4) ..... (be). In Kipps and history of Mr. Polly he (5) ..... (make) use of his own painful experience of growing up in a world that (6) ..... (be) hard on the poor. In Ann Veronica he (7) ..... (write) about love of men and women with an honesty that (8) ..... (upset) many people. But this too had a serious purpose. Wells (9) ..... (want) to change the marriage customs of his country to give couples more freedom.

10. Sigmund Freud (1) ..... (be) born about a hundred years ago. he was one of the great explorers of our time. But the new worlds he (2) ..... (explore) were inside man himself. For the unconscious mind is like a deep well, full of memories and feelings. These memories and feelings (3) ..... (be) stored there from the moment of our birth, perhaps even before birth. Our conscious mind (4) ..... (forget) them. We (5) ..... (do not suspect) that they are the unhappy or unusual experience that (6) ..... (cause) us to remember, or to dream. Then suddenly we (7) ..... (see) a face we (8) ..... (forget). We (9) ..... (feel) the same jealous fear and bitter disappointment as when we (10) ..... (be) little children.

11. These days, people who (1) ..... (do) manual work often (2) ..... (receive) far more money than clerks who (3) ..... (work) in offices. People who work in offices (4) ..... (be) frequently referred to as "white collar workers" for the simple reason that they usually (5) ..... (wear) a collar and tie when they go to work. Such is human nature that a great many people (6) ..... (be) often willing to sacrifice higher pay for the privilege of becoming white collar workers. This can give rise to curious situations, as it did in the case of Alfred Bloggs who



(7) ..... (work) as a dustman for the Ellesmere Corporation. When he got married, he simply (8) ..... (tell) his wife that he (9) ..... (work) for the Corporation. Luckily, Alfred has just found another job he soon ..... (work) in an office as a junior clerk.

2. It is not necessary to go abroad in order to learn something new about the world. In our own city, even in our own village, there (1) ..... (be) probably a great deal to be learnt, and certainly no one (2) ..... (see) all that is beautiful or interesting in his own country. We can usually see mountains that we (3) ..... (not climb) yet, and if we (4) ..... (reach) the top of one we shall see another in the distance. If we (5) ..... (walk) along the river, we (6) ..... (find) stream running into it and (7) ..... (wonder) where they (8) ..... (come) from. Every valley (9) ..... (give) us a new view. Even on a short walk we may see birds and trees and flowers of which we (10) ..... (not know) the names.
3. Smoking (1) ..... (cause) lung cancer. Lung cancer is the number one cancer among men. Ninety percent of the people who (2) ..... (get) lung cancer (3) ..... (die). Smokers have six times as much cancer of the mouth, tongue, and throat as nonsmokers. Smoking (4) ..... (give) people breathing problems. It also (5) ..... (harm) the stomach. Smoking causes one million yearly deaths in the world every year. Throughout the world, women (6) (live) longer..... Why ? Because men (7) ..... (smoke) more. All of these facts from research (8) ..... (show) that smoking is bad. So why people (9) ..... (smoke) ? Young people start smoking because everyone else (10) ..... (smoke). They feel grown up and independent.
4. In the relatively short span of twenty five years there has been an incredible evolution in the size and capabilities of computers. Today, computers smaller than the tip of your fingernail (1) ..... (have) the same capabilities as room-sized

machines of twenty five years ago. The first computers (2) ..... (be) developed around 1945. They were so large that they (3) ..... (require) special air-conditioned rooms. About twenty years later, in the 1960s, desk-sized computers were developed. This (4) ..... (represent) a gigantic advance. Before the end of that same decade, however, a third generation of computers, which (5) ..... (use) simple integrated circuits and which (6) ..... (be) even smaller and faster, (7) ..... (appear). In 1971, the first microprocessor less than one square centimeter in size, (8) ..... (be) developed. Today, electronic engineers (9) ..... (predict) that even smaller and more sophisticated computers (10) ..... (be) on the market before the end of this decade.

15. Language is one of man's most precious possessions. Without it, he (1) ..... (be) unable to exchange ideas with his fellow men. In the Middle Ages, Latin (2) ..... (be) the universal language. Most university classes were conducted in Latin, and all important documents (3) ..... (be) written in that language. Gradually, however, Latin (4) ..... (fall) into disuse, and by the 18th century, French (5) ..... (become) the language of diplomacy. Today, however, English is commonly used to transact international affairs. For this reason, English (6) ..... (be) referred to as a universal language.

There are various reasons why English (7) ..... (come) to occupy the important position it (8) ..... (do) today. The few dialects in English (9) ..... (give) an advantage of being a standard language. In addition, English has ambiguities that are found in many other modern tongues. This (10) ..... (make) it ideal for the transaction of business and international affairs.

16. Children's education is changing very rapidly today. In the past, teachers (1) ..... (make) children sit still for hours. The

made them memorise all sorts of things. Today, many teachers (2) ..... (wonder) if it (3) ..... (not be) possible to make children learn at all. They (4) ..... (say) they can only help them to learn. They say you must let children learn and discover things for themselves. For some children, school (5) ..... (be) a kind of prison. They are at school only because their parents make them go. They get out of the classroom as soon as the teacher (6) ..... (let) them leave. Many of them want to find jobs but the law (7) ..... (not let) them work until they (8) ..... (reach) a certain age. And so, they (9) ..... (have) to stay in school. Often they all (10) ..... (hate) every moment.

7. Today I'd like to begin a discussion on the problem of the heating up of the earth. First, we (1) ..... (touch) on the relationship between fluorocarbons and the ozone layer. You probably (2) ..... (remember) that the ozone layer (3) ..... (be) the protective shield around the earth. It is important to all life because it (4) ..... (filter) our harmful ultraviolet light from the sun. Ozone itself, a form of oxygen, is regularly made by the action of the sun in the upper atmosphere. It (5) ..... (be) also regularly destroyed by natural chemical processes. The problem now is that too much of the ozone layer (6) ..... (be) destroyed. Scientists (7) ..... (suspect) chemicals such as fluorocarbons, (8) ..... (contribute) to this depletion of the ozone. How we (9) ..... (use) fluorocarbon? The most common uses are in spray cans and automobile cooling systems. The chemical pollution from these fluorocarbons accounts for some of the ozone losses that (10) ..... (be) reported. There are now studies linking the sun itself to the depletion of the ozone layer.

8. My most embarrassing experience happened when I had just left university. I just (1) ..... (start) teaching in a Liverpool secondary school. One morning my alarm clock (2) ..... (not ring), (3) ..... (forget) to wind it up. I woke up at half past eight

and school(4).... (begin) at 9. I quickly washed, shaved, dressed, jumped into my car and(5).... (drive) to school. When I arrive the students already(6)... (be) in class. I didn't go to the staff-room but (7) ..... (go) straight into the class. After two or three minutes the students(8)..... (begin) laughing and couldn't know why. Suddenly I (9)... (look) down and understood I (10) ..... (put) on one black-shoe and one brown shoe.

19. Yesterday afternoon, Tom(1)..... (have) a letter from his sister, who lives in Canberra. He(2).... (not see) her since she (3)..... (move) to Australia. Through her letter, Tom knows that she is coming to England next year. If she (4) .... (come), she (5)..... (get) a surprise. Tom and his family are now living in a beautiful new house in the country. The house (6)... (be) completed five months ago. Tom (7)... (want) her to stay with his family. The house has many large rooms which are well decorated. He wants to show her everything he(8). (buy)recently. He thinks she (9).... (be)pleased to see the lovely garden behind the house. It is a very modern house, so it (10). (look) strange to some people. It must be the only modern house in the district.

20. Natural resources are the materials that we (1)... (need) to run our society. They (2).... (come) from the rocks, the oceans, and the tissues of the animals and plants that (3).... (live) on the Earth with us. These materials (4).... (be) used directly, or processed and shaped into household products, clothes, machinery, building etc. The thousands of different materials that we (5)..... (need) to maintain our standard of living can be classified into renewable and non-renewable resources. The former (6).... (include) cotton, trees, rubber, animals and cellulose. With proper management, such resources (7)..... (be) available for man's use indefinitely for example as long as sufficient water, food and care (8)..... (be) made available. Animal populations such as sheep and cattle (9) ..... (be) able to grow and reproduce.

## KEY

- |                   |                   |                     |
|-------------------|-------------------|---------------------|
| 1. Woke           | 2. hired          | 3. went             |
| 4. put            | 5. drove          | 6. made             |
| 7. had            | 8. closed         | 9. had              |
| 1. had broken     | 2. ran            | 3. were drifting    |
| 4. was            | 5. was crossing   | 6. had been raining |
| 1. speak          | 2. think          | 3. expect           |
| 4. give           | 5. is             | 6. have embarked    |
| 7. makes          | 8. are not        | 9. want             |
| 10. call          |                   |                     |
| 1. spend          | 2. will see       | 3. am               |
| 4. managed        | 5. were wandering | 6. caught           |
| 7. was sleeping   | 8. will be        | 9. went             |
| 10. choose.       |                   |                     |
| 5. 1. became      | 2. buy            | 3. is               |
| 4. would be paid  | 5. are            | 6. makes            |
| 7. has been       | 8. are            |                     |
| 6. 1. prefer      | 2. have           | 3. reach            |
| 4. is             | 5. costs          | 6. has              |
| 7. spends         | 8. likes          | 9. are              |
| 7. 1. didn't have | 2. wanted         | 3. was              |
| 4. got            | 5. have           | 6. shall/will spend |
| 7. shall/will go  | 8. learn          | 9. are              |
| 10. like          |                   |                     |
| 8. 1. threaten    | 2. pursue         | 3. come             |
| 4. is             | 5. have been      | 6. act              |
| 7. would never do | 8. think          | 9. say              |
| 10. are           |                   |                     |



- |                          |                   |                    |
|--------------------------|-------------------|--------------------|
| 9. 1. would have studied |                   | 2. knew            |
| 3. was                   | 4. wrote          | 5. had been        |
| 6. made                  | 7. was            | 8. wrote           |
| 9. upset                 | 10. wanted        |                    |
| 10. 1. was               | 2. explored       | 3. have been       |
| 4. has forgotten         | 5. do not suspect | 6. causes          |
| 7. see                   | 8. have forgotten | 9. feel            |
| 10. were                 |                   |                    |
| 11. 1. do                | 2. receive        | 3. work            |
| 4. are                   | 5. wear           | 6. are             |
| 7. worked                | 8. told           | 9. worked          |
| 10. will soon be working |                   |                    |
| 12. 1. is                | 2. has seen       | 3. have not climb  |
| 4. reach                 | 5. walk           | 6. will find       |
| 7. wonder                | 8. come           | 9. gives           |
| 10. do not know          |                   |                    |
| 13. 1. causes            | 2. get            | 3. die             |
| 4. gives                 | 5. harms          | 6. live            |
| 7. smoke                 | 8. show           | 9. do people smoke |
| 10. smokes               |                   |                    |
| 14. 1. have              | 2. were           | 3. required        |
| 4. represented           | 5. used           | 6. were            |
| 7. had appeared          | 8. was            | 9. predict         |
| 10. will have been       |                   |                    |
| 15. 1. would be          | 2. was            | 3. were            |
| 4. fell                  | 5. had become     | 6. is              |
| 7. has come              | 8. does           | 9. give            |
| 10. makes                |                   |                    |

- |                         |                     |                  |
|-------------------------|---------------------|------------------|
| 16. 1. made             | 2. wonder           | 3. is not        |
| 4. say                  | 5. is               | 6. let           |
| 7. does not let         | 8. reach            | 9. have          |
| 10. hate                |                     |                  |
| 17. 1. will touch       | 2. remember         | 3. is            |
| 4. filters              | 5. is               | 6. is being      |
| 7. suspect              | 8. are contributing |                  |
| 9. do we use            | 10. have been       |                  |
| 18. 1. had just started | 2. did not ring     |                  |
| 3. had forgotten        | 4. began            | 5. drove         |
| 6. had already been     | 7. went             | 8. began         |
| 9. looked               | 10. had put         |                  |
| 19. 1. had              | 2. has not seen     | 3. moved         |
| 4. comes                | 5. will get         | 6. was           |
| 7. wants                | 8. has bought       | 9. will          |
| 10. looks               |                     |                  |
| 20. 1. need             | 2. come             | 3. live          |
| 4. are                  | 5. need             | 6. includes      |
| 7. will be              | 8. are              | 9. will continue |

## II. BÀI TẬP VỀ THỂ BỊ ĐỘNG

Dạng 1: Đổi các câu sau sang thể bị động.

- 1) A group of students have met their friend at the railway station.
- 2) They didn't allow Tom to take these books home.
- 3) The teacher won't correct exercises tomorrow.
- 4) How many trees did they cut down to build that fence ?
- 5) This well-known library attracts many people.

- 6) All students attended the meeting.
- 7) People say that he is intelligent.
- 8) He can't repair my bike.
- 9) Mary has operated Tom since 10 o'clock.
- 11) This is the second time they have written to us about this.
- 12) Mr. Smith has taught us French for 2 years.
- x 13) They didn't look after the children properly.
- 14) Nobody swept this street last week.
- 15) People drink a great deal of tea in England.
- 16) People speak English all over the world.
- 17) Tom was writing 2 poems.
- 18) She often takes her dog for a walk.
- x 19) How many lessons are you going to learn next month?
- 20) She didn't introduce me to her mother.
- 21) Someone had invented electric lights before I was born.
- 22) Farmers usually milk cows twice a day.
- x 23) He likes people to call him "sir".
- 24) People know that Japan produces a wide range of cars.
- 25) Our teacher used to bid us talk in class.
- 26) Don't let other see you.
- 27) Workers were digging a large hole in the ground.
- 28) Before they took exams they had revised their lessons.
- 29) The car knocked a woman down in the street.
- 30) When he came home his father was reading a newspaper.
- 31) Cows were eating grass on the meadow.
- 32) My cousin will meet you at the station.

- 33) She is running her own company.
- 34) Visitors must leave umbrellas and raincoats in the cloakroom.
- 35) My mother used to make us clean the house.
- 36) John hasn't finished his homework.
- 37) They suggested banning advertisements on TV.
- 38) I will shut the door if you like.
- 39) We have just seen a horrible accident.
- 40) What language do people speak in this country ?
- 41) At 7 p.m., Mrs. Smith was making cakes.
- 42) He isn't going to buy that house.
- 43) When I was 18 years old my parents didn't allow me to go out in the evening.
- 44) This terrorist has kept 3 hostages for a week.
- 45) He hasn't seen you for years.
- 46) The examiner will read the passage 3 times.
- 47) An earthquake destroyed the town.
- 48) He didn't type the letter last night.
- 49) They will pick me up at my house.
- 50) When did you see him in that bank ?
- 51) My father will take me to Ho Chi Minh City next week.
- 52) A man returned the keys to me.
- 53) Mary will see her friends off at the station.
- 54) You were wearing your new hat when I met you yesterday.
- 55) He is preparing everything for the presidential election.
- 56) Last Friday when I came to Jane's house she had finished all exercises.
- 57) They will have to pull down that building.

✓ will have to be

- 58) He gave me a knife to cut this bread.
- 59) People usually steal a lot of goods from supermarkets.
- 60) Countries are finding a way to solve the problem.
- 61) He put the letter in the drawer, then he locked it up.
- 62) She can sew 3 shirts a day.
- 63) By the end of this year we will have learnt 2,000 English words
- 64) Don't ask for another book until you finish this one.
- 65) We consider that she is the best singer.
- 66) Nobody has used this room for ages.
- 67) Her father was planting different kinds of flowers in the garden.
- 68) I am translating an article from English into Vietnamese.
- 69) The Prime Minister is making a speech at the moment.
- 70) People said he had swallowed a safety pin.
- 71) How many days did she spend finishing the work ?
- 72) Someone is following us.
- 73) She read the letter again and again last night.
- 74) The doctor pulled out one of my teeth yesterday morning.
- 75) The tailor has just made a new suit for me.
- 76) Someone saw him pick up the gun.
- 77) He has caught a lion and shot 2 others.
- 78) He received a letter from home by the evening post.
- 79) I put the 5 pound note into one of my books yesterday.
- 80) After he had told a story, we clapped our hands.
- 81) His wife usually brings him sandwiches at lunch time.
- 82) They were continually asking question.



- 83) We have to pick fruit very early in the morning.
- 84) How many books do you give me ?
- 85) He always lost keys.
- 86) The light went out while I was making a cup of tea.
- 87) When she went to Barcelona she learnt some Spanish.
- 88) The State will assign our students to different jobs.
- 89) The Government launched the blood drive.
- 90) The students of chemistry made many experiments last week.
- 91) When will you do the work ?
- 92) My brother has sent me this interesting book.
- 93) She asked her mother to let her go.
- 94) He couldn't find his key.
- 95) She used to pull my hat over my eyes.
- 96) For the past years, I have done all my washing by hand.
- 97) A pair of robins have built a nest in the porch since last week.
- 98) The police haven't found the murderer yet.
- 99) They sold one of her own paintings at \$1,000.
- 100) I will put your gloves back in your drawer.
- 101) Have you seen Philip lately ?
- 102) When did you receive my letter ?
- 103) Mr. Speed is dictating 3 letters to Ann.
- 104) I found the book boring.
- 105) Jack felled a tree in the garden yesterday.
- 106) When I came back home my mother was preparing lunch.
- 107) The house was dirty because we hadn't cleaned it for weeks.
- 108) People say that they bought this shop last year.

- 109) He wants her to write an article.
- 110) My parents encouraged me to apply for this job.
- 111) A 70 - year old pensioner, Mrs. Parker, found a puma in her back garden.
- 112) A teacher should be a person that everyone can respect.
- 113) If I collected a lot of shells on the beach I would give you some
- 114) People believed that the policeman had saved many children from the fire.
- 115) European countries decided to put a high tax on petrol.
- 116) People say that the decision imposes tight restrictions on cross-border trade.
- 117) My sister often makes me do the washing up.
- 118) The policeman allows all vehicles to go when traffic lights are green.
- 119) Everyone believes him right.
- 120) We made her head of the class.
- 121) They were carrying the injured player off the field.
- 122) I like you to take photographs.
- 123) Haven't you yet found out information about the trains to Hanoi ?
- 124) Peter advised me not to sell this flat.
- 125) He urged the Government to pass the law.
- 126) She decided to paint her house blue.
- 127) My classmates used to call me John.
- 128) Mr. Brown will appoint Tom the director tomorrow .
- 129) You should pay more attention to your study.
- 130) He heard the bell ring.

- 31) Did anyone take English books away ?
- 32) The major ordered the soldiers to march.
- 33) Before we gave you our decision we had thought carefully.
- 34) Do people use milk for making butter and cheese ?
- 35) Did they build that house in 1972 ?
- 36) They didn't invite me to the birthday party.
- 37) The teacher will give her a prize if she works well.
- 38) People said that he could swim across this river.
- 39) The policeman showed you the way to Thule zoo.
- 40) He won't tell me the truth about the situation.
- 41) They can see the valley from the top of this hill.
- 42) All the students choose him the monitor.
- 43) You must wash your hands.
- 44) My favourite football team hasn't won many matches so far this season.
- 45) My father has used this bicycle for 5 years.
- 46) The government is taking measures to attract foreign investment.
- 47) Someone broke into her house last night.
- 48) How do you spend this amount of money ?
- 49) Pauld didn't tell me the ending of the story.
- 50) She needs English for her work.
- 51) Have you seen any good films so far ?
- 52) They didn't see you at the bus stop.
- 53) How did you break your leg ?
- 53) My dog is attacking the postman.
- 55) I couldn't catch any fish.

- 156) Mrs White was drawing diagrams on the blackboard.
- 157) Most of the boys listened to the teacher attentively.
- 158) She promised not to report me to the police .
- 159) I believed one of the dogs had discovered some cannabis.
- 160) The cashier used to do the accounts.
- 161) The computer can do all the accounts.
- 162) My dictionary doesn't give any example of this word.
- 163) The local council decided to rebuild the house opposite the college
- 164) She asked me to lend her £ 10.
- 165) She is going to buy a cookery book.
- 166) The policeman is sticking a parking ticket to the windscreen
- 167) All the tourist guides can speak at least 3 foreign languages
- 168) Mr. Nam gives lectures in universities everyday.
- 169) How do you make a survey ?
- 170) I found this baby bird at the foot of a tree.
- 171) She couldn't catch his name.
- 172) I needn't wind this watch.
- 173) They were watching her on closed circuit TV.
- 174) They can't carry the piano upstairs.
- 175) He often sends postcards to his mother.
- 176) Daisy is hanging all the washing out.
- 177) Why did people think Halloween was important ?
- 178) Why don't you write a novel ?
- 179) He saw you shopping.
- 180) Will you post this letter on the way to work ?
- 181) Children should treat old men with respect.

- 82) She is taking care of the baby girl.
- 83) He immediately accepted his guilt.
- 84) I am sure that I will prepare everything carefully.
- 85) I advise my sister to put her money box under the carpet.
- 86) How many ways can you solve this problem ?
- 87) He gave the magazine back to me.
- 88) Tom borrowed her book and lost it.
- 89) Someone turned on a light and opened the door.
- 90) Lan left her bag in the classroom.
- 91) Some students haven't submitted their assignments to the teacher on time.
- 92) They brought their children up in Italy.
- 93) After 10 minutes he will call us in.
- 94) They are repairing my piano now.
- 95) You must keep dogs outside shops.
- 96) The postman usually leaves letters in the hall.
- 97) You can't wear this shirt because it is very small.
- 98) The government is launching an anti - smuggling campaign.
- 99) He can speak 4 foreign languages.
- 00) She used to make cloth puppets.



## KEY

1. Their friend has been met at the railway station by a group students.
2. Tom wasn't allowed to take these books home.
3. Exercises won't be corrected by the teacher tomorrow.
4. How many trees were cut down to build that fence ?
5. Many people are attracted by this well-known library.
6. The meeting was attended by all students.
7. He is said to be intelligent.
8. My bike can't be repaired.
9. Tom has been operated since 10 o'clock.
11. This is the second time we have been written to about this.
12. We have been taught French by Mr Smith for 2 years.
13. The children weren't properly looked after.
14. This street wasn't swept last week.
15. A great deal of tea is drunk in England.
16. English is spoken all over the world.
17. Two poems were being written.
18. Her dog is often taken for a walk.
19. How many lessons are going to be learnt next month ?
20. I wasn't introduced to her mother.
21. Electric lights had been invented before I was born.
22. Cows are usually milked twice a day.
23. He likes to be called "sir".
24. Japan is known to produce a wide range of cars.
25. We used to be bid to talk in class.

26. Don't let yourself be seen by others.
27. A large hole was being dug in the ground.
28. Before they took exams their lessons had been revised.
29. A woman was knocked down in the street.
30. When he came home a newspaper was being read by his father
31. Grass was being eaten by cows on the meadow.
32. You will be met by my cousin at the station.
33. Her own company is being run by herself.
34. Umbrellas and raincoats must be left in the cloakroom.
35. We used to be made to clean the house.
36. The homework hasn't been finished by John.
37. They suggested that advertisements on TV should be banned.
38. The door will be shut if you like.
39. A horrible accident has just been seen.
40. What language is spoken in this country ?
41. At 7 p.m., cakes were being made by Mrs. Smith.
42. That house isn't going to be bought.
43. When I was 18 years old I wasn't allowed to go out in the evening.
44. 3 hostages have been kept by this terrorist for a week.
45. You haven't been seen for years.
46. The passage will be read 3 times by the examiner.
48. The letter wasn't typed last night.
49. I will be picked up at my house.
50. When was he seen in that bank ?
51. I shall be taken to Ho Chi Minh City by my father next week

52. The keys were returned to me.
53. Mary's friends will be seen off at the station.
54. Your new hat was being worn when I met you yesterday.
55. Everything is being prepared for the presidential election.
56. Last Friday when I came to Jane's house all exercises had been finished by her.
57. That building will have to be pulled down.
58. A knife was given to me to cut this bread.  
( I was given a knife to cut this bread).
59. A lot of goods are usually stolen from super-markets.
60. A way is being found out to solve the problems
61. The letter was put in the drawer, then it was locked up.
62. 3 shirts can be sewn a day.
63. By the end of this year 2,000 English words will have been learnt.
64. Don't ask for another book until this one is finished.
65. She is considered to be the best singer.
66. This room hasn't been used for ages.
67. Different kinds of flowers were being planted in the garden.
68. An article is being translated from English into Vietnamese.
69. A speech is being made by the Prime Minister at the moment
- ✓ 70. He was said to have swallowed a safety pin.  
It was said that he had swallowed a safety pin.
- ✓ 71. How many days were spent finishing the work ?
72. We are being followed.
73. The letter was read again and again last night.
74. One of my teeth was pulled out yesterday morning.

5. A new suit has just been made for me.
6. He was seen to pick up the gun.
7. A lion has been caught and 2 others have been shot.
8. A letter from home was received by the evening post.
9. The £ 5 note was put into one of my books yesterday.
10. After a story had been told, we clapped our hands.
11. He is usually brought sandwiches by his wife at lunch time  
(sandwiches are usually brought to him by his wife at lunch time).
12. Questions were continually being asked.
13. Fruit have to be picked up very early in the morning.
14. How many books are given to me ?
15. Keys were always lost.
16. The light went out while a cup of tea was being made.
17. When she went to Barcelona, some Spanish was learnt.
18. Our students will be assigned to different jobs by the State.
19. The blood drive was launched by the Government.
20. Many experiments were made by the students of chemistry last week.
21. When will the work be done ?
22. I have been sent this interesting book.
23. Her mother was asked to let her go.
24. His key couldn't be found.
25. My hat used to be pulled over my eyes.
26. For the past years, all my washing have been done by hand.
27. A nest has been built in the porch since last week by a pair of  
robins.
28. The murderer hasn't yet been found.
29. One of her own paintings was sold at \$1,000.

100. Your gloves will be put back in your drawer.
101. Has Philip been seen lately ?
102. When was my letter received ?
103. 3 letters are being dictated to Ann.
104. The book was found boring.
105. A tree was felled in the garden yesterday.
106. When I came back home lunch was being prepared.
107. The house was dirty because it hadn't been cleaned for weeks
108. They were said to buy this shop last week.
109. He wants an article to be written by her.
110. I was encouraged to apply for this job.
111. A puma was found in Mrs. Parker's back garden, a 70-year-old pensioner.
112. A teacher should be a person who can be respected by everyone.
113. If a lot of shell were collected some would be given to you.
114. The policeman was believed to have saved many children from the fire.
115. European countries decided that a high tax should be put on petrol .
116. The decision is said to impose tight restrictions on cross borde trade.
117. I am often made to do the washing up.
118. All vehicles are allowed to go when traffic lights are green.
119. He is believed to be right.
120. She was made head of the class.
121. The injured player was being carried off the field.
122. I like photographs to be taken by you.



23. Hasn't information about the trains to Hanoi been found out yet ?
24. I was advised not to sell this flat.
25. The Government was urged to pass the law.
26. She decided that her house should be painted blue.
27. I used to be called John by my classmates.
28. Tom will be appointed the director tomorrow.
29. Your study should be paid more attention to.
30. The bell was heard to ring.
31. Were English books taken away ?
32. The soldiers were ordered to march.
33. Before our decision was given to you we had thought carefully.
34. Is milk used for making butter and cheese ?
35. Was that house built in 1972 ?
36. I wasn't invited to the birthday party.
37. She will be given a prize if she works well. (A prize will be given to her if she works well).
38. It was said that he could swim across this river (He was said to be able to swim across this river).
39. You were shown the way to Thu Le zoo.
40. The truth about the situation won't be told.
41. The valley can be seen from the top of this hill.
42. He is chosen the monitor by all students
43. Your hands must be washed.
44. Many matches haven't been won by my favourite football team so far this season.
45. This bicycle has been used for 5 years.
46. Measures are being taken to attract foreign investment.
47. Her house was broken into last night.
48. How is this amount of money spent ?
49. I wasn't told the ending of the story.

150. English is needed for her work.
151. Have any good films been seen by you so far ?
152. You were not seen at the bus stop.
153. How was your leg broken ?
154. The postman is being attacked by my dog.
155. Fish couldn't be caught by me.
156. Diagrams were being drawn on the blackboard.
157. The teacher was attentively listened to by most of the boys
158. I was promised not to be reported to the police.
159. One of the dogs was believed to have discovered som cannabis.
160. The accounts used to be done by the cashier.
161. All the acoounts can be done by the computer.
162. No example of this word is given in my dictionary.
163. The local council decided that the house opposite the colleg should be rebuilt.
164. I was asked to lend her £ 10.
165. A cookery book is going to be bought.
166. A parking ticket is being stuck to the windscreen.
167. At least 3 foreign languages can be spoken by all the touris guides.
168. Lectures are given in universities everyday by Mr. Nam.
169. How is a survey made ?
170. This baby bird was found at the foot of a tree.
171. His name couldn't be caught by her.
172. This watch needn't be wound.
173. She was being watched on closed circuit TV.
174. The piano can't be carried upstairs.
175. Postcards are often sent to his mother.
176. All the washing is being hung out.

177. Why was Halloween thought to be important ?
178. Why isn't a novel written by you ?
179. You were seen shopping.
180. Will this letter be posted on the way to work ?
181. Old men should be treated with respect by children.
182. The baby girl is being taken care of.
183. His guilt was immediately accepted.
184. I am sure that everything will be carefully prepared.
185. My sister is advised to put her money box under the carpet.
186. How many ways can this problem be solved ?
187. The magazine was given back to me. (I was given back the magazine).
188. Her book was borrowed and lost by Tom.
189. A light was turned on and the door was opened.
190. Lan's bag was left in the classroom.
191. Assignments haven't been submitted to the teacher on time by some students.
192. Their children were brought up in Italy.
193. After 10 minutes we will be called in.
194. My piano is being repaired now.
195. Dogs must be kept outside shops.
196. Letters are usually left in the hall.
197. This shirt can't be worn because it's very small.
198. An anti - smuggling campaign is being launched by the government.
199. 4 foreign languages can be spoken by him.
200. Cloth puppets used to be made by her.

## Dạng 2 : Chuyển động từ trong các đoạn văn sang thể bị động

1. Some time ago, an interesting discovery (1)... (make) <sup>was made</sup> by archaeologists on the Aegean Island of Kea. A temple which stands in an ancient city on the promontory of Ayia Irini (2)... (explore) <sup>was</sup> by an American team. House-of three storeys high (3)... (build) <sup>was</sup>. The city even (4)... (equip) with a drainage system for a great many clay pipes (5)... (find) beneath the narrow streets. The temple that the archaeologists explored (6)... (use as a place of worship) from 15th century B.C until Roman times. In the most sacred room of the temple, clay fragments of 15 status (7)... (find). Each of these represented a goddess and (8)... (paint). <sup>was connected</sup>
2. Switzerland (1)... (connect) to Italy by the Great St. Bernard Pass. The famous monastery of St. Bernard, which (2)... (find) in the eleventh century, lies about a mile away. For hundreds of years, St. Bernard dogs have saved lives of travelers crossing the dangerous Pass. These friendly dogs, which (3)... (bring) <sup>had been</sup> first from Asia (4)... (use) as watch - dogs, even in Roman times. Now that a tunnel (5)... (build) through the mountains, the Pass is less dangerous, but each year, the dogs still (6)... (send out) into the snow whenever a traveler is in difficulty. During the summer months, the monastery is busy, for it (7)... (visit) by thousands of people who cross the Pass in cars.
3. 200 years ago, boxers fought with bare fists for prize money. Because of this, they (1) <sup>were known</sup> ... (know) as "prize fighters. However boxing was very cruel, for there were no rules and a prize fighter could (2) <sup>be</sup> ... (injure) or even (3) <sup>be</sup> ... (kill) during a match. One of the most colorful figures in boxing history was Daniel who (4)... (bear) <sup>was</sup> in 1764. The use of gloves (5) <sup>wasn't</sup> ... (not introduce) until 1860 when the Marquis of Queensberry drew up the first set of rules. In his day, Mendoza (6)... (adore) by rich and poor alike. <sup>was</sup> <sup>adored</sup>

When the brothers were re-united, Hans explained how it was that he was still alive. After (1)... <sup>have</sup> (wound) towards the end of the war, he (2)... <sup>more</sup> (send) to hospital and (3)... (separate) from his unit. The hospital (4)... (bomb) and Hans had made his way back into Western Germany on foot. Meanwhile, his unit (5)... (lose) and all records of him (6)... (destroy). Hans returned to his family home, but the house (7)... (bomb) and no one in the neighborhood knew what had become of the inhabitants. Assuming that his family (8)... (kill) during an air-raid, Hans settled down in a village.

Today, vegetables, fish, fruit, meat and beer (1)... (can) in enormous quantities. Within 3 generations, the eating habits of million (2)... (revolutionize). Foods that were previously seasonal may now (3)... (eat) at any time, and strange foods are available far from the countries where they (4)... (grow). The profitable crops many farmers now produce often depend on the proximity of a canning factory. The first stage in the canning process is the preparation of the raw food. Diseased and waste portions (5)... (throw away) ; meat and fish (6)... (clean) and (7)... (trim), fruit and vegetable (8)... (wash) and (9)... (grade) for size.

Any animal skin can (1)... (make) into leather but the skins which chiefly (2)... (use) come from cattle, sheep goats, pigs and horses. To a lesser extent the skins from dogs, deer, reptiles, marine animals, fish and birds also (3)... (use). Snakes, lizards, seals, whales and sharks all contribute to leather manufacture. Some skins (4)... (make) into leather after the hair or wool (5)... (remove) ; but the skins of the fur - bearing animals or sometimes of sheep, lambs and ponies (6)... (process) or (7)... (dress) with the hair or wool still in place.

Many thousand of spectators gathered from all parts of Greece, but no married woman (1)... (admit) even as a spectator. Slaves, women and dishonored persons (2)... (no allow) to compete. The evening of the third day (3)... (devote) to sacrificial offerings to



the heroes of the day, and the fourth day, that of the full moon (4)... (set aside) as holiday. On the sixth and last day all the victors (5)... (crown) with holy garlands of wild olive from sacred wood. Although Olympic winners received no prize money, in fact, they (6)... (reward) by their state authorities. In spite of the lengthy training, however, runners (7)... (know) to drop dead from strain at the winning post.

8. There are 3 principal ways articles may (1)... (make) of pottery. They may simply (2)... (shape) by hand. They may (3)... (throw) on the potter's wheel and (4)... (shape) against the spin with the fingers or some scraping tool. Thirdly, the wet clay may (5)... (put) in a pie shaped "form" of plaster of Paris. After the pot (6)... (make) they slowly (7)... (bake) in the kiln. This produces chemical changes in the clay which have a hardening effect. The time which (8)... (take) for firing pottery varies with the size of the kiln and the type of clay.
9. One of the most famous monuments in the world, the Statue of Liberty, (1)... (present) to the United States of America in the nineteenth century by the people of France. The great Statue which (2)... (design) by the sculptor, August Bartholdi, took ten years to complete. The actual figure (3)... (made of) copper supported by a metal framework which (4)... (constructed) by Eiffel. Before it could (5)... (transport) to the United States, a site had to (6)... (find) for it and a pedestal had to (7)... (build).
10. A Festival for the Dead (1)... (held) once a year in Japan. This festival is a cheerful occasion, for on this day, the dead (2)... (say) to return to their homes and they (3)... (welcomed) by the living. As they (4)... (expect) to be hungry after their long journey, food (5)... (laid out) for them. Specially-made lanterns (6)... (hung) outside each house to help the dead to find their way. All night long, people dance and sing. In the early morning the food that (7)... (laid out) for the dead (8)... (thrown) into the river or into the sea.

## KEY

1.

- |                      |                     |
|----------------------|---------------------|
| 1. was made          | 5. were found       |
| 2. was explored      | 6. was used         |
| 3. were built        | 7. were found       |
| 4. was even equipped | 8. had been painted |

2.

- |                       |                       |
|-----------------------|-----------------------|
| 1. is connected       | 5. has been built     |
| 2. was founded        | 6. are still sent out |
| 3. were first brought | 7. is visited         |
| 4. were used          |                       |

3.

- |               |                       |
|---------------|-----------------------|
| 1. were known | 4. was born           |
| 2. be injured | 5. was not introduced |
| 3. be killed  | 6. was adored         |

4.

- |                        |                       |
|------------------------|-----------------------|
| 1. having been wounded | 5. was lost           |
| 2. had been sent       | 6. had been destroyed |
| 3. was separated       | 7. had been bombed    |
| 4. had been bombed     | 8. had been killed    |

5.

- |                       |                |
|-----------------------|----------------|
| 1. are canned         | 6. are cleaned |
| 2. are revolutionized | 7. are trimmed |
| 3. be eaten           | 8. are washed  |
| 4. are grown          | 9. are graded  |
| 5. are thrown away    |                |

6.

1. be made
2. are chiefly used
3. are also used
4. are made

5. is removed
6. are processed
7. are dressed

7.

1. was admitted
2. weren't allowed
3. was devoted
4. was set aside

5. were crowned
6. were rewarded
7. were known

8.

1. may be made
2. may be simply made
3. may be thrown
4. be shaped

5. may be put
6. are made
7. are slowly baked
8. is taken

9.

1. was presented
2. was designed
3. was made of
4. had been constructed

5. could be transported
6. had to be found
7. had to be built

10.

1. is held
2. are said
3. are welcome
4. are expected

5. is laid out
6. are hung
7. had been laid out
8. is thrown

### III. BÀI TẬP VỀ CÂU GIÁN TIẾP

Dạng 1: Đổi các câu sau sang lối nói gián tiếp.

1. "I'm going out now, but I'll be in by nine", he said.
2. "I'm working in a restaurant, and don't care much for it", she said.
3. "I can't live on my basic salary", said Peter. "I'll have to offer to do over time".
4. "My younger brother wants to be a tax inspector", said Mary. "I can't think why. None of my family has ever been a tax inspector".
5. "We are waiting for the school bus", said the children. "It's late again".
6. "I've made a terrible mistake !" said Peter.  
"You're always making terrible mistakes." I said. "You should be used to it now".
7. "We've <sup>made</sup> make \$450 a week", said one of the men, "and send most of it home to our wives".
8. "It's lonely being away from our families", said another, "but we earn three times as much in this factory as we would in our own country".
9. "We've been here for two and a half years", said the man who had spoken first, "and we're going to stay another six months"
10. "I've got a job in an oil-rig", said Paul.  
"That'll be very hard work", I said.  
"I know it'll be hard," he replied, "but I don't mind hard work, and it'll be a good experience."
11. "The ice will soon be hard enough to skate on," said Tom.  
"I'll look for my skates when I get home," Ann said. \* \* \* \* \*

12. "I'm living with my parents at present," she said, "but I hope to have a flat on my own soon."
13. "I'm leaving tomorrow," she said, "by the 4.30 from Victoria."  
"We'll come and see you off," we said.
14. "I've just bought a car, " said Peter, "but it's not insured yet so I can't take you for a drive."
15. "I'd like to speak to Susan, " said Mary, "but I'm bathing the babies and they will drown if I leave them alone in the bath while I go to the phone."
16. "I'm coming up to London next week. I hope you and Jack will meet me for lunch one day ".Mary said
17. "Nothing ever happens in the village" she said. "It's like a dead village . All the young people have drifted away to the towns."
18. "I've missed my train,"said Bill. "Now I'll be late for work and my boss will be furious."
19. "We'll wait for you if you're late," they said.
20. "They are supposed to be landing at London airport." I said.  
"But if the fog gets any thicker the plane may be diverted."
21. " If you lend me the chainsaw," said Mary, "I'll bring it back the day after tomorrow."
22. "I hate getting up on dark mornings," grumbled Peter.  
"It is horrible, " agreed his wife, "but the mornings will be lighter soon and then it won't be quite so bad".
23. "The sales are starting tomorrow," said the typist. "As soon as we finish work we are going to make a dash for the shops".
24. "I wish I had something to eat," said Peter.
25. "If you're short of money I can lend you \$50, " said my aunt,  
"and you can take your time about paying it back."
26. "Who has been using my typewriter ?" said my mother.
27. "Do you want to see the cathedral ?" said the guide.

8. "Do you mean working on the night shifts ?" he asked.
9. "Would you like to come with us ?" they said.
10. "Who did you give the money to ?" asked Ann.
11. "How long does it take to get to Edinburgh by coach ?" asked the tourist.
12. "How much do you think it will cost ?" he said.
13. "What did you miss most when you were in prison ?" Mary asked the ex-convict.
14. "Have you been here long ?" the other students asked him.
15. "How long have you been learning English ?" the examiner said.

**Loại 2 : Đổi các câu sau sang lối nói gián tiếp nhưng vẫn giữ nguyên ý của câu.**

1. "Don't put sticky things in your pockets", said his mother.
2. "Please, please don't do anything dangerous", said his wife.
3. "Go on - apply for the job," said my friend. "It would just suit you."
4. "I should say nothing about it if I were you," said my brother.
5. "Would you please wait in the lounge till your flight number is called ?" she said.
6. "Don't lend Harry any money." I said to Ann. "He never pays his debts."
7. "Could you please ring back in half an hour ?" said the secretary.
8. "Would you mind moving your case ?" said the other passenger. "It's blocking the door."
9. "Remember to book a table" said Ann.
10. "Get into the right lane," said the driving instructor.
11. "Avoid Marble Arch," said the policeman. "There's going to be a big demonstration there."



12. "Hold the ladder," he said. "It's rather unsteady."  
"Why don't you tie it at the top ?" I said. "It's much safer that way."
13. "Read the question twice, " said the teacher, "and don't write in the margin."
14. "You'd better not leave your money lying about," said one of the students.
15. "Why don't you open a bank account ?" said Tom.
16. "Would you like to have lunch with me today ?" said Tom.  
"I'm afraid I couldn't ; I can't leave the office," said the girl.
17. "Don't take more than two of these at once, " said the doctor handing me a bottle of pills.
18. "I can't sell the cassette player at that price "He said.
19. "'I'd buy the big tin if I were you," said the grocer.
20. "You're being exploited," said the other au pair girls. "You ought to leave your job."
21. "Fasten your seat belts ; there may be a little turbulence, " said the air hostess.
22. "Don't drive through fog with only a fog light on, " he said, ' oncoming drivers may take you for a motorcycle."
23. " Could I see your driving licence ?" said the policeman.
24. "You'd better sweep up that broken glass," I said.
25. "The bathroom's empty now," she said. "Will you put the light out when you've finished ?"
26. "Remember to insure your luggage," my father said.
27. "Please don't drink any more," said his wife. "Don't forget that we have to drive home."
28. "Why Don't you go to a dentist, Tom, before your toothache gets any worse," I said.

29. "Why don't you cut your hair"? he said. "You'd find it much easier to get a job if you looked tidy".

30. "Could I have some more puddings, please." said the boy.

**Dạng 3 : Viết lại bài hội thoại theo lối nói gián tiếp.**

1.

\*Ann : What about having a party on Sunday ?

Mary : Yet, Let's. Who shall we invite ?

Ann : Let's not make a list. Let's just invite everybody.

Mary : We don't want to do so much cooking, so what about making it a wine and cheese party ?

Ann : Suppose we ask everybody to bring a bottle ?

Mary : Shall we hire glasses from our local wine shop ? We haven't many left.

2.

\*Ann : If it's warm, how about having the party in the garden ?

Mary : Why not have a barbecue ?

Ann : Why not ? We could ask Paul to do the cooking.

Mary : Last time we had a barbecue the neighbours complained about the noise.

Ann : Suppose we go round to the neighbours and apologize in advance this time ?

Mary : Why not invite the neighbours ? Then the noise won't matter.

Ann : What a clever idea ! Shall we start ringing everyone up tonight ?

3.

A : "I'm doing most of the work". I pointed out "What about giving me a hand ?"

B : "Let's leave the washing - up till tomorrow" he suggested,  
"I hate washing up last thing at night"

A : Oh, no I want you to do it now. Everything seems not to  
be tidy. Tomorrow morning, I have to go to work early".

B : "Why don't you ask Jane ? Maybe she'll help you".

4.

Tom : Would you like to come for a drive tomorrow, Ann ?

Ann : I'd love to. Where are you thinking of going Tom ?

Tom : Well, I'll leave it to you.

Ann : What about Stratford ? I haven't been there for ages.

Tom : Good idea ! We might go to the river if it's a fine day.

5.

Ann : I wonder what's on at the Royal Shakespeare theatre.

Tom : We'll find out when we get there. It's usually possible to  
get seats on the day of the play. Can you be ready by ten ?

Ann : I'm afraid not, Tom. I have to type a report first.

Tom : Working on Saturday ! What a horrible idea !  
I'd change my job if I were you.

Ann : Don't be ridiculous, Tom ! I volunteered to type the report  
in return for a free afternoon next week. I didn't know  
you were going to ask me out, after all.

Tom : Oh, well, I suppose it's all right. But don't make a habit  
of volunteering for weekend work, will you ?

Ann : No, I promise I won't.

6.

Tom : I suppose you'll be busy all morning.

Ann : No, no ! I'll have finished by 11.00. Shall I meet you at  
the bus - stop at Hyde Park corner ?

Tom : That isn't a very good meeting place. I'll call for you.

Ann : That's very good of you, Tom. I'll be waiting in the hall.

7.

Tom : Let's climb to the top. The view from there is marvellous.

Ann : But we've been climbing for 3 hours already. I'm too tired to go any further. Why don't you go on up ? I'll go down and wait there.

Tom : All right. Here are the car keys. You'd better wait in the car. I'll be as quick as I can.

Ann : There'll be no lunch left if you're too long. I'll have eaten it all !

8.

A : "The soup's cold again" complained Mr. Jones. "Why do I never have hot soup ?"

B : "Because the kitchen's so far from the dining room" explained his wife "If you insist on living in a castle you must put up with its disadvantages".

A : "What about getting an ex - Olympic runner as an au - pair girl ?" said Mr. Jones.

B : "She wouldn't stay" sighed his wife.

9.

A : "This is the best restaurant in town" said the taxi driver "the only problem is that they expect guests to wear ties".

B : "Then why have you brought us here ?", said the tourists indignantly.

A : "Don't get excited", said the taxi - driver, opening a box "I keep ties specially for gentlemen in your predicament. What colour would you like ? They're all the same price".

10.

A : "They have a rather fierce dog" said Ann "But he's a heavy sleeper, and with any luck he won't hear you breaking in"

B : "What'll I do if he wakes up ?" I said.

A : "If he starts growling, give him some of these biscuits" said Ann

B : "How do you know that he likes these particular biscuits ?"

A : "All dogs like them" Ann assured me "It says so on the packet"

11.

Rob : Would you like some more brandy, Barbara ?

Barbara: Oh, no thanks ..... no more for me. I'm driving tonight

Rob : Oh, come on ..... just a small one.

Barbara: No, really ..... I mustn't. I'll help Ann with the washing-up.

Rob : "Washing-up ! No, no, don't worry. We always leave that until the morning".

12.

Mary (on phone) : Paul, I've just come back to my flat to find a complete stranger asleep in my chair. He's still here, and still asleep ! What shall I do ?

Paul : Why don't you wake him up and ask him who he is ? There's probably some quite simple explanation.

Mary : But I'm afraid of him. If he were a burglar .....

Paul : Don't be worried ! Wake him up first .....

13.

A : "Could you help me with my luggage, please ? " , she said "If you take two big ones I'll take the small one".

B : "It's ridiculous to take three suitcases for a weekend" I said. "Couldn't you manage with two ?"

A : "No" she said.





Daminan : Would you like to have a drink ?

Melinda : Oh, thanks. I'd love a dry sherry.

Daminan : (after going for a while) : I'm sorry, they have run out of sherry, would you mind if I bring you a martini ?

Melinda : No, it doesn't matter. Don't worry about it.

Daminan : Would you like to dance ?

Melinda : Yes, I'd love to. It's kind of you.

**18.**

Daminan : I love music very much. And you ?

Melinda : So do I.

Daminan : Oh, what a beautiful dress !

Melinda : Thanks . It's kind of you . I've made it myself.

**19.**

Daminan : "What about the dinner tomorrow night ?"

Melinda : I'd love to. Where would you like to go ?

Daminan : Why don't we go to "the old stable" restaurant.  
The owner was my old school friend.

Melinda : OK. But what time ?

Daminan : Do you mind if I meet you at 8 o'clock ?

**20.**

James : David ..... look over there. There's something in the sky. What is it ?

David : I don't know what it is. It's probably a plane.

James : I don't think so. It's too big ..... and too bright.

David : Oh, no.

James : What's the matter ?

David : The engine's stopped ?

James : I don't know why it's stopped. We'll have to find a garage.

**21.**

Mrs Foster : Oh, Doctor ! How is he ?

Doctor : Well, I'm afraid we'll have to operate.

Mrs Foster : Oh, no ! He's always been afraid of operations.

Doctor : Don't worry. If we operate now he'll be all right.

Mrs. Foster : Oh, Doctor. Do you really have to ?

Doctor : I'm afraid so. He's lost a lot of blood. If we don't operate, he'll die !

**22.**

Catherine : Oh Edgar, this house is fantastic ! I love old houses.

Edgar : There's a ghost here, you know.

Catherine : Edgar ! don't be silly ..... you're trying to frighten me

Edgar : Not at all. I've been coming here for years. We used to stay here when I was a child. I saw the ghost myself once.

Catherine : This isn't funny. It's late at night. Anyway , I don't believe in ghosts.

**23.**

A. I'd like two seats for the concert on Thursday evening.

B. Yes, where would you like to sit ?

A. I'm not sure.

B. Well here's a seating plan of the concert hall.

A. How much is it in the middle ?

B. \$6

A. That's too expensive for me. How much is it there ..... at the back ?

B. \$2.

A. That's fine.

Jane : Ow ! this knife's sharp ! I've cut myself.

Ann : Let me see it ... it's OK ... you haven't cut yourself badly  
... it's only a scratch.

Jane : But my finger's bleeding.

Ann : Don't be a baby ! It isn't bleeding much. I'll get a bandage.

## 25.

Susan : Oh ! There's the train ... bring the cases.

Michael: Oh ! What have you got in these cases ?

Susan : Only clothes. Why ? Are they heavy ?

Michael: Yes, they are !

Susan : The taxi driver managed to carry them.

Michael: Well, they're too heavy for me to carry.

Susan : Well , I'm not strong enough to help you - Porter.

## KEY

### Dạng 1:

1. He said he was going out then, but he would be in by nine.
2. She said she was working in a restaurant and didn't care much for it.
3. Peter said he couldn't live on his basic salary; he would have to offer to do overtime.
4. Mary said that her young brother wanted to be a tax inspector. And that she couldn't think why because none of her family had ever been a tax inspector.
5. The children said they were waiting for the school bus. It was late again.

Peter said he had made a terrible mistake. I told him that he was always making ..... d to it then.

One of the men said they had made \$450 a week and sent most of it to their wives.

Another man said it was lonely being away from their families, but they earned three times as much in that factory as they would in their own country.

The man who had spoken first said they had been there for 2 and a half years and they were going to stay another six months

3. Paul said he had got a job in an oil - rig. I said that would be very hard work. He replied he knew it would be hard but he didn't mind hard work and it would be a good experience.
1. Tom said the ice would soon be hard enough to skate on .Ann said she would look for her skates when she got home.
2. She said she was living with her parents at that time , but she hoped to have a flat on her own soon.
3. She said she was leaving the next day by the 4.30 from Victoria. We said we would come and see her off.
4. Peter said he had just bought a car but it wasn't insured yet so he couldn't take me for a drive.
5. Mary said she would like to speak to Susan, but she was bathing the babies and they would drown if she left them alone in the bath while she went to the phone.
6. Mary said she was coming up to London the next week, she hoped Jack and I would meet her for lunch one day
7. She said nothing ever happened in the village. It was like a dead village. All the young people had drifted away to the towns.
8. Bill said that he had missed his train. And that he would be late for work and his boss would be furious then.
9. They said they would wait for me/us if I/We was/were late.

20. I said they were supposed to be landing at London airport, but if the fog got any thicker the plane might be diverted.
21. Mary said if I lent her the chainsaw, she would bring it back two days later.
22. Peter grumbled he hated getting up on dark mornings. His wife said it was horrible, but the mornings would be lighter soon and it wouldn't be quite so bad.
23. The typist said the sales were starting the next day. As soon as they finished work they were going to make a dash for the shops.
24. Peter said he wished he had had something to eat.
25. My aunt said if I was short of money she could lend me \$5 and I could take my time about paying it back.
26. My mother asked who had been using her typewriter.
27. The guide asked if we wanted to see the cathedral.
28. He asked if I meant working on the night shifts.
29. They asked if we would like to come with them.
30. Ann asked who I had given the money to.
31. The tourist asked how long it took to get to Edinburgh by coach.
32. He asked how much we thought it would cost.
33. Mary asked the ex-convict what he had missed most when he had been in prison.
34. The other students asked him if he had been there long.
35. The examiner asked how long I had been learning English.

### **Dạng 2:**

1. His mother reminded him not to put sticky things in his pockets.
2. His wife begged him not to do anything dangerous.
3. My friend encouraged me to apply for the job and said it would just suit me.

- . My brother advised me not to say anything about it.
  - . She requested me to wait in the lounge till my flight number was called.
  - . I told Ann not to lend Harry any money because he never paid his debts.
  - . The secretary asked me to ring back in half an hour.
  - . The other passenger requested me to move my case because it was blocking the door.
  - . Ann reminded me to book a table.
0. The driving instructor told me to get into the right lane.
  1. The policeman ordered us to avoid Marble Arch because there was going to be a big demonstration there.
  2. He told me to hold the ladder because it was rather unsteady. I advised him to tie it at the top because it was much safer that way.
  3. The teacher reminded us to read the question twice and not to write in the margin.
  4. One of the students advised us not to leave our money lying about.
  5. Tom suggested that I open a bank account.
  6. Tom invited the girl to have lunch with him that day but she refused.
  7. The doctor asked me not to take more than two of those at once when he handed me a bottle of pills.
  8. He refused to sell the cassette player to me at that price.
  9. The grocer advised me to buy the big tin.
  0. The other au pair girls said I was being exploited and advised me to leave my job.



21. The air hostess reminded us (them) to fasten our (their) seat belts, because there might be a little turbulence.
22. He warned me not to drive through fog with only a fog light on in case on coming drivers might take me for a motorcyclist.
23. The policeman asked to see my driving licence.
24. I advised him (her) to sweep up that broken glass.
25. She told me that the bath room was empty then and asked me to put the light out when I had finished.
26. My father reminded (me) to insure (my) luggage.
27. His wife told him not to drink any more because they had to drive home.
28. I advised Tom to go to a dentist before his toothache got any worse.
29. He advised me to cut my hair because it would be easier for me to get a job if I looked tidy.
30. The boy asked for some more pudding.

### **Dạng 3 :**

1. Ann suggested having a party on the following Sunday. Mary agreed and asked who they should invite. Ann was again making a list and suggested they should just invite everybody. Mary said they didn't want to do so much cooking and proposed making it a wine and cheese party. Ann then suggested that they should ask everyone to bring a bottle. Mary reminded her that they hadn't many glasses left and suggested hiring glasses from their local wine shop.
2. Ann suggested having the party in the garden if it was warm and Mary put forward the idea of a barbecue. Ann thought it was a good idea and said they could ask Paul to do the cooking. Mary remembered that last time they had had a barbecue the

neighbours had complained about the noise, and she wondered if they should ask everyone to speak in whispers. Ann suggested going round to the neighbours instead and apologizing in advance. Mary, however proposed inviting the neighbours, adding that the noise wouldn't matter. Ann thought that was a clever idea and suggested ringing everyone up that night.

3. I pointed out I was doing most of the work and suggested that he should give me a hand but he suggested leaving the washing up till the next day because he hated washing up last thing at night. But I insisted him doing it immediately because everything seemed not to be tidy and the morning of the next day I had to go to work early.  
At that time he suggested me asking Jane to help.
4. Tom invited Ann to come for a drive the following day. Ann accepted with pleasure and asked where he was thinking of going. He said he'd leave it to<sup>7</sup> her. She suggested stratford , adding that she hadn't been there for ages. Tom agreed and said they might go to the river if it was a fine day.
5. Ann wondered what was on at the Royal Shakespeare Theatre. Tom said they'd find out when they got there adding that it was usually possible to get seats on the day of the play. He asked Ann if she could be ready by ten but Ann regretted that she couldn't as she had to type a report first. Tom expressed horror at the idea of working on Saturday and advised her to change her job. She told him not to be ridiculous and explained that she had volunteered to type the report in return for a free afternoon the following week. She pointed out that she hadn't known he was going to ask her out. Tom supposed it was all right but warned her not to make a habit of volunteering for weekend work. Ann promised not to.
6. Tom supposed she'd be busy all morning. Ann assured him that she'd have finished by 11,00 and offered to meet him at the bus stop at Hyde Park Corner. Tom exclaimed that it wasn't a very

good meeting place and that he'd call for her Ann said that was very kind of him and she'd be waiting in the hall.

7. Tom suggested climbing to the top, adding that the view from there was marvellous, but Ann didn't agree with him because they had been climbing for three hours and she was too tired to go any further. She suggested that Tom should go on up while she went down and waited in the car. He promised to be as quick as he could. She warned him if he was too long there'd be no lunch left, for she'd have eaten it all.
8. Mr Jones complained that the soup was cold again and asked why he never had hot soup. His wife explained it was because the kitchen was so far from the dining room. If he insisted on living in a castle he had to put up with its disadvantages. He suggested getting an ex - Olympic runner as an au - pair girl but his wife added that she would not stay.
9. The taxi - driver recommended that that was the best restaurant in town, the only problem was that they expected guests to wear ties. The tourists became angry and asked why he had brought them there. He told them not to get excited as he kept ties specially for gentlemen in their predicament and asked what colour they would like, adding that the ties were all the same price.
10. Ann warned us that they had a rather fierce dog but she added the dog was a heavy sleeper and with any luck, he wouldn't hear us breaking in. I wondered "what I should do" if he woke up. Ann told me to give him some of those biscuits if he started growling. I asked how she knew that he liked those particular biscuits. She assured me that all dogs liked them and added that it said so on the packet.
11. Rob offered Barbara some more brandy but she refused politely because she was driving that night. But Rob still insisted her a small one. Barbara went on refusing and explained she would

help Ann with the washing-up. Rob exclaimed that they always left the washing-up until the next morning.

2. Mary informed Paul on the phone that she had just come back to her flat to find a complete stranger asleep in her chair. He was still there and still asleep. Mary asked Paul for some advice. Paul advised her to wake him up to ask him who he was, adding that there was probably some quite simple explanation. But Mary was nervous because she thought he was a burglar. Paul encouraged her to wake him up first.
3. She asked me to help her with her luggage. If I chose to take two big ones, she would take the small one. I added that it was ridiculous for her to take 3 suitcases for a weekend and suggested her managing with two but she refused.
4. The man asked for permission to have a look at my newspaper for a moment as he just wanted to see the football results. I refused him because I hadn't quite finished with it and asked him to wait a moment. But he exclaimed that he couldn't wait long as he was getting off at the next stop. But I shouted at him I was reading an interesting article and told him to buy one for his own.
5. The inspector told Mr. Fletcher to sit down and offered him a cigarette but he refused politely as he was trying to stop smoking. After that, the inspector wanted to know how Mr. Fletcher managed to lose his truck Mr. Fletcher thought the inspector knew the story already. But the inspector wanted Mr. Fletcher to tell them again.
16. He asked me coldly if I was ill and I replied I wasn't. He wanted to know if I slept well the previous night and I replied I did. But he shouted at me why I was sitting about when all the others were working and ordered me to go at once to give them a hand.
17. Mrs Blaze introduced Melinda to Daminan. They then greeted each other. After that he offered to get her a drink. She

thanked him and asked him to get her a sherry. After going for a while he brought her a martini and apologized because they had run out of sherry. She replied that it didn't matter and told him not to worry about it. He asked her if she would like to dance, she accepted and thanked him.

18. He said how much he liked the music and she agreed. He complimented her on her dress and she thanked him, adding that she had made it herself.
19. He suggested dinner the next evening. She agreed and wondered where he would like to go. He suggested the "Old stable" restaurant and explained that the owner was his old school friend. He arranged to collect her at 8 o'clock.
20. James asked David to look over there because there was something in the sky and he wondered what it was. David replied that he didn't know, he thought it might be a plane but James disagreed as he thought it was too big and too bright. David suddenly shouted and James asked what happened. David wondered if the engine had stopped but James didn't know why. He suggested finding a garage.
21. Mrs Foster asked the doctor about Mr. Foster's health but the doctor gloomily informed that they would have to operate. Mr Foster rejected that because Mr. Foster had always been afraid of operation but the doctor comforted her by saying that if they operated then he would be all right. Mrs Foster still wondered if the doctor really had to and he reconfirmed that as his patient had lost a lot of blood and warned Mrs Foster that if they didn't operate Mr. Foster would die.
22. Catherine remarked that was a fantastic house and she loved old houses. Edgar frightened her that there was a ghost there but she didn't believe that. He convinced her that he had been coming there for years. They used to stay there when he was a child. He also repeated that he once had seen the ghost.



himself. Catherine didn't think it was funny and warned that it was late at night and added she didn't believe in ghosts.

23. A wanted to book 2 seats for the concert on Thursday evening. B asked where A would like to sit but A wasn't sure so B showed him a sitting plan at the concert hall. A asked B about the price of the middle and B answered that was \$6. A exclaimed it was too expensive for him and hesitantly asked about the price at the back. B answered that it was \$2 and agreed with it.
24. Jane shouted that knife was sharp and she had cut herself. Ann saw it and found that it was OK so she comforted Jane that Jane had not cut herself badly and it was only a scratch. But Jane still moaned her finger was bleeding. Ann asked her not to be a baby because it is was not bleeding much. Ann would get bandage for Jane.
25. Susan exclaimed when she saw the train coming and asked Michael to bring her cases - Michael wanted to know what she had in those cases because he found that they were heavy. Susan said the taxi driver had managed to carry them. Michael was reluctant to carry them so he complained that they were too heavy for him. And Susan didn't want to help him herself so she called a porter.

#### IV. BÀI TẬP VỀ CÁC LOẠI CÂU PHỨC HỢP

Dạng 1: Chọn từ đúng nhất để hoàn chỉnh các câu sau.

Exercise 1:

1. She gives her children everything ..... they want.

- a. that      b. who      c. whom      d. what

2. Tell me ..... you want and I will try to help you.

- a. that      b. what      c. who      d. which

[N]

The party was held at 8 + went to 83



3. The place ..... we spent our holiday was really beautiful.  
a. what                      b. who                      c. where                      d. which
4. What was the name of the girl ..... passport was stolen ?  
a. whose                      b. who                      c. which                      d. when
5. The bed ..... I slept in was too soft.  
a. whose                      b. which                      c. what                      d. who
6. Nora is the only person ..... understands me.  
a. which                      b. who                      c. what                      d. whose
7. The man ..... she is married to has been married twice before.  
a. who                      b. whom                      c. which                      d. whose
8. Why do you always disagree with everything ..... I say?  
a. who                      b. which                      c. when                      d. what
9. This is an awful film. It is the worst ..... I have never seen.  
a. who                      b. that                      c. what                      d. whom
10. The hotel ..... we stayed was not clean.  
a. who                      b. that                      c. where                      d. when
11. The last time ..... I saw her, she looked very beautiful.  
a. who                      b. that                      c. where                      d. when
12. What was the name of the people ..... car had broken down ?  
a. which                      b. who                      c. whom                      d. whose
13. I recently went back to the town ..... I was born.  
a. what                      b. where                      c. who                      d. which
14. The reason ..... I phoned him was to invite him to a party.  
a. what                      b. whose                      c. why                      d. which
15. I don't agree with ..... you have just said.  
a. what                      b. who                      c. when                      d. which

16. She told me her address ..... I wrote on a piece of paper.  
 a. what                      b. which                      c. when                      d. where
17. The dress didn't fit her, so she took it back to the shop ..... she had bought it.  
 a. where                      b. which                      c. what                      d. when
18. Do you know the girl ..... Tom is talking to?  
 a. who                      b. what                      c. which                      d. whose
19. I gave her all the money ..... I had. *which I had*  
 a. that                      b. what                      c. when                      d. whose
20. The party ..... we went to wasn't very enjoyable.  
 a. who                      b. when                      c. that                      d. where

### Exercise 2.

1. The stories ..... Tom tells are usually very funny.  
 a. when                      b. that                      c. where                      d. who
2. I met the woman ..... can speak six languages.  
 a. who                      b. that                      c. which                      d. whom
3. Have you seen the money ..... was on the table ?  
 a. who                      b. which                      c. where                      d. whom
4. Where is the picture ..... was on the wall ?  
 a. when                      b. where                      c. which                      d. who
5. I don't like people ..... never stop talking.  
 a. who                      b. which                      c. whom                      d. whose
6. Why does she always wear clothes ..... are too small for her?  
 a. which                      b. who                      c. whose                      d. where
7. The factory ..... John works in is the biggest in town.  
 a. when                      b. where                      c. which                      d. how

8. Have you ever seen the photographs ..... Ann took ?  
a. that                      b. where                      c. when                      d. who
9. Everybody ..... went to the party enjoyed it very much.  
a. who                      b. whose                      c. which                      d. whom
10. 1945 was the year ..... the second World War ended.  
a. which                      b. why                      c. when                      d. where
11. Is there a shop near here ..... I can buy a postcard ?  
a. when                      b. which                      c. where                      d. who
12. I argued with the woman ..... dog bit me.  
a. who                      b. whom                      c. which                      d. whose
13. The house ..... I am living, is not in very good condition.  
a. where                      b. what                      c. who                      d. when
14. Have you found the key ..... you lost ?  
a. which                      b. whose                      c. whom                      d. when
15. The fish ..... we had for dinner, was really delicious.  
a. who                      b. which                      c. when                      d. what
16. The man ..... the police arrested, has been now released  
a. whom                      b. which                      c. whose                      d. what
17. The policeman ..... stopped our car, wasn't very friendly.  
a. whom                      b. who                      c. which                      d. what
18. An aeroplane is a machine ..... flies.  
a. who                      b. which                      c. what                      d. when
19. The butcher is a person ..... sells meat.  
a. who                      b. which                      c. whose                      d. when
20. Everything ..... I told you was true.  
a. that                      b. what                      c. when                      d. who

Exercise 3.

1. What was the name of the restaurant ..... we have dinner in?  
a. where      b. what      c. when      d. which
2. Most of the people ..... I invited to the party couldn't come.  
a. whom      b. which      c. where      d. when
3. Tom's father ..... is 78, goes swimming everyday.  
a. who      b. whose      c. which      d. whom
4. That man over there, ..... name I don't remember, is an artist.  
a. who      b. whose      c. whom      d. which
5. Opposite our house there is a nice park, ..... there are beautiful trees.  
a. which      b. where      c. when      d. who
6. This is a photograph of our friends which ..... we went on holiday.  
*with whom*  
a. who      b. whose      c. whom      d. which
7. Jim passed his driving test, ..... surprised everybody.  
a. who      b. which      c. whose      d. whom
8. The flight ..... we wanted to travel on, was fully booked.  
a. where      b. which      c. when      d. who
9. Do you remember the day ..... we first met.  
a. who      b. that      c. where      d. when
10. I went to see the doctor, ..... told me to rest a few days.  
a. which      b. who      c. whose      d. whom

Exercise 4.

1. Thank you for your letter, ..... I was very happy to get.  
a. which      b. where      c. when      d. who

2. Ten people, none of ..... were suitable, applied for the job.  
 a. who                      b. which                      c. whom                      d. whose
3. The post man, ..... is nearly always on time, was late this morning  
 a. who                      b. which                      c. whom                      d. whose
4. I looked up at the Moon, ..... was very bright that evening.  
 a. when                      b. which                      c. where                      d. who
5. We spent a pleasant day by the lake, ..... we had a picnic.  
 a. when                      b. which                      c. where                      d. who
6. The woman, ..... opened the door, was wearing a yellow dress.  
 a. who                      b. which                      c. when                      d. whom
7. I have a friend ..... is very good at repairing cars.  
 a. that                      b. which                      c. who                      d. whom
8. The man ..... phoned me didn't say his name.  
 a. who                      b. which                      c. where                      d. whom
9. Jack lives in the house ..... is 500 years old.  
 a. where                      b. that                      c. when                      d. whom
10. Jim was wearing a hat ..... was too big for him.  
 a. what                      b. which                      c. who                      d. why
11. The chair ..... I was sitting on wasn't very comfortable.  
 a. that                      b. where                      c. when                      d. who
12. The musician is a person ..... plays a musical instrument.  
 a. that                      b. which                      c. when                      d. whom
13. Did you enjoy the party ..... you went to ?  
 a. that                      b. when                      c. where                      d. what
14. The boy ..... broke the window ran away.  
 a. when                      b. that                      c. which                      d. whom

15. A friend of mine, ..... father is the manager of a company, helps me to get a job.  
 a. who                      b. which                      c. whose                      d. whom
16. There are a lot of people at the party, only a few of ..... I had met before.  
 a. who                      b. whose                      c. whom                      d. which
17. I often go to visit my friends is Britol, ..... is only 30 miles away  
 a. who                      b. which                      c. what                      d. where
18. Mr Edwards, ..... health hadn't been good recently, had gone into hospital for some test.  
 a. who                      b. whom                      c. whose                      d. which
19. The man ..... came to see me yesterday is my teacher of English.  
 a. who                      b. whom                      c. which                      d. whose
20. This house, ..... is painted blue is my aunt's.  
 a. whose                      b. who                      c. that                      d. where

### Exercise 5.

1. 'The reason .....he failed was obvious.  
 a. when                      b. why                      c. which                      d. who
2. We know ..... she has gone for holiday.  
 a. when                      b. where                      c. why                      d. who
3. A vegetarian is someone ..... doesn't eat meat.  
 a. whom                      b. who                      c. whose                      d. which
4. She always asks me questions ..... are difficult to get a job.  
 a. which                      b. who                      c. where                      d. who
5. Ann, ..... children are at school all day, is trying to get a job.  
 a. who                      b. whose                      c. whom                      d. which



6. Peter, with ..... I played tennis yesterday, was fitter than me.  
a. who                      b. whose                      c. whom                      d. which
7. He drank beer, ..... made him fat.  
a. which                      b. when                      c. who                      d. whom
8. He said he had no money, ..... was not true.  
a. who                      b. whose                      c. that                      d. when
9. The wine ..... was in the cellar was ruined.  
a. which                      b. who                      c. when                      d. whose
10. This is George, ..... class you will be taking.  
a. who                      b. whose                      c. that                      d. whom
11. Her sons both of ..... work abroad, ring her up every week.  
a. who                      b. whose                      c. whom                      d. which
12. I met someone ..... said he knew you.  
a. who                      b. whose                      c. which                      d. whom
13. The noise ..... he made, woke every body up  
a. whose                      b. which                      c. when                      d. whom
14. The museum ..... we wanted to visit, was shut when we got there  
a. when                      b. what                      c. which                      d. where
15. I didn't get a job ..... I applied for.  
a. who                      b. that                      c. when                      d. where
16. The friend with ..... I was travelling spoke English.  
a. who                      b. whose                      c. whom                      d. which
17. Ann has a lot of books, most of ..... she hasn't read.  
a. who                      b. whom                      c. which                      d. whose
18. He gave us a lot of information, most of ..... was useless.  
a. whom                      b. which                      c. whose                      d. who

9. It was Tom ..... helped us.

- a. whom      b. who      c. which      d. whose

20. It was wine ..... we ordered.

- a. that      b. when      c. where      d. what

### Exercise 6.

1. The new stadium, ..... holds 90,000 people, will be opened next month

- a. who      b. where      c. which      d. when

2. Next week I am going to Glassgow, ..... my sister lives.

- a. which      b. where      c. when      d. who

3. Norman won \$20,000, half of ..... he gave his parents.

- a. which      b. who *Frank*      c. whom      d. what

4. The film is about a spy ..... wife betrays him. *John*

- a. who      b. which      c. whose      d. whom

5. People ..... rents have been raised can appeal.

- a. whom      b. whose      c. who      d. which

6. This is a picture ..... caused such a sensation.

- a. where      b. that      c. when      d. why

7. The car ..... I hired broke down.

- a. which      b. who      c. when      d. where

8. The ladder on ..... I was standing began to slip.

- a. whom      b. that      c. which      d. who

9. The apples ..... fall are eaten by the pigs.

- a. that      b. where      c. when      d. who

10. The year ..... he was born was 1975.

- a. which      b. on which      c. at which      d. in which

11. The day ..... they arrived, was Sunday.  
 a. which      b. in which      c. on which      d. at which
12. The girl ..... is sitting behind me, is the most useful in m  
 class.  
 a. who      b. whom      c. which      d. whose
13. The girl ..... mother is my sister, is coming to see me today.  
 a. whose      b. whom      c. who      d. which
14. She gave me this jumper, ..... she has knitted herself.  
 a. that      b. when      c. who      d. whose
15. These books, ..... you can get in any bookshop, will give yo  
 all the information you need.  
 a. who      b. which      c. where      d. when
16. They house was full of boys, ten of ..... were his ow  
 grandchildren.  
 a. who      b. which      c. whom      d. whose
17. The 8.15 train, ..... is usually punctual, was late today.  
 a. who      b. which      c. when      d. where
18. The men ..... tried to break into the shop, have been arrested  
 a. who      b. which      c. when      d. whom
19. The box ..... he is carrying, is very heavy.  
 a. when      b. whose      c. that      d. which
20. The map, ..... we looked at wasn't very clear.  
 a. that      b. when      c. where      d. whom

### *Exercise 7.*

1. I picked up the apples, some of ..... were badly bruised.  
 a. whom      b. which      c. who      d. whose

4. The house ..... I used to live has been knocked down.  
a. when              b. who              c. that              d. whom
5. The buses, most of ..... were already full, were surrounded by an angry crowd.  
a. whom              b. which              c. that              d. who
6. He went with a group of people, few of ..... were correctly equipped for such climb.  
a. which              b. whom              c. whose              d. who
7. That block ..... cost \$3 million to build, has been empty for years.  
a. who              b. which              c. where              d. whom
8. His house, for ..... he paid \$10000, is now worth \$30000  
a. when              b. where              c. which              d. that
9. His house, ..... window were all broken, was a depressing sight.  
a. which              b. where              c. whose              d. who
10. The man ..... daughter learns with me, is my teacher.  
a. who              b. whose              c. whom              d. which
11. That is the school ..... I learnt in my childhood.  
a. where              b. when              c. which              d. whose
12. The hotel ..... is near the beach, is the most expensive hotel.  
a. where              b. which              c. whose              d. who
13. They asked him about the countries ..... he visited last week.  
a. when              b. who              c. which              d. who
14. They ..... built 2 houses last year, surprised everybody.  
a. which              b. that              c. where              d. whom
15. The woman ..... son won the Grand Prize in the film Festival is a doctor.  
a. who              b. whom              c. whose              d. which

14. Henry ..... lives about three miles away, was my former teacher.  
 a. who                      b. whose                      c. which                      d. whom
15. The record ..... I bought 2 months ago, was broken yesterday  
 a. who                      b. which                      c. what                      d. when
16. The professor ..... daughter won the First Prize in the language competition, feels very proud.  
 a. who                      b. whose                      c. whom                      d. which
17. The man ..... rode a red Honda, passed here half an hour ago  
 a. who                      b. whom                      c. whose                      d. which
18. The number of people ..... will be travelling next week, will cause difficulties for the airport.  
 a. who                      b. which                      c. whose                      d. whom
19. That is just the thing ..... I didn't want to happen.  
 a. which                      b. when                      c. why                      d. what
20. He ..... always likes to do something new can change the situation.  
 a. whose                      b. which                      c. who                      d. whom

**Exercise 8.**

1. The mother ..... son was killed in an accident, was very sad.  
 a. whose                      b. whom                      c. who                      d. which
2. I met the boat man ..... had taken me across the river.  
 a. which                      b. whose                      c. when                      d. whom
3. The book ..... I've lent him, is very interesting.  
 a. when                      b. which                      c. who                      d. whom
4. That man over there ..... car is very expensive, is an artist.  
 a. who                      b. whom                      c. whose                      d. which

5. The lesson ..... we are learning now, is interesting but difficult.  
a. when            b. which            c. where            d. what
6. The book ..... I'd lent him, was stolen.  
a. which            b. when            c. who            d. where
7. Mr Hogg is going to Canada, ..... his son has been living for 5 years.  
a. who            b. which            c. where            d. whom
8. This is the painter ..... pictures you admire so much.  
a. who            b. whom            c. whose            d. which
9. The bee ..... stung you, flew away quickly.  
a. who            b. which            c. when            d. what
10. The boy ..... you gave your bicycle to, was delighted.  
a. who            b. which            c. when            d. whose
11. The meeting hall ..... they had the press conference, is very large.  
a. in which            b. on which            c. to which            d. which
12. I took the damaged ring to my watch maker ..... knows how to repair all sorts of things.  
a. who            b. whose            c. where            d. whom
13. Yesterday I regretfully said good bye to Mr Sims ..... poor health has caused him to retire.  
a. who            b. whom            c. whose            d. which
14. Here is the address to ..... you should write.  
a. which            b. when            c. that            d. what
15. I can't remember the name of the person ..... I gave the money.  
a. who            b. whom            c. whose            d. which



16. Some writers ..... are well known for their novels, has been sent to Australia on a visit.
- a. who                      b. whom                      c. whose                      d. which
17. The house ..... was built 20 years ago, is now being converted into a hotel.
- a. who                      b. when                      c. where                      d. that
18. A widow is a woman ..... husband is dead.
- a. who                      b. whom                      c. whose                      d. which
19. I'd like to live in a country ..... there is plenty of sunshine.
- a. when                      b. where                      c. which                      d. whom
20. The other day I met someone ..... brother I went to school with.
- a. who                      b. whom                      c. whose                      d. which

*Exercise 9.*

1. The book is about Dennis Thatcher ..... wife, became Prime Minister .
- a. who                      b. whom                      c. whose                      d. which
2. One day last week I visited that village ..... many beautiful flowers were grown.
- a. who                      b. where                      c. when                      d. whom
3. He exclaimed in a loud voice ..... made several people stare at him.
- a. which                      b. when                      c. who                      d. what
4. Thank you very much for your letter ..... you told me a very interesting story of your holiday.
- a. in which                      b. which                      c. on which                      d. at which
5. The book ..... consists of 4 parts, has been translated into French.
- a. which                      b. on which                      c. in which                      d. to which

6. This is a book ..... I bought at the bookstore.  
 a. where      b. that      c. when      d. who
7. John is the man ..... we are going to recommend for the job.  
 a. who      b. whom      c. whose      d. which
8. The man to ..... the woman is talking is angry.  
 a. who      b. whom      c. whose      d. which
9. John found a boy ..... leg was broken.  
 a. whose      b. which      c. when      d. that
- 10 He was the first man ..... left the burning building.  
 a. who      b. whom      c. which      d. whose
- 11 I have a book ..... I must read.  
 a. who      b. which      c. when      d. where
- 12 He was the second man ..... was killed in this way.  
 a. who      b. whom      c. whose      d. which
- 13 The last person ..... leaves the room must turn off the light.  
 a. who      b. whom      c. whose      d. which
- 14 I don't want to go alone and I haven't anyone ..... I can go with .  
 a. that      b. which<sup>6,2</sup>      c. where      d. what<sup>2</sup>
- 15 Lady Aster was the first woman ..... took her seat in Parliament  
 a. who      b. whom      c. whose      d. which
- 16 Tom, ..... had been driving all day, was tired.  
 a. who      b. whom      c. whose      d. which
- 17 The floor is dirty but I haven't got a brush ..... I can sweep it with .  
 a. where      b. which      c. who      d. whom

18. We had a river ..... we could swim.

- a. in which      b. on which      c. to which      d. which

19. A peg ..... I can hang my coat is broken.

- a. in which      b. on which      c. to which      d. which

20. You are the last person ..... saw her alive.

- a. who      b. whom      c. which      d. whose

*Exercise 10.*

1. The woman to ..... we gave the check, has left.

- a. who      b. whom      c. which      d. whose

2. John, ..... car was stolen last night, is at the police station.

- a. who      b. whom      c. whose      d. which

3. The fifth man ..... was interviewed, was entirely unsuitable.

- a. who      b. whom      c. whose      d. which

4. He was the first man ..... reached the top.

- a. who      b. which      c. whom      d. whose

5. The book ..... is on the top shelf, is the one that I need.

- a. that      b. who      c. where      d. when

6. The company ..... imports and exports rice, has gone bankrupt.

- a. who      b. whom      c. whose      d. which

7. The men ..... I don't like, are angry.

- a. who      b. whom      c. whose      d. which

8. The men ..... are in this room are angry.

- a. **who**      b. **whom**      c. whose      d. which

9. James, ..... father is the President of the company, has received a promotion.

- a. who      b. whom      c. whose      d. which

10. The papers ..... are on the table belong to Patrica.  
a. which      b. where      c. who      d. what
11. Leo Evans, ..... is a doctor, eats in this restaurant everyday.  
a. which      b. who      c. whom      d. whose
12. What was the name of the man ..... wife became ill and was taken to hospital ?  
a. who      b. whom      c. whose      d. which
13. Where are the eggs ..... were in the fridge ?  
a. who      b. which      c. where      d. when
14. Why do you blame me for everything ..... goes wrong ?  
a. that      b. who      c. what      d. whom
15. I won't be able to do very much but I'll do the best ..... I can.  
a. that      b. who      c. what      d. whom
16. Go on. I am interested in ..... you've just said.  
a. that      b. who      c. what      d. when
17. She is the swimmer ..... has just won the gold medal.  
a. who      b. which      c. whom      d. whose
18. They're the keys ..... open the drawers.  
a. who      b. which      c. what      d. whom
19. A man from our village, ..... children I teach, was on TV last night.  
a. who      b. whom      c. whose      d. which
20. Hans, ..... is Swiss, is 18.  
a. who      b. whom      c. whose      d. which

*Exercise 11.*

1. Hans, ..... mother tongue is German, comes from Zurich.  
a. who                      b. whom                      c. whose                      d. which
2. Zurich, ..... is in Switzerland, is Hans's home town.  
a. who                      b. which                      c. where                      d. when
3. My neighbour, ..... brother is an actor, gave me some theatre tickets.  
a. who                      b. whose                      c. whom                      d. which
4. The board was composed of citizens ..... dedication was evident  
a. who                      b. whose                      c. whom                      d. which
5. Teachers ..... do not spent enough time on class preparation often have difficulty explaining new lessons.  
a. who                      b. whom                      c. whose                      d. which
6. Dr. John is the only doctor ..... I've seen about this problem.  
a. who                      b. whom                      c. whose                      d. which
7. This is only one person in that group ..... I can rely entirely.  
a. who                      b. which                      c. to whom                      d. on whom
8. Anybody ..... house is damaged will receive compensation.  
a. whose                      b. of whom                      c. who                      d. which
9. This is my new watch ..... I bought in the same shop as you did  
a. whose                      b. which                      c. whom                      d. of which
10. That is the robber ..... arrest a reward was offered.  
a. to whom                      b. which whom  
c. for whose                      d. about whom

# KEY

## Ex1:

1.a	2.b	3.c	4.a	5.b
6.b	7.b	8.b	9.b	10.c
11.d	12.d	13.b	14.c	15.a
16.b	17.a	18.a	19.a	20.c

## Ex2:

1.b	2.a	3.b	4.c	5.a
6.a	7.c	8.a	9.a	10.c
11.c	12.d	13.a	14.a	15.b
16.a	17.b	18.b	19.a	20.a

## Ex3:

1.d	2.a	3.a	4.b	5.b
6.c	7.b	8.b	9.d	10.b

## Ex4:

1.a	2.c	3.a	4.b	5.c
6.a	7.c	8.a	9.b	10.b
11.a	12.a	13.a	14.b	15.c
16.c	17.b	18.c	19.a	20.c

## Ex5:

1.b	2.b	3.b	4.a	5.b
6.c	7.a	8.c	9.a	10.b
11.c	12.a	13.b	14.c	15.b
16.c	17.c	18.b	19.b	20.a

## Ex6:

1.c	2.b	3.a	4.c	5.b
6.b	7.c	8.c	9.a	10.d
11.c	12.a	13.a	14.a	15.b
16.c	17.b	18.a	19.d	20.a



**Ex7:**

1.b	2.c	3.b	4.b	5.b
6.c	7.b	8.b	9.a	10.b
11.c	12.b	13.c	14.a	15.b
16.b	17.a	18.a	19.a	20.c

**Ex8:**

1.a	2.d	3.b	4.c	5.b
6.a	7.c	8.c	9.b	10.a
11.a	12.a	13.c	14.a	15.b
16.a	17.d	18.c	19.b	20.c

**Ex9:**

1.c	2.b	3.a	4.a	5.a
6.b	7.b	8.b	9.a	10.a
11.b	12.a	13.a	14.a	15.a
16.a	17.b	18.a	19.b	20.b

**Ex10:**

1.b	2.c	3.a	4.a	5.a
6.d	7.b	8.a	9.c	10.a
11.b	12.c	13.b	14.a	15.a
16.c	17.a	18.b	19.c	20.a

**Ex11:**

1.c	2.b	3.b	4.b	5.a
6.b	7.d	8.a	9.b	10.c

**Dạng 2: Điền đúng đại từ quan hệ để hoàn chỉnh các câu sau :**

1. Mary, ..... didn't know anything about mountains, thought it would be quite safe to climb alone.
2. He gave orders to the manager ..... passed them on to the foreman.

3. She said that the men were thieves, ..... turned out to be true.
4. The matter was reported to the Chief of police, ..... ordered us all to be arrested.
5. In prison they fed us on dry bread, most of ..... was mouldy.
6. We slept in the same room as a prisoner, ..... handcuffs rattled every time he moved.
7. We lit a fire, ..... soon dried out our clothes.
8. They rowed across the Atlantic, ..... had never been done before.
9. The lorry crashed into the bus full of school children, six of ..... were slightly injured.
10. She refuses to use the machine, ..... makes her work more arduous .
11. I met Mary, ..... asked me to give you this.
12. The woman prayed aloud all night, ..... kept us awake.
13. The river bed is uneven and you may be in shallow water one moment and in deep water the next, ..... makes it unsafe for non swimmers.
14. Ann, ..... children couldn't swim, said that there should be more notices warning people.
15. He paid me \$5 for cleaning ten windows, most of ..... hadn't been cleaned for at least one year.
16. Mary, ..... children could swim very well, said that there were too many notices.
17. Jack, the goalkeeper, ..... injuries were slight is being allowed to play in today's match.
18. Tom, ..... leg is still in bandages, will have to watch the match from the stand.
19. Mr White was very rude to his junior partner, ..... in turn was very rude to the chief clerk.

20. Mr White didn't get a seat on his train this morning, ..... put him in a bad temper.
21. Tom, ..... felt too sick to work fast, had a hangover.
22. His boss, ..... didn't drink, saw what the matter was and wasn't sympathetic.
23. In the afternoon, he rang Tom and asked why the report, ..... should have been on his desk by 2 o'clock, still hadn't arrived.
24. Tom, ..... headache was now much worse, just put the receiver down without answering.
25. Ann, ..... liked Tom, came to Tom's assistance.
26. George is the man ..... was chosen to represent the committee at the convention.
27. All of the money ..... was accepted , has already been deposited in the bank.
28. The paper, ..... are on the table , are very important.
29. The girl, ..... is drinking coffee, is Mary Allen.
30. The number of students, ..... have been counted, is quite high.
31. John's wife, ..... is a professor, has written several articles on this subject.
32. The girl, ..... is running down the street might be in trouble.
33. This is the Z value, ..... was obtained from the table.
34. The man ..... is talking to the policeman, is my uncle.
35. The beaker, ..... is on the counter , contains a solution.
36. Mr. Jackson, ..... is a professor, is travelling in the Middle - East this year.
37. My car ..... is very large, uses too much gasoline.
38. The report, ..... should have taken an hour and a half, took three hours.

39. I went to Munich ..... I had always wanted to visit.
40. "Hello Paul," said Mr. Jones to the head waiter. The head waiter, ..... name was Tom, said "Good evening Sir", without any sign of recognition, ..... disappointed Mr. Jones, ..... liked to be recognized by head waiters.
41. And this time he was with Lucy, ..... he was particularly anxious to impress.
42. Thank you very much for the present ..... you sent me.
43. She was dancing with a student ..... is very handsome
44. This is the boy .....I don't like.
45. I'm looking after some children ... are terribly spoilt.
46. The bed ... . I slept on has no mattress.
47. Romeo and Juliet were lovers ... parents hated each other.
48. There wasn't any directory in the telephone box ... . I was phoning from.
49. This is Mrs. Jones ... son won the championship last year.
50. I was sitting in a chair ... suddenly collapsed.
51. Mr. Smith ... I had come especially to see, was too busy to speak to me.
52. The man ... . I had come to see was sitting at the desk.
53. I missed the train ... . I usually catch and I had to travel on the next ... was a slow train.
54. His girlfiend, ... he trusted absolutely, turned out to be an enemy spy.
55. The car ... we were in, had bad brakes.
56. The chair ... . I bought last month was damaged.
57. The man ... was driving, didn't know the way.
58. This is a story of a man ... wife suddenly loses her memory.

59. We will have to get across the frontier ... will be difficult.
60. I bought an umbrella ... was unnecessary.
61. The car crashed into a queue of people, four of ... were killed.
62. The road were crowded with refugees, many of ... were wounded.
63. I was waiting for a man ... didn't turn up.
64. Tom came to the party in patched jeans, ... surprised the other guests
65. The firm ... I work for is sending me to York.
66. The Smiths, ... house had been destroyed in the explosion, were given rooms in the hotel
67. I saw several houses, most of ... were unsuitable.
68. He wanted to come at 2 a.m, ... didn't suit me at all.'
69. The Greens are the people ... . Ann works for.
70. The train ... Ann caught was the 12.30.
71. Mrs Green, ... thought Ann looked tired, gave her the day off.
72. Peter, ... hated eating by himself, hoped to have lunch with Ann.
- 73.the girl .....is sitting there is my sitster in law
74. The horse ... was kept stooping to eat grass, ... annoyed the riding instructor.
75. The bar ... I was telephoning from was so noisy that I couldn't hear the person at the other end of the line.
76. A man ... answered the phone said Tom was out.
77. Mary, ... boyfriend didn't turn up, ended by having lunch with Peter.
78. Tom and Ann wasted half an hour at the station, ... meant tthat they hadn't time for a proper lunch.
79. Tom and Ann bought the book ... both of them liked very much.

80. Mr and Mrs Jones, ... were out playing cards, ... knew nothing of the burglary till they arrived home at 11.30.
81. Bill, ... fingerprints were on the screwdriver, was later caught by the police.
82. Geoge, ... was working on the roof, left the ladder leaning against the house.
83. Mr Black usually catches the 8.10, ... is a fast train.
84. Today he missed the 8.10, ... annoyed him very much.
85. I was given this address by a man, ... I met on a train.
86. They gave me four very bad tyres, one of ... burst before I had driven four miles.
87. She climbed to the top of the Monument to see the wonderful view ... she had been told about.
88. He didn't believed what I said, ... annoyed me very much.
89. A patient is a person ... is ill in hospital.
90. He was the second man ... was killed in this way.
91. In detective stories the murderer is always caught, ... doesn't happen in real life.
92. Babies ... were born prematurely had little chance of survival.
93. The children ... disobey their parents should be punished.
94. My parents, ... greatest ambition is to retire to the coast, have just sold their house.
95. Murray was the only person ... survived the disaster.
96. There is an officer to ... I spoke.
97. Here is the article about ... I was speaking.
98. The lift doesn't work, ... means we'll have to walk up six flights of stairs.
99. I have to do ... I believe is right.



100. Is Thompson the man to ... you were referring ?
101. That was the very day on ... I first saw Mary.
102. Do you remember the reason ... we were arguing ?
103. This is a matter concerning ... you would be well advised to consult a lawyer
104. Here is a book ... will tell you all about it.
105. It was a century during ... the country suffered continually from wars
106. Is this really the house in ... Shakespeare was born ?
107. A philatelist is a person ... collects stamps.
108. We go swimming after 5 o'clock ... everyone else has gone home.
109. She passed her exams, ... made her parents very proud.
110. He arrived on time, ... surprised everybody.
111. The road ... we want to take was blocked.
112. This is the watch ... my parents presented me last year
113. Mr Jenkins, ... has written several books, spoke at the meeting last night.
114. Mr Jones, for ... I've been working for 10 years, got married yesterday.
115. Has she told you the thing ... is worrying her ?
116. I gave him a sandwich ... he ate greedily.
117. This is the biggest plane ... has ever flown.
118. All of them decide to go to the restaurant ... was opened yesterday.
119. The only thing ... matter is that you are safe.
120. Is that the company ... accountant has disappeared with thousands of their money ?

121. Mr Carter, to ... I spoke on the phone last night, is very interested in our plan.
122. Fortunately we had a map, without ... we would have got lost.
123. Yesterday we visited the city Museum ... I'd never been to before .
124. He tried on three jackets, none of ... fitted him.
125. Two men, neither of ... I had seen before, came into my office.
126. She couldn't come to the party, ... was a pity.
127. The weather was very good, ... I hadn't expected.
128. We decided not to swim in the sea ... looks rather dirty.
129. The new stadium, ... holds 90,000 people, will be opened next month.
130. John, ... . I have known for eight years, is one of my closest friends.
131. You will be punished for ... you've done.
132. I couldn't remember the number of my own car, ... made the police suspicious.
133. She expects me to do this exercise in half an hour, ... is impossible.
134. He played the violin all night, ... annoyed the neighbour.
135. The doctor ... I go to lives next door.
136. Wildon, ... wife and daughter both died, wanted to live a life of leisure.
137. A man, ... was carrying the monkey in a box, got on to the bus
138. Do you know the dog ... was bitten by a snake in the garden ?
139. The clock struck thirteen ... made everyone laugh.
140. They turned on the street lights, ... made it suddenly seem much darker than it really was

141. The cowboy ... had been wounded by an arrow fell off his horse.
142. He travelled to the Far-East ... he got ideas for his books.
143. I don't like children ... cry all day.
144. The manager, ...was very nice man from Milan, made us feel very welcome
145. Tell me ... you want me to do.
146. The frogs croaked all night, ... kept me awake.
147. In hospital they wake patients at 6 a.m ... is much too early.
148. Don't believe everything ... you read in the newspapers.
149. Rovaer, ... was barking, frightened the children.
150. I have interest outside my daily professional work, ... gives me great pleasure.
151. He got lost on Snowdon ... was enveloped in fog
152. He admires Mrs Brown, ... surprises me.
153. Monday was the day on ... he left
154. We were taken everyweek to theatre, at ... newplays were constantly being produced.
155. In the street there were several people ... were waiting for the shop to open.
156. Britain imports many cars ... are made in Japan.
157. Most of the people ... were injured in the crash recovered quickly.
158. For years he lived a life ... was very pleasurable.
159. The wine ... they drank came from the cook's own vineyard
160. The climber spent 2 nights on the mountainside ... was swept by biting winds.
161. It is about a man called Wilson ... gave up work.
162. One evening he and the writer went to a restaurant ... they had a wonderful meal.

163. John, ... hadn't come to the party, looked anxiously at his watch.
164. There are a lot of people in your office ... want to talk to you.
165. The story ... we read is called "The Lotus Eater".
166. The demonstrators ... names had already been taken by the police refused to move.
167. Roses grow very well in my garden ... I bought from my neighbour.
168. Many things grow in my garden ... is a perfect paradise in June.
169. The man ... called here last night must have been Jeremy Taylor.
170. Show me ... you've got in your hand.
171. He poured water on the burning oil stove, ... was a crazy thing to do.
172. The crime wasn't discovered till 48 hours later, ... gave the criminals plenty of time to get away.
173. The students ... names are below the line on this list must sit the examination again.
174. They sang as they marched, ... helped them to forget how tired they were.
175. We travelled second class ... is cheaper than first class but more crowded.
176. He wasn't surprised at ... he saw because I had told him before.
177. She was once bitten by a monkey, ... made her dislike monkeys for the rest of her life.
178. The man ... she's getting married to is an artist.
179. My daughter has been married once before, ... means she should know what she's doing.
180. The engagement ... was announced last week came as a bit of a shock.
181. His previous marriage ... ended in divorce lasted five years.

182. My wife ... works as a journalist is an excellent cook.
183. The theatre to ... we were taken was the oldest one in Paris.
184. All these articles, ... have been given to us by well - wishers, are to be sold to raise money for the club.
185. I read a book ... was written by a friend of yours.
186. He said that ... frightened him was the appalling silence of the place.
187. Her mother and father-in-law, ... were always exceptionally kind, were very upset when the marriage broke down.
188. The children, ... spoke Spanish, went to live with their father after the divorce.
189. I am sure that ... you say is true.
190. All the roads were blocked by snow, ... meant that help could not reach us till the following spring.
191. He didn't know the language, ... made it difficult for him to get a job.
192. People ... names begin with A always get taken first.
193. I didn't buy anything because I didn't see ... I want.
194. He is the very man ... caused the accident.
195. Was it written by the same people ... wrote the musical "Cats" ?
196. He also wrote "Three nights in Paris" ... the critics disliked, if I remember rightly.
197. The board didn't even consider my application ... I thought was rather unfair.
198. Peter Norrish, ... nobody thought stood a chance of promotion, was given the job of assistant to the director.
199. She made me try to bend my toes, ... really hurt.
200. What's the name of the song ... you're whistling ?

# KEY

1 Who/that	41 Whom	81 Whose	121 Whom	161 Who
2 Who/that	42 Which	82 Who	122 Which	162 Where
3 Which	43 Whom	83 Which	123 Where	163 Who
4 Who	44 Whom	84 Which	124 Which	164 Who
5 Which	45 Who	85 Whom	125 Whom	165 Which/
6 Whose	46 Which	86 Which	126 Which	166 Whose
7 Which	47 Whose	87 Which	127 Which	167 Which
8 Which	48 That	88 Which	128 Which	168 Which
9 Whom	49 Whose	89 Who	129 Which	169 Who
10 Which	50 Which	90 Who	130 Whom	170 What
11 Who	51 Who	91 Which	131 What	171 Which
12 Which	52 Who	92 Who	132 Which	172 Which
13 Which	53 Which	93 Who	133 Which	173 Whose
14 Whose	54 Who	94 Whose	134 Which	174 Which
15 Which	55 Which/Which	95 Who	135 Whom	175 Which
16 Whose	56 Which	96 Whom	136 Whose	176 What
17 Whose	57 Who	97 Which	137 Who	177 Which
18 Whose	58 Whose	98 Which	138 That	178 Who
19 Who	59 Which	99 What	139 Which	179 Which
20 Which	60 Which	100 Whom	140 Which	180 Which
21 Who	61 Whom	101 Which	141 Who	181 Which
22 Who	62 Whom	102 Why	142 Where	182 Who
23 Which	63 Who	103 Which	143 Who	183 Which
24 Whose	64 Which	104 Which	144 Who	184 Which
25 Who	65 Which	105 Which	145 What	185 Which
26 Who	66 Whose	106 Which	146 Which	186 What
27 Which	67 Which	107 Who	147 Which	187 Who



28 Which	68 Which	108 When	148 That	188 Who
29 Who	69 Who	109 Which	149 Who	189 What
30 Who	70 Which	110 Which	150 Which	190 Which
31 Who	71 Who	111 That	151 Which	191 Which
32 Who	72 Who	112 Which	152 Which	192 Whose
33 Which	73 Who	113 Who	153 Which	193 What
34 Who	74 Which ... Which	114 Whom	154 Which	194 That/W
35 that	75 Which	115 which	155 Who	195 Who
36 Who	76 Who	116 Which	156 Which	196 Which
37 Which	77 Whose	117 Which	157 Who	197 Which
38 Which	78 Which	118 which	158 Which	198 Whom
39 Where	79 Which	119 That	159 Which	199 Which
40 Whose, which, who	80 Who	120 Whose	160 Which	200 that,

### **Dạng 3 : Kết hợp hai câu lại với nhau dùng đại từ quan hệ**

1. The doctor is with a patient. The patient's leg was broken in an accident.
2. Jane is the woman. Jane is going to China next year.
3. Janet wants a typewriter. The typewriter self corrects.
4. I found this book last week. The book contains some useful information.
5. Mr. Bryant's team has lost the game. He looks very sad.
6. James wrote an article. The article indicated that he disliked the President.
7. The director of the program is planning to retire next year. The director graduated from Harvard University.
8. This is the book. I've been looking for this book all year.
9. William wants to become a judge. William's brother is a lawyer.

10. The last record became a gold record. The record was produced by this company.
11. Checking accounts are very common now. The Checking accounts require a minimum balance.
12. Felipe bought a camera. The camera has three lenses.
13. Frank is the man. We are going to nominate Frank for the office in the school.
14. She's the woman. I wrote to her.
15. They're the people. I was talking about them.
16. John received a scholarship. John's grades are the highest in the school.
17. That is the dog. I was afraid of it.
18. Mr Cox is the manager. I am phoning for him.
19. That is the tunnel. He went through it.
20. She is the lady. He argued with her.
21. She is the policewoman. The driver spoke to her.
22. That is the mistake. I am complaining about it.
23. He is the man. The novel was written by him.
24. That is the shop. I bought a radio from it.
25. Mr Cox is the manager. He saw Ann.
26. Those men saved my life. They pulled me from the burning car.
27. That woman travels everywhere by private plane. She is a millionairess .
28. That hotel's near the beach. It's the most expensive.
29. Those birds migrate to Antartica. They breed near the North Pole.
30. He is the criminal. The police are looking for him.
31. These are the books. I use them in class.

32. The blue car crashed. It was a Ford.
33. That's the travel agency. It sells cheap tickets.
34. Those are the astronauts. They were in orbit for six months.
35. They're the spies. The police have been watching them.
36. That's the name. I couldn't remember it yesterday.
37. My parents send their best wishes. You met them last month.
38. The parcel contained a bomb. They had opened it carefully.
39. The match will be shown on TV tonight. They filmed it this afternoon.
40. His sisters are identical twins. I saw them last year.
41. The film is about two people. Their plane crashed in the jungle.
42. The play is about a King. His ambition is to rule the world.
43. The ballet is about the princess. Her stepmother hated her.
44. The song is about 2 young lovers. Their romance ended happily.
45. Charlie Chaplin died in 1977. His film amused millions.
46. Rod Lee, the actor, has just won an Oscar. I know her sister.
47. Our teacher speaks English perfectly. Her parents are Greek.
48. The Taylor family now live in America. We bought their house.
49. I love this song. Catherine sang the song.
50. My parents gave me a birthday present. I like it.
51. I love this song. The song was written by Catherine.
52. I want to know about Miss Green. She has just won the gold medal.
53. This is a new hotel. There are modern facilities in it.
54. Very few people understood his lecture. The subject of his lecture was very strange.
55. I've lost my ticket. It cost five pounds.

56. The headmaster spoke to the boys. Their work was below standard.
57. Trams were made long ago. They are still used in several cities.
58. The secretary wrote me a letter. She knows Fred.
59. Family dinner is often served at 7 o'clock, It's the biggest meal of the day.
60. My sister wants to speak to you. You met her yesterday.
61. It is that man. He wrote this novel.
62. This doesn't show the place. The birds come from that place.
63. The old man has died. You were talking to me about him.
64. He sat on the table. One leg of the table was nearly broken down.
65. Hoankiem lake is a historical place. It's water is always blue.
66. He can change the situation. He always likes to do something new.
67. That is just the thing. I didn't want it to happen.
68. You lost a key. Did you find it ?
69. Jill is wearing a jacket. I like it.
70. I gave you some money. Where is it ?
71. She told a story. I didn't believe it.
72. You bought some oranges. How much were they ?
73. You gave me an umbrella. I've lost it..
74. They invited some people to dinner. The people didn't come.
75. My secretary is a man. He can speak 2 languages.
76. Some people live next door to us. They are very nice.
77. Then a man passed me. He was driving a large modern car.
78. I saw some people. Their car was broken down.
79. This is a photograph of our classmates. We went on holiday with them.

80. Jack has 3 brothers. All of them are married
81. Ann has a lot of books. She hasn't read most of them
82. They've got 3 cars. They never use 2 of them.
83. A bus crashed into a van yesterday. It was carrying 30 passengers.
84. When I was walking home, there was a man. He was following me.
85. I was waken up by the baby. She was crying.
86. At the end of the street, there is a path. It leads to the river.
87. Some paintings were stolen from the place. They belong to the Queen.
88. The window has now been repaired. Its was broken in last night's storm.
89. Most of the suggestions weren't very practical. They were made at the meeting.
90. The paintings haven't been found yet. They were stolen from the museum.
91. Did you hear the boy ? He was knocked down on his way to school this morning.
92. Do you know that girl ? Tom is talking to her.
93. That man was taken to hospital. He was injured in the accident.
94. This road joins the 2 villages. It is very narrow.
95. I live in a pleasant room. It overlooks the garden.
96. It's been raining all day. I hate this weather.
97. We went for a very long walk. It was very boring.
98. Ann had been sleeping in the back of the car. She felt quite fresh and wanted to go on.
99. William wanted to take the mountain road. His tyres were nearly new.
100. Jack's tyres were very old. He wanted to stick to the tarred road.

## KEY

1. The doctor is with a patient whose leg was broken in an accident.
2. Jane is the woman who is going to China next year.
3. Janet wants a typewriter which self corrects.
4. The book that I found last week contains some useful information .
5. Mr. Bryant whose team has lost the game looks very sad.
6. The article that James wrote indicated that he disliked the President .
7. The director of the program who graduated from Harvard University is planning to retire next year.
8. This is the book that I've been looking for all the year.
9. William whose brother is a lawyer wants to become a judge.
10. The last record which was produced by this company became a gold record.
11. Checking accounts which require a minimum balance are very common now.
12. Felipe bought a camera which has three lenses.
13. Frank is the man whom we are going to nominate for the office in the school.
14. She's the woman to whom I wrote.
15. They're the people who (whom) I was talking about.
16. John whose grades are the highest in the school, has received a scholarship.
17. That is the dog which I was afraid of.
18. Mr Cox whom I am phoning for is the manager
19. That is the tunnel which he went through.



20. She is the lady with whom he argued.
21. She is the policewoman to whom the driver spoke
22. That is the mistake which I am complaining about
23. He is the man by whom the novel was written
24. That is the shop where I bought a radio from
25. Mr Cox who saw Ann is the manager.
26. Those men, who pulled me from the burning car, saved my life.
27. That woman who travels everywhere by private plane is a  
millionairess.
28. That hotel which is near the beach is the most expensive.
29. Those birds which breed near the North Pole migrate to  
Antartica.
30. He is the criminal whom the police are looking for.
31. These are the books which I use in class.
32. The blue car which crashed was a Ford.
33. That's the travel agency that sells cheap tickets.
34. Those're the astronauts who were in orbit for six months.
35. They're the spies whom the police have been watching.
36. That's the name that I couldn't remember yesterday.
37. My parents, whom you met last month, send their best wishes.
38. The parcel which they had opened carefully contained a bomb.
39. The match which they filmed this afternoon will be shown on  
TV tonight.
40. His sisters who (whom) I saw last year are identical twins.
41. The film is about two people whose plane crashed in the jungle
42. The play is about a King whose ambition is to rule the world.

43. The ballet is about the princess whose stepmother hated her.
44. The song is about 2 young lovers whose romance ended happily.
45. Charlie Chaplin, whose film amused millions died in 1977.
46. Rod Lee, the actor, whose sister I know, has just won an Oscar.
47. Our teacher, whose parents are Greek, speaks English perfectly.
48. The Taylor family whose house we bought now live in America.
49. I love this song which Catherine sang.
50. I like the birthday present which my parents gave me.
51. I love this song which was written by Catherine.
52. I want to know about Miss Green who has just won the gold medal.
53. This is a new hotel in which (where) there are modern facilities.
54. Very few people understood his lecture, the subject of which was very strange.
55. I've lost my ticket which cost five pounds.
56. The headmaster spoke to the boys whose work was below standard.
57. Trams which were made long ago are still used in several cities.
58. The secretary who wrote me a letter knows Fred.
59. Family dinner, which is often served at 7 o'clock, is the biggest meal of the day.
60. My sister whom you met yesterday wants to speak to you.
61. It is that man who wrote this novel.
62. This doesn't show the place where the birds come from.
63. The old man who (whom) you were talking to me about has died.
64. He sat on the table one leg of which was nearly broken down.

65. HoanKiem Lake the water of which is always blue is a historical place.
66. He who always likes to do something new, can change the situation.
67. That is just the thing that I didn't want to happen.
68. Did you find the key that you lost ?
69. Jill is wearing a jacket that I like.
70. Where is some money that I gave you ?
71. She told a story that I didn't believe.
72. How much were some oranges which you bought ?
73. I've lost an umbrella which you gave me.
74. The people who (whom) they invited to dinner didn't come.
75. My secretary is a man who can speak 2 languages.
76. Some people who live next door to us are very nice.
77. Then a man who was driving a large modern car passed me.
78. I saw some people whose car was broken down.
79. This is a photograph of our classmates who we went on holiday with.
80. Jack has 3 brothers all of whom are married.
81. Ann has a lot of books most of which she hasn't read.
82. They've got 3 cars 2 of which they never use.
83. A bus which was carrying 30 passengers crashed into a van yesterday.
84. When I was walking home, there was a man who was following me.
85. I was waken up by the baby who was crying.
86. At the end of the street, there is a path which leads to the river.

87. Some paintings which were stolen from the place belong to the Queen.
88. The window which was broken in last night's storm has now been repaired.
89. Most of the suggestions which were made at the meeting weren't very practical.
90. The paintings which were stolen from the museum haven't been found yet.
91. Did you hear the boy who was knocked down on his way to school this morning ?
92. Do you know that girl who (whom) Tom is talking to ?
93. That man who was injured in the accident was taken to hospital.
94. This road which joins the 2 villages is very narrow.
95. I live in a pleasant room which overlooks the garden.
96. I hate this weather which has been raining all day.
97. We went for a very long walk which was very boring.
98. Ann who had been sleeping in the back of the car felt quite fresh and wanted to go on.
99. William whose tyres were nearly new wanted to take the mountain road.
100. Jack whose tyres were very old wanted to stick to the tarred road.

## V. CÁC BÀI TẬP VỀ GIỚI TỪ

**Dạng 1: Chọn giới từ thích hợp để hoàn chỉnh các câu sau :**

**Bài tập 1 :**

1. My present job isn't wonderful, but I prefer it. . . <sup>to</sup> what I did before.

2. As I was coming out of the room, I collided . . . . . somebody who was coming in.
3. Jim is a photographer. He specialises ..... sports photography.
4. I felt quite cold but Peter insisted . . . . . having the window open.
5. Some words are difficult to translate . . . . . one language . . . . . another.
6. What happened . . . . . the money I lent you ? How did you spend it ?
7. The teacher decided to split the class . . . . . four groups.
8. I filled the tank but unfortunately I filled it . . . . . the wrong kind of petrol.
9. Janet warned me. . . . . the water. He said it wasn't safe to drink.
10. Our neighbours complained. . . . . us. . . . . the noise we made last night.
11. He loves his job. He thinks. . . . . his job all the time, he dreams . . . . . it, he talks . . . . . it and he is fed up with hearing . . . . . it.
12. Jill used to write to me quite often but I haven't heard. . . . . her. . . . . ages now.
13. I apologised. . . . . Bridget for the misunderstanding.
14. I thanked everybody. . . . . all the help they had given me.
15. Look . . . . . these flowers. Aren't they pretty ?
16. I saw Sue as I was cycling along the road. I shouted . . . . . her but she didn't hear me.
17. My home town is not especially interesting. It's not famous . . . . . anything.

18. You look bored. You don't seem interested. . . . what I'm saying.
19. I am not ashamed. . . . what I did. In fact, I'm quite proud. . . . it.
20. I suggested we should all go out for a meal but nobody else was keen. . . . the idea.
21. The platform was crowded. . . . people waiting . . . the train.
22. She's much more successful than I am. Sometimes I feel a bit jealous . . . her.
23. She is a very honest person. I don't think she is capable. . . . telling a lie.
24. I am not surprised she changed her mind. . . . the last moment. That's typical . . . her.
25. Do you want to watch the news. . . . television ? No, I'm not interested. . . . the news.
26. John has no money of his own. He totally depends. . . . his parents.
27. Why are you always so rude. . . . your parents ? Can't you be nice. . . . them?
28. The people next door are furious. . . . us. . . . making so much noise last night.
29. The man who was interviewed for the job was intelligent but we aren't impressed. . . . his appearance.
30. Everything can be explained. There're reasons. . . . everything.
31. What was Emma's reaction. . . . the news ?
32. I managed to put the fire out. . . . a fire extinguisher.
33. I like the picture hanging. . . . the wall. . . . the kitchen.
34. . . . hearing that the plane had been diverted, they left the airport.



35. He has behaved . . . . . the most extraordinary way, I can't account. . . . .
36. It was 800 km and I drive . . . . . 100k.p.h, so I'll be there . . . . . 8 hours .
37. There was an accident. . . . . the crossroads . . . . . midnight last night. Two men were taken. . . . . hospital I believe one of them is still. . . . . hospital.
38. He went. . . . . sea . . . . . 18, and spent all his working life . . . . . sea. He retired. . . . . 56 and went to live. . . . . the country.
39. . . . . the beginning of the textbook there is a preface and . . . . . the end there is an index.
40. . . . . first her father refused to allow her to go back. . . . work, but . . . . the end he agreed.
41. He isn't living. . . . home now, but if you write. . . . his home they'll forward the letter. . . . his new address.
42. I saw Tom . . . . . the bus stop this morning but couldn't speak. . . . him because we were standing. . . . a queue and he was. . . . the front of it and I was . . . . the back.
43. I'm interested. . . . chess but I'm not very good. . . . it.
44. Who is the girl. . . . the blue dress, sitting. . . . the head of the table ?
45. . . . my astonishment I was the only person. . . . the bar. Everyone else has gone . . . the Casino.
46. The Loch Ness Monster is supposed to live. . . . the bottom of the Loch and come . . . the surface from time. . . . time.
47. I'm going to Bath. . . . Monday . . . . Tom. Would you like to come . . . . us. - Are you going. . . . bus ?
48. I saw him standing. . . . the queue but I don't know whether he got. . . . the bus or not.

49. How do you go . . . . . school ?-It depends . . . . .the weather  
. . . . . wet days I go . . . . . tube, if the weather is fine I go  
. . . . . foot.
50. I want to post this. . . . .a friend. . . . .Italy. Will I have to pay  
duty. . . . .it ?
51. According. . . . .Tom, it is impossible to live. . . . .Paris. ✓. less  
than \$10000 a year.
52. You ought to be ashamed. . . . .yourself coming. . . . .my nice  
clean kitchen. . . . .muddy boots.
53. Children get presents. . . . .Christmas and. . . . .their birthday.
54. He arrived. . . . .London at 6 p.m. . . . .a foggy November day.  
We often have fogs. . . . .November.
55. Alternatively you could get a 14 bus. . . . .this stop and ask the  
conductor to tell you where you get.
56. Can I have Monday. . . . . ? or can I have a holiday. . . . .  
Monday ? I want to go. . . . .my grandson's wedding.
57. I'm tired. . . . .working. . . . .the suburbs and I've asked to be  
transferred. . . . .our central branch.
58. We have to go. . . . .car we can't go . . . . . bus . . . . . account  
. . . . . the bus strike.
59. This picture was painted. . . . . Picasso, and there's another  
Picasso. . . . .the opposite wall.
60. He accused me. . . . .selling secret information. . . . .enemy.
61. He was . . . . . prison. . . . . years . . . ✓ . . . that time he became  
interested. . . . .pigeons.
62. . . . .the age. . . 18 he was sent to prison. ✓ . . . theft.
63. "Much ado about nothing" is writer. . . . .Shakespeare, and you'll  
find more. . . . .his play . . . . .the bookcase. . . . .the corner.
64. I want 2 seats. . . . .Romeo and Juliet. . . . .Friday night. 16

65. He isn't independent. . . . any means. He depends. . . . his father. . . . everything.
66. He invited me to dinner. . . . his clubband. . . . the meal he asked me. . . . advice about his investments.
67. I was horrified. ✓ . . . his appearance. He looked as if he hadn't slept. . . . weeks .
68. . . . .first, driving on the left is confusing, but you'll soon get used. . . . it .
69. I've heard such a lot. . . . him that I'm looking forward. . . . seeing him very much.
70. They succeed. . . . escaping. . . . the burning house.
71. I'm sorry . . . being late. . . Monday or I'm sorry. ✓ . . . Monday.
72. Wine is good. . . you, but it is expensive. . . . England because there is a fairly high tax. ✓ . . it.
73. I threw the ball . . . . Peter, but instead . . . . throwing it back . . . . me, he ran . . . . and hit it.
74. I object . . . . being kept waiting. Why can't you be. ✓ .time ?
75. I was so afraid. . . missing the train that I took a taxi. . . the station.
76. I'm not interested. . . anything that happened. ✓ .the very remote past.
77. There is no point. ✓ . going. . . car if we can't park near the theatre.
78. I've heard such a lot. . . him that I'm looking forward. . . seeing him very much.
79. The children are very fond . . . swimming. . . summer they spend most. . . their time. . . the water.
80. He opened the door. . . a rusty key and went down the steps . . ✓ . the cellar, followed by Bill. . . a torch.

81. He died. . . .heart failure. . . . Tuesday night. His wife is still suffering. . . .shock.
82. He was fined. . . .parking his car. . . .a no parking area.
83. She made a point. . . . coming late so that everyone would look . . . . her .
84. What's the best way. . . .cooking a lobster ? Cook it. . . .boiling salted water, and serve it cold. . . .mayonnaise.
85. What platform does a train. . . . NewYork leave. . . . ? Platform 8, and you'd better hurry. It'll be leaving. . . . a minute.
86. I'm sorry . . . . Tom(I pity him)He has worked . . . . Brown and company . . . . ten years and now the firm has been taken . . . . by Jones Ltd, and they are going to dismiss him.
87. I'm waiting. . . .my friend. He'llbe here. . . .a moment .
88. You can't rely ..... him. He's almost always late. . . . appointments .
89. My aupair girl takes care. . . .my little boys. . . . the afternoons. She's very good. . . . children.
90. . . . .Fairy stories, stepmothers are always unkind. . . .their stepchildren, but my stepmother has always been good. . . .me.
91. Don't ask the office. . . .information you need .
92. I was . . . .the impression that I had paid you. . . . the work you did. . . .me .
93. I disapprove. . . .people who make all sorts. . . .promises which they have no intention. . . .keeping
94. I'm not keen. . . .cooking,but I prefer it. . . .washing up .
95. I don't object. . . . lending you my pen,but wouldn't it be better if you had a pen. . . .your own ?.
96. What. . . .taking the day. . . .and spending it . . . .the seaside ?

97. The complete set. . . .books can be ordered. . . . \$10 . . . .Jones and company.
98. If you do not comply. . . .the traffic regulations you'll get. . . trouble. . . .the police.
99. He said he was . . . .debt and asked me. . . . a loan. . . . \$50
100. He was wounded. . . .the shoulder. . . . a bullet fired . . . .at upstairs window.

## KEY

- |   |                 |                        |
|---|-----------------|------------------------|
| 1. to                                       | 18. in          | 36. at, in             |
| 2. with                                     | 19. of ..... of | 37. at, at, to, in     |
| 3. in                                       | 20. on          | 38. to, at, at, at, in |
| 4. on                                       | 21. with, for   | 39. at, at             |
| 5. from.....into                            | 22. of          | 40. at, to, in         |
| 6. with                                     | 23. of          | 41. at, to, to         |
| 7. into                                     | 24. at, of      | 42. at, to, in, at, at |
| 8. in                                       | 25. on, in      | 43. in, at             |
| 9. about                                    | 26. on          | 44. in, at             |
| 10. to ..... about                          | 27. to, to      | 45. to, in, to         |
| 11. about ..... about<br>.....about...about | 28. with, for   | 46. at, to, to         |
| 12. of ..... for                            | 29. by          | 47. on, with, with, by |
| 13. to                                      | 30. for         | 48. in, on             |
| 14. for                                     | 31. to          | 49. to, on, on, by, or |
| 15. at                                      | 32. with        | 50. to, in, on         |
| 16. at                                      | 33. on, in      | 51. to, in, on         |
| 17. for                                     | 34. on          | 52. of, into, in/ with |
|   | 35. in, for     | 53. at, on             |

54. in, on, in	70. in, from	85. for, from, in
55. at/from,	71. for, on, about	86. for, for, for, over
56. off, on, to	72. for, in, on	87. for, in
57. of, in, to	73. to, of, to, away	88. on, for
58. by, by, on, of	74. to, on	89. of, in, with
59. by, on	75. of, to	90. in, to, to
60. of, to	76. in, in	91. for, with
61. in, for, during, in	77. of, by	92. under, for, for
62. at, of, for	78. about, to	93. of, of, of
63. by, of, in, in	79. of, in, of, in	94. on, to
64. for, on/for	80. with, into,	95. to, of
65. by, on, for	with	96. about, off, at/by
66. at, during, for	81. of, on, from	97. of, for, from
67. by, for	82. for, in	98. with, into, with
68. at, to	83. of, at	99. in, for, of
69. of, to	84. of, in, with	100. in, by, from

**Dạng 2 : Hoàn chỉnh đoạn văn sau bằng cách điền vào các chỗ trống những giới từ thích hợp.**

**Exercise 1 :**

I'm Kurt Thommen (1). ~~at~~ Zurich (2). ~~in~~ Switzerland. I'm a photographer (3). ~~for~~ a wildlife magazine. I need English because most (4). . . . handbooks are written in it and I travel alot. Next month, I'm going to visit South -East- Asia. I hope I'll be able to make myself understood, I've found that it is often easier to speak English. (5). ~~to~~ other foreigners than native speakers. One American colleague doesn't speak slowly enough (6). ~~to~~ me to understand him. It's is useful to know English but one thing I



really don't like is the way English expressions have been incorporated(7). . . . other languages.

### *Exercise 2 :*

A new restaurant (1). . . . a difference has opened (2) . . . the High Street next door (3). . . . the Royal Theatre Bristol. It's called "Starters" and it runs (4). . . . Carol and Phillip Wells who opened a similar restaurant in London last year. Instead (5). . . . a traditional three-course-meal, customers can choose whatever they want (6). . . . a list of over a hundred starters or first course. The list also includes recipes from all over the world and customers are recommended to choose (7). . . . least 3 starters to make a satisfying meal and prices vary depending (8). . . . what you have.

### *Exercise 3 :*

The "Moon trap" is a new film made (1). . . . a young Canadian director called Melvin Strang. The main part (2). . . . the film are played by Sid Cheung and Julie Plein who last appeared in "Music for ever" (3). . . . this new film, they start as a young married couple who buy an old house in the country (4). . . . living there (5) . . . . a few weeks strange things begin to happen.

Some of the furniture in the house disappears and can't be found, windows break and pictures fall (6). . . . walls (7). . . . night they hear crying noises, and when the Moon is up, loud screams can be heard (8). . . . the wood nearby.

### *Exercise 4 :*

This museum is (1). . . . the centre of the town, a few metres (2) . . . . the cathedral, and near the market. It contains dolls, doll's houses, books, games and past times, mechanical and contructional toys (3). . . . this collection there are toys made by all sorts (4) . . . . toy manufactures (5). . . . the most important (6). . . . the smallest. Many collectors of toys think that the second half (7) . . . . the nineteenth century was the best period (8). . . . toy production.

### *Exercise 5 :*

Along (1) . . . jogging and swimming, cycling is one(2) . . . the best all round forms of exercises : It can help to increase strength and energy, giving you more efficient muscles and strong heart. But increasing your strength is not the only advantage of cycling. Because you're not carrying the weight of your body(3) . . . your feet,it's a good form of exercise (4) . . . people (5) . . . painful feet or backs. However, (6) . . . all forms of exercise it's important to start slowly and build up gently . Doing too much, too quickly can damage muscles that aren't used (7) . . . working. If you have any doubts (8) . . . . . taking up cycling for health reasons talk (9) . . . your doctor and ask his/her advice.

### *Exercise 6 :*

The job sounded interesting :with a fashion house (1) . . . the city centre. The telephone conversation I had (2) . . . them were relaxed and friendly,and the letter (3) . . . . . the boss had also been a friendly one . He had invited me to visit the office and join some (4) . . . them (5) . . . lunch. The appointment was (6) . . . 12 o'clock.

I naturally thought long and hard (7) . . . . . what to wear (8) . . . the fashion business ,of course,you were expected to be smart. The question was whether to be business like, or fashionable. There was something else to think (9) . . . too. I had to get there (10) . . . train and bus. the journey was over 2 hours, and that affects the clothes you choose.

### *Exercise 7 :*

Many thanks (1. ) . . . your long and interesting letter. What a pity though, that you had to write( 2) . . . what Jonathan has been up( 3) . . . in it. I must say seemed( 4. ) . . . me quite unnecessary. I couldn't of course, let Amanda read it, though she kept asking (5) . . . days, rather thoughtless( 6) . . . you ,dear,wasn't it because naturally the children are interested (7) . . . your letters . You didn't tell me ,(8) . . . . . the way,that there was a bomb explosion

in your office building shortly (9). . . . you arrived, but I suppose you didn't want to worry about us. Were you (10). . . . your danger? If things get any worse you'll just have to come home, and we have to manage (11). . . . all that money.

*Exercise 8 :*

I heard (1). . . . the bomb (2). . . . Mr Japp. A very curious visit which I must tell you (3). . . . He came round the other evening (4). . . . the book you wanted. It was the most time, (5). . . . six just as we were (6). . . . to have dinner, but I felt that I had to invite him (7). . . . since he'd taken the trouble to bring your book round and he looked rather miserable standing (8). . . . the wet snow outside the front door wearing water proof boots and funny fur hat. He didn't need any persuading practically knocked me over (9). . . . his eagerness to get (10). . . . the house.

*Exercise 9 :*

Some friends visiting me (1). . . . Caribbean remarked (2). . . . the tobacco I was smoking. It seemed that the same tobacco was popular (3). . . . their country, but I was paying four times more (4). . . . it than they were. They offered to send me some when they got home again. I was very grateful, and promised to pay them for it. Some weeks later, an official letter arrived (5). . . . a brown envelope. It was (6). . . . the customs office, informing me that they had intercepted a package (7). . . . my name and address (8). . . . it. The package was found to contain a letter and some contraband : four packages (9). . . . tobacco.

*Exercise 10 :*

"Ordinary" was the worst insult she could find (1). . . . anything. I remember her taking me shopping and the look (2). . . . scorn (3). . . . which she would freeze the shop assistants when they suggested that some dresses or pairs (4). . . . shoes were very popular—we've sold fifty already this week. That was all she needed to hear.

"No", she would say, "we're interested (5). . . . that. Haven't you got something a little more unusual ?". And then the assistant would bring out the strange colour no one else would buy-stuff which would have had to be sold (6). . . . cheaply (7). . . . sale time at the end (8). . . . the season but (9). . . . my mother.

### *Exercise 11 :*

Beatrice had had a number of jobs. None of them (1). . . . very long she had been a bus conductor (2). . . . one time, then a postman, and sometimes she gave up her job when she got tired (3). . . . it. Sometimes she was sacked. Then one day she saw an advertisement (4). . . . a job a canal warden. She applied (5). . . . the job, just what a canal warden did. Surprisingly, she got a job, and started to work a few days later. As far as she could see, her duties were to wear an official cap and coat, and walk along the banks (6). . . . the canal enjoying the fresh air.

(7). . . . days when it rained, she would sit (8). . . . a cafe nearby, and watch the canal (9). . . . there, she told us it was the best job she had ever had.

### *Exercise 12 :*

The legal limit (1). . . . driving after drinking alcohol is 80 milligrams (2). . . . alcohol in 100 millilitres of blood, when tested. But there is no sure way (3). . . . telling how much you can drink before you reach this limit. It varies (4). . . . each person depending (5). . . . your weight, your sex, what you've just eaten or what sort of drinks you've had. Some people might reach their limit after only (6). . . . three standard drinks. In fact, your drink ability can be affected (7). . . . just one or two drinks. Even if you're below the legal limit, you could still be taken (8). . . . court if a police officer thinks your driving has been affected by alcohol.

### *Exercise 13 :*

Last Tuesday I took my two nieces ,aged three and five to town (1). . . . the car. It began to pour (2). . . . rain so I decided I would leave the children in the car,while I dashed( 3) . . . . a shop I warned the girls not to touch anything and told them. I would be back (4). . . . a few minutes. Then I locked all the doors and left them happily looking out (5). . . . the window I was back at the car( 6). . . . . less than five minutes but the girl had vanished ! (7). . . . a panic. I ran (8). . . . the corner of the street but there was no sign (9). . . . them.

### *Exercise 14 :*

Proof (1). . . . identity,showing name and present address will be required (2). . . . a Membership Card can be issued. You ll receive only one Library Membership Card. It's important that they keep card (3). . . . your possession and always have it (4). . . . you when you **wish** to borrow or renew books. Take care (5). . . . your Library **Membership** Card if it is used( 6). . . . someone else you 'll be responsible (7). . . . any books borrowed (8). . . . it. There will be a charge, please tell the librarian if you change your address so that a new card may be given (9). . . . you. A charge will be made (10). . . . the replacement of lost cards.

### *Exercise 15 :*

Your Library Membership Card must be produced each time you wish to borrow books (1) . . . . . the library. It will be returned (2). . . . you immediately,it has been read as these cards are not held in the library. You may borrow up ( 3). . . . four books. Borrowing will be made quicker and easier (4) . . . . . everyone if the books you are taking out are given to the assistant who opens (5). . . . . the date label( 6) . . . . . your Library Membership Card (7). . . . the top book. Returned books should be presented( 8). . . . this way except that the Membership Card need not be shown. Books should be returned (9). . . . . the due date. Fines will be charged (10). . . . books returned late.



### *Exercise 16 :*

Books may be renewed (1) . . . bringing them to the library, together (2) . . . your Membership Card, or by starting (3) . . . each book the number (4) . . . the label, the date due and your name and address. Books (5) . . . the barcode instead have a date card : please state the number on this (6) . . . renewal.

Books may be renewed by post, or personal visit (7) . . . the detail, once only from the initial return date. Postal renewal cards are available (8) . . . all public desks in the library. Books (9) . . . demand by other readers will not be renewed. Fines will be charged (10) . . . the current rate on all books renewed late.

### *Exercise 17 :*

He was born (1) . . . a very poor part of London. His father is a comedian and his mother works as a dancer and singer. Neither (2) . . . them was very successful, however, and the family had very little money (3) . . . one time they were so poor that he and his brothers had only one pair of shoes (4) . . . them and they had to take turns wearing them. The first time he himself earned any money (5) . . . . . dancing and singing, he was only five years old. He did many kinds of jobs but what he loved most was working (6) . . . the theatre. When he was (7) . . . . . 15 he joined a travelling theatre company and went (8) . . . . . trips to America (9) . . . one such tour he was offered a part in a film, so he went to Hollywood, where he eventually became both an actor and a film director.

### *Exercise 18 :*

Bob Geldof was born (1) . . . in Dublin, where he went to school. Although he was an intelligent student, he left school (2) . . . few qualifications. He had a variety (3) . . . jobs in England, Spain and Canada (4) . . . eventually becoming a successful pop star.

However, he is now best known (5) . . the work he had done to help starving people (6) . . . Ethiopia. Like many other people he was shocked (7) . . . television film of people dying (8) . . . hunger



there in 1984. He therefore decided that he must persuade famous British pop singers to make a record together, and use the profits (9). . . this to send money and food . The record called "DO you know It's Chirstmas ?" was a great success and made a lot of money all (10). . . which was used (11). . . Ethiopia.

### *Exercise 19 :*

In 1960, Laura Ashley, a housewife (1). . . young children, began designing and selling clothes (2). . . some early success, her husband, Bernard. an experienced business man, joined her and was able to provide considerable help and advice. The business expanded rapidly. Laura had started working (3). . . home but soon there were several " Laura Ashley" shops where women could buy pretty , traditional clothes ( 4) . . . a country style, made (5). . . natural materials (6) . . . . . the 1980s the company had developed ( 7). . . a multi-million pound international organization (8). . . branches (9). . . places as far apart as London, Brussel, San Francisco and Tokyo.

### *Exercise 20 :*

San Francisco is where I grew (1). . . between the age (2). . . two and ten where I lived (3). . . a period when I was ( 4). . . 13 and again as a married man (5). . . the ages of 37 (6). . . 51. So a quite a big slice of my life has been spent there. My mother, who is now 90, still lives (7). . . Los Gatos, about 60 miles south of San Francisco. Even though I have since lived in Switzerland and settle (8). . . London over 25 years ago. I have kept property in California (9). . . sentimental reasons. I was born in Newyork and I love the United States. It is still a land (10). . . enormous drive, strength, imagination and opportunities. I know it well. having played in every town and (11). . . the war ,in every army camp. I have grown new roots in London as I did in Switzerland and I am asked now where I want to live permanantly, I would say London. But I will always remain an American citizen.

### *Exercise 21 :*

(1). . . those days,the journey (2). . . . . our village in the hill (3). . . the nearest big town was not easy one. There was a bus twice a week,and it was necessary to walk (4). . . three kilometres( 5). . . where the bus waited. There was no motorroad to village itself in those days. Nowadays, The villagers have much easier life, and that long walk is necessary.

My father used to take things to sell (6). . . the town,and we carried everything down the steep, rocky path early (7). . . the morning. I remember how excited I was when he took me with him (8). . . the first time. I was only eight years old and everything was big adventure. The bus was full (9) . . . . . travellers and stopped (10). . . every village and turned many corners above narrow valleys until it got (11). . . the plan. That took four hours.

### *Exercise 22 :*

The novel entitled HMS Ulysses is (1). . . men,ships and war (2). . . the awful condition (3). . . the North Atlantic and Arctic,and does not have a happy ending. If you like happy endings,this is just not the book (4). . . you. The action takes place (5). . . the second World War and centres (6). . . the Ulysses ,just one ship among the many ships that guarded the Allied supply lines( 7). . . the north Atlantic. Its story suggests that war is pointless and wasteful,destroying good men and good ships (8). . . no purpose.

### *Exercise 23 :*

Every species (1). . . animals has its own character . Cats, (2) . . . example,are more independent than dogs and have their own private lives while dogs are (3). . . the whole,more domestic and useful than cats. Horses,(4). . . the past had been even more useful (5). . . the human race than dogs, but it 's probably true to say that (6). . . all animals,the cow is the most valuable. The cow provides the whole range (7). . . . . foodstuffs : milk, butter, cheese, yoghurt and cream, and many people also eat its meat (8). . .

India, however, most people do not eat beef and will do anything to avoid killing cows.

*Exercise 24 :*

By the time (1). . . Queen Victoria, enthusiastic 17- year- old boys were writing out rules .

(2). . . what had once been no more than violent military or village fun. They also took the game ( 3). . . them (4). . . the university, where they needed other rules, so that people who had played very different kinds of football( 5). . . school could play together successfully (6). . . university. This was how the foot ball Association came (7). . . being. One public school, however, refused to cooperate, its delegates objecting (8). . . the new universal game. This school- Rugby- left the new association to play its own game( 9). . . its own oval- shaped ball that could be carried as well as kicked (10). . . this way the "soccer"(11). . . the association and the "rugger" of Rugby were born and went their separate ways.

*Exercise 25 :*

The cinema, since its inception, has been in direct competition (1). . . a variety (2). . . other forms of entertainment. These include : participating (3). . . and watching sports and games, acting in or going to live theatre, performing (4). . . or listening (5). . . radio, watching TV, and most recently- playing video games. The live theatre has not done particularly well in the face of competition( 6). . . the cinema , while in turn the cinema has not done too well when faced (7). . . the cosmetic miracle of millions (8). . . private screens in people's own homes. Looking back (9) . . . . . the way (10) . . . . . which TV has displaced the movies since the early 1950s, we might even say that the cinema was the dinosaur ancestor (11). . . TV, rather than that TV is a miniature cinema.

*Exercise 26 :*

There was one thing that I found rather strange (1). . . my first day as housekeeper (2) . . . Monk's house. The floor (3). . . the house were very thin. The bathroom was directly (4). . . the

kitchen, and when Mrs Woolf was having her bath (5). . . breakfast, I could hear her talking (6). . . herself (7). . . and on she went, talk, talk, talk, asking questions and giving herself the answers. I thought there must be two or three people up there (8). . . her. When Mr Woolf saw that I looked surprised, he told me that Mrs Woolf always said the sentences out loud that she had written during the night. She needed to know if they sounded right and the bath was a good place (9). . . trying them out.

### *Exercise 27 :*

I can always remember her coming (1). . . the house each day (2). . . the writing room, when I rang the bell (3). . . lunch (4). . . one o'clock she used to walk down (5). . . the garden smoking one of her favourite cigarettes (6). . . a long holder. She was tall and thin and very graceful. She had large, deep sad eyes and a wide curving mouth. I think perhaps it was this that made her face seem particular beautiful. She wore long skirts- usually blue or brown-(7). . . the fashion of the day, and silk jackets of the same color.

Her cigarettes were made (8. ) . . a special tobacco called MyMixture. Mr Woolf bought it (9). . . her in London, and (10). . . the evenings, they used to sit by the fire and make these cigarettes themselves.

### *Exercise 28 :*

My wife and I have always enjoyed travelling (1 ). . . sea, and last year we decided to go (2). . . a Mediterranean cruise. Although our holiday was rather expensive we thought that the high standard (3). . . accommodation the first-class food and the many interesting places we saw were well-worth the price we paid. We found that most (4). . . the other passengers were friendly and interesting, but there was one man , Mr James, who irritated and annoyed us, and not only us but all the other who shared our table. Whenever we talked about something he said that he was an expert (5) . . it. He had , apparently, read more books, visited more countries and studied

more languages,than anyone else. (6). . . a few days,we ate our meals (7). . . silence,because nobody wanted to begin a conversation that would soon be taken over (8). . . this man .

*Exercise 29 :*

Herry bought some presents and came out (1). . . the shop. Although the sun had clouded over , he didn't feel like hurrying. There was all the time he needed to do what he wanted. He only regretted that I was not quite warm enough to sit down (2). . . one of those little tables (3). . . the pavements and takes a cup of coffee. This would have reminded him (4. ) . . his first trip abroad and the delight he had taken (5). . . such everyday differences as the drinking of coffee (6). . . the open air. He wanted to experience all the simple pleasures again. As he walked down the quiet London Street and turned (7). . . the avenue (8). . . which he lived, he felt so glad to be alive that he almost shouted aloud (9). . . joy.

**Exercise 30 :**

The sun was going down beyond great banks (1). . . cloud which were full (2). . . . . orange-pink light (3). . . ,but he didn't want to go back of Aunt Daisy and Uncle Ted were still there, because his mother would only send him straight to bed out of the way. So he turned away (4). . . home and walked down the lane past the football field,kicking a stone (5). . . him at the shoes. A couple (6). . . . . dogs,one large,black and smooth haired,the other smaller (7). . . a long black and white coat,played (8). . . the edge (9). . . the field running round and round, jumping (10). . . each other and sometimes rolling over and over together, totally content (11). . . each other's company.

### Exercise 31 :

In a village (1) . . . the east coast of Scotland, people were waiting anxiously (2) . . . news. Two of their fishing boats had been caught in the storm which had blown up (3) . . . the night. In the cottages round the harbour people stood (4) . . . their doors, too worried to talk. The rest of the fishing fleet had reached the



harbour before dark, and the men (5). . . these ships waited and watched (6). . . the wives and families (7). . . the missing men. Some had got thick blankets and some flasks of hot drinks, knowing that the men would be cold and tired. When dawn began to break over (8) . . . . the east a small point of light was seen (9). . . the darkness of the water and a few minutes later, there was a shout before long, the two boats were turning in, past the lighthouse to the inside (10). . . . the harbour. The men were helped out of their boats, and though they were stiff (11). . . cold and tiredness they were all safe.

### *Exercise 32 :*

You can see our sign (1). . . many shops ,hotels,railway stations, air ports, garages and restaurants (2). . . the United Kingdom and many other countries. Wherever you have bought (4). . . a small article of clothing (5). . . an expensive television set. You don't have to hand over cash or write a cheque you simply show the card and sign a receipt (6) . . . . what you buy. The shop is then paid (7). . . us. You can spend as much as you want up to your agreed "credit limit", which is the amount that you can owe us. (8). . . any one time. For example, some people have a credit limit (9). . . \$500.

### *Exercise 33 :*

If you have a credit card you can buy things when they are cheap, for example (1). . . sales, even if you can also buy expensive items such as season tickets and pay (3). . . them over a period (4). . . time.

Some people worry that if they had a card they would buy too many things, since they don't hand over money ( 5). . . the time they buy something. Do not worry (6). . . this. If you are over (18). . . , why not apply (7). . . a card immediately.

### *Exercise 34 :*

John Pooley's area is very large one by police standards, and includes the three village (1). . . Middleton, Dunwich and Westleton, where he lives (2). . . a total population of 1,219, he has

more than twice as many people to look (3). . . as the average policeman has . Moreover,he is attached to Halesworth subdivision and is frequently given duties outside his home area. After 15 years as a policeman,he accepts these duties (4). . . question,but his villagers know clearly where his heart and interest really lie. When he was first sent (5). . . Westleton, he lived (6). . . the police house which was both his home and the police station ; when the system was changed,he bought the house where he now lives (7). . . his wife, Ann, and his two daughters .

*Exercise 35 :*

I love maps. Maps have always been my favourite literature. I would always rather study a map than read a book, even a map (1). . . a place. I have never been (2). . . and never will. Have you ever tried to draw a map ? There is nothing like it (3). . . real interest and concentration. I like to follow streams up (4). . . the valley (5). . . their source, and if I can't do it (6). . . the ground I like to do it (7). . . maps. I like to stand (8). . . mountain top and see the valley below as (9). . . a map.

*Exercise 36 :*

(1). . . the thirteenth century in Wales, there was a handsome young prince called Llewellyn. He was fond (2). . . hunting and often wanted to go out (3). . . the forests and mountain (4). . . ,his favourite hunting dog,whose name was Gelert. One day ,however,he left Gelert( 5). . . home to guard his baby son who only a few months old. In the evening when the prince returned( 6). . . hunting he saw that his house was (7). . . a terrible mess. The furniture had been knocked over and there was blood (8). . . the walls. He could not find his baby son. Then he saw his dog Gelert running (9). . . him covered in blood. The prince thought that the dog had attacked and killed his son. Prince Llewellyn became violently angry, took his sword and killed the dog (10) . . . one blow.



### *Exercise 37 :*

One the objectives (1). . . the reading curriculum is the promotion (2. ) . . . life-long interest (3). . . reading. A comprehensive reading program will contain the element that contributes (4). . . the development of leisure-time reading habits. Students who master reading and derive satisfaction (5). . . the materials they are more likely to want to read than those whose reading is less proficient. (6). . . order for children to develop life long reading habits, reading must be as enjoyable as other activities they prefer. Readers are made,not born,therefore teachers should do something to encourage children to become readers. It's believed that children will do more reading if they are given the opportunity to read what they are interested(7). . .

### *Exercise 38 :*

What do country music star Loretta Lynn and movie star Sissy Spakek have (1). . . common ?They are both connected(2). . . a movie called Coal Miner's Daughter is based (3). . . a book Loretta wrote (4). . . her life Sissy plays Oretta (5). . . the movie.

"The way I got the part was kind (6). . . spooky". Sissy said. "Loretta kicked me (7). . . the part. Nobody got around to tell me,though. I was reading Coal Miner's daughter one day. I thought,I'd really like to know Loretta Lynn ! Then suddenly I saw Rona Baret (8). . . TV. She said I was going to play Loretta Lynn !

### *Exercise 39 :*

When I was a teenager I read a lot. That was partly because I moved (1). . . . a new town (2). . . the age of my freshman year (3). . . high school ,and I had no idea what I really liked, but then as now I preferred realistic fiction (5). . . fantasy and non fiction. Steinbeck's Grapes of Wrath, Magaret Mitchell's Gone with the wind, Richard Wright's Native Son, and Daphne du Maurier's Rebecca were my favourites . Today,when I recommend these titles (6). . . my students, I usually find that they fall (7). . . them as hard as I did.

### *Exercise 40 :*

Steve went out (1). . . his friends one night. His parents wanted him home (2). . . night. But he didn't pay much attention (3). . . the time. First they went (4). . . a movie. Then they were bowling. Then they went to a dinner (5). . . a snack (6) . . . the time they were ready to go home, it was 2:00 in the morning Steve was worried (7) . . . facing his parents two hours later. Then he had an idea. He phoned them before he left the dinner. "Hi, Dad" he said, "this is Steve. Don't pay the ransom money. They let me go, I'm (8). . . my way home" .

## **KEY**

### *Exercise 1 :*

- |         |         |        |       |       |
|---------|---------|--------|-------|-------|
| 1. from | 2. in   | 3. for | 4. of | 5. to |
| 6. for  | 7. into |        |       |       |

### *Exercise 2 :*

- |         |       |       |        |       |
|---------|-------|-------|--------|-------|
| 1. with | 2. in | 3. to | 4. by, | 5. of |
| 6. from | 7. at | 8. on |        |       |

### *Exercise 3 :*

- |        |       |         |          |        |
|--------|-------|---------|----------|--------|
| 1. by  | 2. in | 3. in   | 4. after | 5. for |
| 6. off | 7. at | 8. from |          |        |

### *Exercise 4 :*

- |       |         |        |       |         |
|-------|---------|--------|-------|---------|
| 1. in | 2. from | 3. in  | 4. of | 5. from |
| 6. to | 7. of   | 8. for |       |         |

### *Exercise 5 :*

- |         |       |          |        |         |
|---------|-------|----------|--------|---------|
| 1. with | 2. of | 3. on    | 4. for | 5. with |
| 6. with | 7. to | 8. about | 9. to  |         |

**Exercise 6 :**

- |       |          |         |          |        |
|-------|----------|---------|----------|--------|
| 1. in | 2. with  | 3. from | 4. of    | 5. for |
| 6. at | 7. about | 8. in   | 9. about | 10. by |

**Exercise 7 :**

- |        |          |       |          |        |             |
|--------|----------|-------|----------|--------|-------------|
| 1. for | 2. about | 3. to | 4. to    | 5. for |             |
| 6. of  | 7. in    | 8. by | 9. after | 10. in | 11. without |

**Exercise 8 :**

- |          |         |          |         |          |
|----------|---------|----------|---------|----------|
| 1. about | 2. from | 3. about | 4. with | 5. about |
| 6. about | 7. in   | 8. in    | 9. in   | 10. in   |

**Exercise 9 :**

- |         |         |       |        |       |
|---------|---------|-------|--------|-------|
| 1. from | 2. on   | 3. in | 4. for | 5. in |
| 6. from | 7. with | 8. on | 9. of  |       |

**Exercise 10 :**

- |        |       |         |       |       |
|--------|-------|---------|-------|-------|
| 1. for | 2. of | 3. with | 4. of | 5. in |
| 6. off | 7. at | 8. of   | 9. of |       |

**Exercise 11 :**

- |        |       |       |        |         |
|--------|-------|-------|--------|---------|
| 1. for | 2. at | 3. of | 4. for |         |
| 5. of  | 6. on | 7. on | 8. in  | 9. from |

**Exercise 12 :**

- |          |       |       |          |       |
|----------|-------|-------|----------|-------|
| 1. for   | 2. at | 3. of | 4. which | 5. on |
| 6. about | 7. by | 8. to |          |       |

**Exercise 13 :**

- |        |         |         |           |       |
|--------|---------|---------|-----------|-------|
| 1. in, | 2. with | 3. into | 4. within | 5. of |
| 6. in  | 7. in   | 8. to   | 9. of     |       |

**Exercise 14 :**

- |       |           |       |         |         |
|-------|-----------|-------|---------|---------|
| 1. of | 2. belong | 3. in | 4. with | 5. of   |
| 6. by | 7. for    | 8. on | 9. to   | 10. for |

*Exercise 15 :*

- |         |       |       |           |        |
|---------|-------|-------|-----------|--------|
| 1. from | 2. to | 3. to | 4. for    | 5. at  |
| 6. with | 7. on | 8. in | 9. before | 10. on |

*Exercise 16 :*

- |        |         |        |       |            |
|--------|---------|--------|-------|------------|
| 1. by  | 2. with | 3. for | 4. on | 5. without |
| 6. for | 7. with | 8. at  | 9. in | 10. at     |

*Exercise 17 :*

- |       |          |       |            |       |
|-------|----------|-------|------------|-------|
| 1. in | 2. of    | 3. at | 4. between | 5. by |
| 6. in | 7. about | 8. on | 9. on      |       |

*Exercise 18 :*

- |       |         |       |           |        |        |
|-------|---------|-------|-----------|--------|--------|
| 1. in | 2. with | 3. of | 4. before | 5. for |        |
| 6. in | 7. by   | 8. of | 9. from   | 10. of | 11. in |

*Exercise 19 :*

- |         |          |         |       |       |
|---------|----------|---------|-------|-------|
| 1. with | 2. after | 3. at   | 4. in | 5. of |
| 6. by   | 7. into  | 8. with | 9. in |       |

*Exercise 20 :*

- |       |       |        |          |         |            |
|-------|-------|--------|----------|---------|------------|
| 1. up | 2. of | 3. for | 4. about | 5. from |            |
| 6. to | 7. in | 8. in  | 9. for   | 10. of  | 11. during |

*Exercise 21 :*

- |       |         |        |          |        |        |
|-------|---------|--------|----------|--------|--------|
| 1. in | 2. from | 3. to  | 4. about | 5. to  |        |
| 6. in | 7. in   | 8. for | 9. of    | 10. at | 11. to |

*Exercise 22 :*

- |          |       |       |        |           |
|----------|-------|-------|--------|-----------|
| 1. about | 2. on | 3. of | 4. for | 5. during |
| 6. on    | 7. in | 8. to |        |           |

*Exercise 23 :*

- |       |        |       |       |       |
|-------|--------|-------|-------|-------|
| 1. of | 2. for | 3. on | 4. in | 5. to |
| 6. of | 7. of  | 8. in |       |       |

**Exercise 24 :**

- |       |         |         |         |        |        |
|-------|---------|---------|---------|--------|--------|
| 1. of | 2. for  | 3. with | 4. to   | 5. at  |        |
| 6. at | 7. into | 8. to   | 9. with | 10. in | 11. of |

**Exercise 25 :**

- |         |         |       |        |        |        |
|---------|---------|-------|--------|--------|--------|
| 1. with | 2. of   | 3. in | 4. for | 5. to  |        |
| 6. from | 7. with | 8. of | 9. at  | 10. in | 11. of |

**Exercise 26 :**

- |       |       |         |          |           |  |
|-------|-------|---------|----------|-----------|--|
| 1. on | 2. at | 3. in   | 4. above | 5. before |  |
| 6. to | 7. to | 8. with | 9. for   |           |  |

**Exercise 27 :**

- |         |         |         |        |            |  |
|---------|---------|---------|--------|------------|--|
| 1. into | 2. from | 3. for  | 4. at  | 5. through |  |
| 6. in   | 7. in   | 8. from | 9. for | 10. in     |  |

**Exercise 28 :**

- |          |       |       |       |       |  |
|----------|-------|-------|-------|-------|--|
| 1. of    | 2. on | 3. of | 4. of | 5. on |  |
| 6. after | 7. in | 8. by |       |       |  |

**Exercise 29 :**

- |       |          |       |       |         |  |
|-------|----------|-------|-------|---------|--|
| 1. of | 2. at/by | 3. on | 4. of | 5. in   |  |
| 6. in | 7. into  | 8. in |       | 9. with |  |

**Exercise 30 :**

- |       |         |       |         |           |        |
|-------|---------|-------|---------|-----------|--------|
| 1. of | 2. for  | 3. in | 4. from | 5. before |        |
| 6. of | 7. with | 8. on | 9. of   | 10. at    | 11. in |

**Exercise 31 :**

- |         |        |           |       |         |          |
|---------|--------|-----------|-------|---------|----------|
| 1. on   | 2. for | 3. during | 4. at | 5. from |          |
| 6. with | 7. of  | 8. to     | 9. in | 10. of  | 11. with |

**Exercise 32 :**

- |        |       |        |         |       |  |
|--------|-------|--------|---------|-------|--|
| 1. in  | 2. in | 3. for | 4. from | 5. to |  |
| 6. for | 7. by | 8. at  | 9. of   |       |  |

**Exercise 33 :**

1. in      2. at      3. for      4. of      5. at  
6. about      7. for

**Exercise 34 :**

1. of      2. with      3. after      4. without      5. to  
6. in      7. with

**Exercise 35 :**

1. of      2. to      3. for      4. from      5. to  
6. on      7. on      8. on      9. on

**Exercise 36 :**

1. in      2. of      3. into      4. with      5. at  
6. from      7. in      8. on      9. towards      10. with

**Exercise 37 :**

1. of      2. of      3. in      4. to      5. from  
6. in      7. in

**Exercise 38 :**

1. in      2. with      3. on      4. about      5. in  
6. of      7. for      8. on

**Exercise 39 :**

1. to      2. at      3. in      4. to      5. to  
6. to      7. for

**Exercise 40 :**

1. with      2. by      3. to      4. to      5. for  
6. by      7. about      8. on

## **VI. BÀI TẬP VỀ CÁC DẠNG ĐỘNG TỪ**

**Dạng 1: Chọn dạng đúng của động từ để hoàn chỉnh câu :**

1. He made me ..... it all again.

- A. do      B. to do      C. doing      D. did

2. Did you remember ..... the camera with you ?

- A. take      B. to take      C. taking      D. took

3. The soldier ..... in the fight was taken to hospital.  
 A. injure      B. to-injure      ☒ C. injured      D. injuring
4. He refused.....for the shirt.  
 A. pay      B. to pay      C. paid      D. paying
5. The ..... cars haven't been found yet.  
 A. steal      B. to steal      C. stolen      D. stealing
6. After ..... a week in Washington DC, they decided to come back.  
 A. spend      B. to spend      ☒ C. spent      D. spending
7. It is starting.....  
☒ A. rain      B. to rain      C. raining      D. rained
8. She came in ..... by her little dog.  
☒ A. accompany      B. accompanies  
 C. To accompany      D. accompanying
9. Who was the person.....out side?  
 A. wait      B. to wait      C. waited      ☒ D. waiting
10. .... about the traffic jam, he had to change his plan of travelling by car.  
 A. warn      B. to warn      C. warned      ☒ D. warning
11. It is very wise .....after the event.  
 A. be      ☒ B. to be      C. being      D. been
12. Could you.....me the time?  
☒ A. tell      B. to tell      C. telling      D. told
13. Having.....twice, he doesn't want to sit for exam once more.  
 A. fail      B. to fail      C. failing      ☒ D. failed
14. I enjoy.....video games  
 A. play      B. to play      ☒ C. playing      D. played



15. Where would you like.....lunch ?  
 A. have<sup>\*</sup>      B. to have<sup>\*</sup>      C. having<sup>\*</sup>      D. had<sup>\*</sup>
16. I'm too tired..... to his boring stories.  
 A. listen<sup>\*</sup>      B. to listen<sup>\*</sup>      C. listening<sup>\*</sup>      D. listened<sup>\*</sup>
17. They don't allow.....here.  
 A. walk<sup>\*</sup>      B. to walk<sup>\*</sup>      C. walking<sup>\*</sup>      D. walked<sup>\*</sup>
18. The T. shirt.....in that shop is beautiful .  
 A. buy<sup>\*</sup>      B. to buy<sup>\*</sup>      C. buying<sup>\*</sup>      D. bought<sup>\*</sup>
19. I used.....forty cigarettes a day  
 A. smoke<sup>\*</sup>      B. to smoke<sup>\*</sup>      C. smoking<sup>\*</sup>      D. smoked<sup>\*</sup>
20. My younger sister dislikes.....tea.  
 A. drink<sup>\*</sup>      B. to drink<sup>\*</sup>      C. drinking<sup>\*</sup>      D. drank<sup>\*</sup>
- 21.....by a snake, she screamed loudly. *for that*  
 A. bite<sup>\*</sup>      B. to bite<sup>\*</sup>      C. biting<sup>\*</sup>      D. bitten<sup>\*</sup>
22. ....that he couldn't do any thing more, he left quickly.  
 A. realize<sup>\*</sup>      B. to realize<sup>\*</sup>      C. realizing<sup>\*</sup>      D. realized<sup>\*</sup>
23. She insisted on .....  
 A. pay<sup>\*</sup>      B. to pay<sup>\*</sup>      C. paying<sup>\*</sup>      D. paid<sup>\*</sup>
24. A boy .....Peter sent her a letter.  
 A. call<sup>\*</sup>      B. to call<sup>\*</sup>      C. calling<sup>\*</sup>      D. called<sup>\*</sup>
25. Are you interested in .....poems?  
 A. compose<sup>\*</sup>      B. to compose<sup>\*</sup>      C. composing<sup>\*</sup>      D. composed<sup>\*</sup>
26. Please let me.....**your** decision as soon as possible.  
 A. know<sup>\*</sup>      B. to know<sup>\*</sup>      C. knowing<sup>\*</sup>      D. known<sup>\*</sup>
27. They decided to postpone ..... to the countryside  
 A. go<sup>\*</sup>      B. to go<sup>\*</sup>      C. going<sup>\*</sup>      D. went<sup>\*</sup>

28. If you want .....there before dark, you should start at on  
 A. get. B. to get C. getting D. got.
29. A. ....boy asked me how to get to the nearest station  
 A. tire. B. to tire C. tiring D. tired
30. He is expected.....in a few days  
 A. arrive \* B. to arrive, \* C. arriving \* D. arrived
31. Jone gave up.....stamps.  
 A. collect \* B. to collect \* C. collecting \* D. collecte
32. They had gone, there's nothing.....  
 A. to leave B. leave C. leaving D. left.
33. I let him go early as he wanted.....his wife  
 A. meet \* B. to meet \* C. meeting \* D. met \*
34. Will you help me.....the book case ?  
 A. move \* B. to move \* C. moving \* D. moved .
35. Being..... by the owner, the thief ran away.  
 A. see. \* B to see \* C. seeing \* D. seen \*
36. You needn't ..... for permission, you can use it whenever you like.  
 A. asks \* B. to ask \* C. asking \* D. asked \*
37. He refused.....the bribery  
 A. accept B. to accept C. accepted D. acceptir
38. ....up by a bell, she was very angry.  
 A. wake B. to wake C. waking D. woken
39. They seem.....to leave.  
 A. want \* B. to want \* C. wanting \* D. wanted \*
40. She hated .....questioned by the police.  
 A. be C B. to be C C. being D. been

1. I am beginning.....what you mean.

- A. understand      B. to understand.  
C. understanding      D. understood,

2. Try to avoid.....him angry.

- A. make      B. to make      C. making      D made

3. He is thinking of.....his job and going to America.

- A leave      B. to leave      C.leaving      D.left

4. He hates answering the phone and very often just let it .....

- A. ring      B. to ring      C. ringing      D. rang

5. Being.....the doll, she is very pleasant.

- A. give      B. to give      C. giving      D. given

6. He offered.....me the money.

- A. lend.      B to lend      C. lending      D. lent

7. I hate..... outside in the rain.

- A. go      B. to go      C. going      D. went

8. It's no use..... over the split milk.

- A. cry      B. to cry      C. crying      D. cried

9. He urged us..... faster.

- A. work      B. to work      C. working      D. worked

10. .... by a dog, he ran as quickly as possible.

- A. chase      B. to chase      C. chasing      D. chasen

11. I wish.....the manager.

- A see      B. to see      C. seeing      D. saw

12. Would you mind ..... me how to work the lift.

- A. show      B to show      C. showing      D. shown

would sb. to do sth.  
wish to do sth. - not to do sth.

53. We watched the men.....the tree and as we were walkin  
away.  
A saw, B to saw C sawing D sawn
54. I knew I wasn't the first.....for I saw smoke rising from th  
chimney.  
A arrive B. to arrive C. arriving D. arrived.
55. Having..... that news, she became frightened.  
A. get B. to get C getting D. got
56. This book tells you how.....at games without actual  
cheating.  
A win, B to win, C winning, D. won,
57. The package is ..... through the letter box  
A. push B. to push C. pushing D. pushed
58. The children prefer..... TV to reading  
A. watch B. to watch C. watching D. watched
59. He lost no time in ..... down to work  
A. get B. to get C. getting D. got
60. After ..... this article, you will give up smoking  
A. Had read B. Have read C. reading D. reads
61. Imagine .... with someone who never stops talking  
A. live B. to live C. living D. lived
62. .... not to say out anything, she refused to answer his questio  
A. tell B. to tell C. telling D. told
63. I suggest ..... the hospitals before asking the police to loo  
for him  
A. telephone B. to telephone C. telephoning D. telephone

4. I tried ..... to him but he went on grumbling.  
A. explain    B. to explain    C. explaining    D. explained
5. Try ..... it. It isn't worth worrying about it.  
A. forget    B. to forget    C. forgetting    D. forgot
6. There are people who can't help ..... when they see that man.  
A. laugh    B. to laugh    C. laughing    D. laughed
7. I caught him ..... over my wall.  
A. to climb    B. to climb    C. climbing    D. climbed
8. Ask him ..... in don't keep him standing at the door.  
A. come    B. to come    C. coming    D. came
9. We watched the children ..... from a window.  
A. to jump    B. jump    C. jumping    D. jumped
10. We got tired of ..... for the weather to clear.  
A. wait    B. to wait    C. waiting    D. waited
11. It is too cold for us ..... out.  
A. go    B. to go    C. going    D. gone
12. .... by his mother, he didn't dare to go out.  
A. allow    B. to allow    C. allowing    D. allowed
13. Do you remember ..... the letter?  
A. post    B. to post    C. posting    D. posted
14. I liked ..... to folk music.  
A. listen    B. to listen    C. listening    D. listened
15. I'm sorry for ..... late.  
A. be    B. to be    C. being    D. been
16. It isn't good for children ..... too many sweets.  
A. eat    B. to eat    C. eating    D. eaten

77. I used ..... a lot but I haven't had a chance to do any since coming here.

- A. ride      B. to ride      C. riding      D. ridden

78. .... by him, his baby cried loudly.

- A. beat      B. to beat      C. beating      D. beaten

79. He kept ..... up and asking for an explanation and she didn't know what to do about him.

- A. to stand      B. stand      C. standing      D. stood

80. He made me ..... his instructions 5 times.

- A. repeat      B. to repeat      C. repeating      D. repeated

81. She apologized for ..... my sewing-machine without asking for permission.

- A. borrow      B. to borrow      C. borrowing      D. borrowed

82. She told me ..... through her correspondence.

- A. look      B. to look      C. looking      D. looked

83. .... by him, his friend were very sad.

- A. watch      B. to watch      C. watching      D. watched

84. She claimed ..... to tell the future by gazing into her crystal ball.

- A. be able      B. to be able  
C. being able      D. been able

85. He annoyed me very much by ..... the piece of cake that was keeping to eat after my supper.

- A. take      B. to take      C. taking      D. taken

86. You'll never regret ..... a kind action.

- A. do      B. to do      C. doing      D. done

87. Did you advise him ..... to the police?

- A. go      B. to go      C. going      D. gone



38. The police accused him of ..... fire to the building.  
 A. set      B. to set      C. setting      D. set
39. When at last I succeeded in ..... him that I wanted to get home quickly.  
 A. convince      B. to convince      C. convincing      D. convinced
40. .... up by his uncle, he became a good person.  
 A. bring      B. to bring      C. brought      D. bringing
41. He has a theory that it is possible ..... the time in daylight by looking into a cat's eyes.  
 A. tell      B. to tell      C. telling      D. told
42. It is very unpleasant ..... up and hear the rain outside.  
 A. wake      B. to wake      C. waking      D. woken
43. I distinctively remember ..... him. I gave him \$2.  
 A. pay      B. to pay      C. paying      D. paid
44. After ..... the matter for an hour the committee adjourned without having reached any decision.  
 A. discuss      B. to discuss      C. discussing      D. discussed
45. He decided ..... broken glass on top of his wall to prevent boys climbing over it.  
 A. put      B. to put      C. putting      D. left
46. He didn't dare ..... the house because he was afraid of meeting someone who might recognize him.  
 A. leave      B. to leave      C. leaving      D. left
47. I know my hair needs ..... but I never have time to go to the hair dresser's.  
 A. to cut      B. cut      C. cutting      D. cuts

98. He was fined for .... the speed limit.

- A. exceed      B. to exceed      C. exceeding      D. exceeded

99. Please go on .....

- A. to write      B. to write      C. writing      D. written

100. I tried ..... him to agree with me .

- A. persuade      B. to persuade      C. persuading      D. persuade

**Dạng 2 : Cho động từ trong ngoặc vào đúng dạng của nó**

1. "I was lonely at first" the old man admitted ; "but after a time got used to (live) and even got (like) it ".

2. Before trains were invented people used (travel) on horseback or in stage coaches.

3. It used (take) an express coach three days (go) from London to Bath.

4. I meant (buy) an evening paper but I didn't see any one (sell) then.

5. Tom : I want (catch) the 7a.m train tomorrow.

6. You are not very good at (get) up early, are you ?

7. He accepted the cut in salary without complaint because he was afraid of (complain) .

8. He was afraid of (lose) his job.

9. He remembers part of his childhood quite clearly.

He remembers (go) to school for the first time.

10. Jane was so interested in (listen) to classical music.

11. Did you remember (lock) the car ?

No I didn't. I'd better (go) back and (do) it now.

12. Next time we go (house-hunt), remember to ask the agent for clear directions.

13. I wasted hours (look) for this book.

14. Let's (go) for a swim.
15. I'm not particularly keen on (swim). What about (go) for a drive instead?
16. The hunters expected (be paid) for the snakes they caught.
17. She seemed (expect) me (do) it.
18. I wasn't anxious (be) the first who died of snakebite.
19. After (spend) two days (argue) about where to go for their holidays, they decided to stay at home.
20. They decided (not go) to the cinema.
21. He is talking about (give) up his job and (go) (live) in this country.
22. I was just about (leave) the office when the phone rang.
23. My wife wanted me (call) at the butcher's on my way home.
24. He said I'm terribly sorry (keep) you (wait).
25. Although she said "It doesn't matter at all" he went on (apologize) for nearly five minutes.
26. The lecturer began by (tell) us where the island was and went on (talk) about its history.
27. My father thinks I am not capable of (earn) my own living, but I mean (show) him that he is wrong.
28. I can't get my car (start) in cold mornings.
29. Have you tried (fill) that bottle with hot water? That is very funny.
30. Did he manage (carry) the table upstairs?
31. He isn't strong enough (move) the washing-machine to the other corner of the kitchen.
32. Don't forget (take) a camera with you.
33. It would be not good (ask) Tom (do) that work.

34. I saw Paul (watch) television when I came to see him.
35. We stopped (talk) when seeing the teacher.
36. I like (have) dinner out with my parents.
37. Your hair needs (cut). You'd better (have) it done tomorrow.
38. I tried (persuade) him to travel with me.
39. I don't mind (travel) by bus.
40. I hate (stand) in queues.
41. He kept on criticizing my work till I threatened (hit) him.
42. I have (stay) here, I'm on duty.
43. You're free (go) whenever you like.
44. There is no point in (arrive) half an hour early.
45. I always try (come) in quickly but they always hear me (go) upstairs.
46. If you agree (work) for me, I will be very happy.
47. You'd better (start) early. We don't want (risk) (get) caught in traffic jam.
48. He suggested (call) a meeting and (let) the workers (decide) the matter themselves.
49. The children were anxious (camp) out.
50. I like (listen) to music but I don't like (listen) to people (talk) about it.
51. If you want the milkman (leave) you milk in the morning remember (put) a milk bottle out side your door.
52. They let us park motorcycles here but they won't allow us (park) cars.
53. They don't allow (smoke) in the petrol-station.
54. Mr. Shaw is (write) his memoirs.
55. What about (buy) a new cooker ?

3. He asked (see) my ticket and when I wasn't able (find) it, he made me (buy) another.
7. Would you like me (turn) down the radio a bit?
3. I used (eat) a lot of sweets when I was a child.
9. It is almost impossible (prevent) them from coming to the party.
9. Would your children mind (keep) quiet for a moment?
1. It's no use (ask) children to work harder.
2. I'm thinking of (go) to Oxford tomorrow on my motorbike.
3. I'd rather (go) by train.
4. Let's go (fish) today. There's nice wind.
5. After (spend) a week in that place, he decided to come back ; immediately.
6. Did you have any trouble (find) the house?
7. Bill couldn't stand (see) anyone (sit) round all time.
8. No body seemed (know) where the key was .
9. He soon got (know) most of them and even managed (learn) the greetings.
0. The child used (learn) about nature when they were in kindergarten.
1. Oh, let's wait till it stops (rain).
2. When would you like (start) ? In a few minutes ?
3. Jack suggested (let) one flat and (keep) the other for myself. But Tom advised me (sell) the whole house.
4. I'm delighted (hear) that you can come on Saturday.
5. We are all looking forward to (see) you.
6. He has admitted (steal) his friend's car.
7. What about (have) a picnic in Piccadilly Circus ?

78. (Call) early, I found her at home.
79. He wants her (finish) her homework as soon as possible.
80. John believed that the stranger (be) a policeman.
81. He telephoned Mary (arrange) another meeting.
82. They had made Bob (teach) Janet.
83. I'm not really dressed for (swim).
84. I see him (pass) my house every day.
85. Didn't you here the clock (strike)?
86. He advised me (apply) at once.
87. The grass needs (cut).
88. I heard him (make) arrangement for this journey.
89. She saw him (change) the wheel.
90. He was heard (say) that the minister had resigned.
91. I found a tree (lie) across the road.
92. I'm sorry for (make) such a noise last night.
93. He began by showing us where the island was and went on (tell) us about its climate.
94. I can't stop him (talk) about its climate.
95. I left him (talk) to Bob.
96. She went out, (close) the door.
97. The plane crashed, its bombs(explode) as it hit the ground.
98. He succeeded in (climb) out of the window.
99. He used to hear them (shout) greetings to each other.
100. It'll take a long time (wait) for him.

# KEY

## Dạng 1

1A 2C 3C 4B 5C 6D 7B 8B 9D 10C 11B 12A 13D 14C 15BB  
 16B 17C 18D 19B 20C 21D 22C 23C 24D 25C 26A 27CC  
 28B 29D 30B 31C 32D 33B 34A 35D 36A 37B 38D 39BB  
 40B 41B 42C 43C 44A 45D 46B 47C 48C 49B 50D 51BB  
  
 52C 53C 54B 55D 56B 57B 58C 59C 60C 61B 62D 63CC  
 64B 65B 66C 67C 68B 69C 70C 71B 72D 73C 74B 75CC  
 76B 77B 78D 79C 80A 81C 82B 83D 84B 85C 86C 87BB  
 88C 89C 90C 91B 92B 93C 94C 95B 96B 97C 98C 99CC  
 100B

## Dạng 2

- |                          |                      |                                |
|--------------------------|----------------------|--------------------------------|
| 1. living, liking        | 2. to travel.        | 3. to take, to go.             |
| 4. to buy, selling       | 5. to catch          | 6. getting                     |
| 7. complaining           | 8. losing            | 9. going.                      |
| 10. listening            | 11. locking, go, do. | 12. house hunting              |
| 13. looking              | 14. go.              | 15. swimming, going            |
| 16. to be paid           | 17. to expect, to do | 18. to be.                     |
| 19. spending,<br>arguing | 20. not to go        | 21. giving,<br>going to live.. |
| 22. to leave             | 23. to call.         | 24. to keep, waiting           |
| 25. apologizing          | 26. telling, talking | 27. earning, to shove          |
| 28. starting             | 29. filling.         | 30. to carry                   |
| 31. to move              | 32. to take          | 33. to ask, to do              |
| 34. watching             | 35. talking          | 36. to have                    |
| 37. cutting, have        | 38. to persuade      | 39. traveling                  |
| 40. standing             | 41. to hit           | 42. to stay                    |



- |                                  |                                      |                             |
|----------------------------------|--------------------------------------|-----------------------------|
| 43. to go                        | 44. arriving                         | 45. to come, going          |
| 46. to work                      | 47. start, to risk,<br>getting       | 48. calling, let,<br>decide |
| 49. to camp.                     | 50. listening,<br>listening, talking | 51. to leave, to put        |
| 52. to park                      | 53. smoking                          | 54. writing                 |
| 55. buying                       | 56. to see, to find, buy             | 57. to turn                 |
| 58. to eat.                      | 59. to prevent,                      | 60. keeping                 |
| 61. asking                       | 62. going                            | 63. go                      |
| 64. fishing                      | 65. spending                         | 66. finding                 |
| 67. seeing, sitting              | 68. to know                          | 69. to know, to learn       |
| 70. to learn.                    | 71. raining                          | 72. to start                |
| 73. letting,<br>keeping, to sell | 74. to hear.                         | 75. seeing                  |
| 76. stealing                     | 77. having                           | 78. calling                 |
| 79. to finish                    | 80. was                              | 81. to arrange              |
| 82. to teach                     | 83. swimming                         | 84. passing                 |
| 85. striking                     | 86. to apply                         | 87. cutting                 |
| 88. making                       | 89. changing                         | 90. to say                  |
| 91. lying                        | 92. making                           | 93. telling                 |
| 94. talking                      | 95. talking                          | 96. closing                 |
| 97. exploded                     | 98. climbing                         | 99. shouting                |
| 100. to wait                     |                                      |                             |

## B. CÁC BÀI TẬP VỀ NGỮ ÂM

Chọn từ có cách phát âm khác và gạch chân từ đó.

	A	B	C	D	E
<b>Exercise 1.</b>					
1	<u>new</u>	knew	sew	few	dew
2	<u>bear</u>	tear	hear	lear	dear
3	<u>land</u>	England	Holland	Thailand	Finland
4	<u>trousers</u>	cloudy	loud	tour	trout
5	<u>cut</u>	hut	shut	butcher	but
<b>Exercise 2.</b>					
1	<u>tunnel</u>	cunning	lunch	bunch	lunar
2	<u>bicycle</u>	biography	climate	cinema	kind
3	<u>total</u>	hello	cold	hold	horrible
4	<u>pull</u>	bull	dull	push	cushion
5	<u>toxic</u>	towel	toxin	lock	clock
<b>Exercise 3.</b>					
1	<u>blush</u>	push	touch	mushroom	slut
2	<u>ten</u>	pen	denote	rent	lend
3	<u>trade</u>	made	madam	tape	rape
4	<u>call</u>	tall	recall	challenge	all
5	<u>our</u>	hour	cloudy	mouse	course
<b>Exercise 4.</b>					
1	<u>pan</u>	bag	wall	mad	tap
2	<u>growth</u>	prow	borrow	window	row
3	<u>hi</u>	hinderance	blind	hind	sight
4	<u>my</u>	ply	sky	type	gloomy
5	<u>love</u>	dove	glove	stove	above

### Exercise 5

1	pint	tiny	tin	bind	tight
2	bought	thought	ought	though	nought
3	taught	caught	draught	taught	cause
4	mother	brother	bravo	cover	love
5	tick	brick	bright	thick	stick

### Exercise 6

1	cent	recent	percent	sentence	centre
2	grow	row	show	shower	town
3	horse	mouse	house	mouth	louse
4	mountain	again	main	contain	stainless
5	soup	could	would	mould	should

### Exercise 7

1	hour	proud	loud	south	mourn
2	skate	made	hate	headache	class
3	station	patient	cinema	clay	may
4	hotel	smell	hostel	spell	retell
5	hope	cope	rope	stop	coincide

### Exercise 8

1	milk	spill	mild	still	silk
2	meat	heat	beat	sweater	heat
3	wine	window	tin	spin	hint
4	chicken	engineer	lense	spend	tent
5	put	butcher	punish	pull	push

### Exercise 9

1	open	close	hope	rope	cottage
2	begin	finish	climax	cliff	clip
3	hair	air	contain	chair	pair
4	tea	teacher	pea	tear	preach
5	audience	cause	pause	clause	aunt

### Exercise 10

1	long	storm	✓ comb	logical	store
2	please	tease	✓ hear	lease	bean
3	actor	conductor	doctor	mayor	✓ tortoise
4	voyage	✓ hotel	toy	boycott	boy
5	special	✓ dial	industrial	terrestrial	specialist

### Exercise 11

1	step	✓ clergy	bench	hotel	lend
2	clip	triple	tip	✓ title	little
3	about	our	trout	loud	✓ could
4	✓ speak	teacher	treat	✓ bear	cheat
5	football	✓ thanks	stall	wall	all

### Exercise 12

1	sent	✓ absent	rent	spend	central
2	little	cattle	✓ castle	kettle	subtle
3	report	✓ accident	repeat	chetah	rearrange
4	some	mother	stomach	✓ police	none
5	occasion	oxygen	odd	occupy	obvious

### Exercise 13

1	✓ standard	farmer	star	start	tart
2	either	neither	height	✓ leisure	Brunci
3	✓ address	add	catel	match	bag
4	eight	✓ height	weight	weigh	obeisansee
5	✓ light	hitch-hike	pitch	lit	split

### Exercise 14

1	material	machine	banana	✓ stamina	manure
2	picture	temperature	✓ failure	mixture	nature
3	maize	failure	✓ airport	plain	complain
4	die	lie	✓ friend	pie	tie
5	distance	importance	substance	✓ circumstantial	vacancy

### *Exercise 15*

1	father	startle	far	nightmare	staffroom
2	money	obey	hockey	honey	key
3	plan	branch	stand	glance	band
4	kind	blind	slight	mighty	<u>sin</u>
5	tent	plenty	blend	enhance	personnel

### *Exercise 16*

1	boat	oak	roar	roast	toast
2	buck	duck	reduce	reduction	structure
3	monkey	storey	money	survey	hockey
4	thank	think	thing	these	thick
5	borrow	grow	sparrow	tow	crowd

### *Exercise 17*

1	blew	flew	stew	crew	screw
2	leave	weave	steal	weary	weaver
3	dull	dumb	study	stupid	lull
4	reduce	redundant	menu	tune	Cuba
5	brother	thorough	bother	mother	another

### *Exercise 18*

1	smart	cracker	snack	packet	back
2	careful	helpful	fulfil	difficult	thankful
3	shoot	blood	boot	look	<u>snook</u>
4	ambitious	industrious	curious	<u>studies</u>	luxurious
5	shout	trout	found	famous	loud

### *Exercise 19*

1	recent	presence	abscent	detent	payment
2	shop	stop	opposite	opinion	opportunit
3	idea	weather	feather	leather	measure
4	have	carry	chance	hand	stand
5	chief	if	leaf	deaf	thief

### *Exercise 20*

1	none	stone	bone	alone	lonely
2	count	counter	country	county	spouse
3	because	clause	cause	aunt	pause
4	write	right	light	split	sight
5	children	milk	spill	site	kill

### *Exercise 21*

1	taught	thought	bought	mourning	ought
2	hungry	huge	rush	bus	fussy
3	fountain	pain	complain	stain	explain
4	impatient	client	die	lie	pie
5	square	stare	mare	hair	bathe

### *Exercise 22*

1	store	bored	bold	hot	plot
2	giant	pioneer	climate	studio	pile
3	question	station	petition	competition	national
4	reading	peace	reaper	reality	reader
5	person	continue	contract	content	contest

### *Exercise 23*

1	language	large	stage	lounge	league
2	come	common	commonly	commonplace	commune
3	down	snow	cow	crowd	allow
4	captain	capsule	cape	capital	cap
5	revise	reason	dislike	advise	wise

### *Exercise 24*

1	skip	billion	mingle	still	high
2	though	although	cough	dough	soul
3	flow	flower	slow	know	tow
4	teacher	break	steal	meal	peak
5	cap	cat	mat	mad	spark

*Exercise 25*

1	head	spread	speak	thread	breath
2	greet	greek	green	pioneer	speed
3	blank	blanket	stand	enhance	hand
4	police	abolish	polish	policy	sorry
5	hat	cat	that	late	bag

*Exercise 26*

1	form	work	born	storm	stop
2	chop	told	scold	mole	motion
3	made	mate	water	stake	place
4	exercise	expensive	complex	Mexico	excellent
5	do	so	no	go	low

*Exercise 27*

1	flow	snow	town	slow	tow
2	they	this	these	thin	heat
3	teacher	headache	chair	cheat	chatting
4	dead	death	threat	beat	breath
5	meat	seat	breathe	defeat	threaten

*Exercise 28*

1	wise	life	alive	pill	site
2	value	fluent	statue	due	fuedalism
3	busy	business	busily	bus	businessm
4	push	pull	bush	fussy	bullet
5	neither	society	either	height	leisure

*Exercise 29*

1	beat	seat	heat	deal	meat
2	moon	noon	school	foot	spoon
3	handle	cattle	scrab	map	start
4	deep	beef	steel	engineer	cheek
5	measure	pleasure	tear	bear	mean



### Exercise 30

1	another	mother	polish	some	stomach
2	influence	issue	pursue	statue	value
3	hat	sat	shade	cat	fat
4	date	late	mat	stay	clay
5	bark	barrier	spark	mark	market

### Exercise 31

1	pie	piece	die	client	lie
2	gain	stain	plain	bargain	mainstream
3	step	spell	smell	hero	fetch
4	book	root	foot	stool	shoot
5	stop	drop	plot	rob	clothes

### Exercise 32

1	finger	ring	bring	line	sting
2	pay	stay	staff	may	stadium
3	expense	economy	expert	experiment	expel
4	talk	stalk	walk	scale	call
5	spill	light	sight	plight	might

### Exercise 33

1	cow	sow	brown	down	clown
2	thief	client	brief	piece	niece
3	class	park	math	start	smart
4	horse	house	mouse	spouse	louse
5	recent	calp	capital	cap	slap

### Exercise 34

1	television	comparison	Vision	version	illusion
2	cock	clock	slope	stop	plot
3	station	question	legion	explanation	notion
4	attention	sat	match	land	sand
5	plough	cough	tough	rough	enough

### Exercise 35

1	throw	clown	slow	blow	bow
2	car	cape	tart	star	cheetah
3	ago	ashamed	assign	atom	adult
4	home	honour	stone	alone	known
5	servant	service	verse	very	per

### Exercise 36

1	hair	pair	<u>paint</u>	airport	fair
2	hay	clay	<u>bay</u>	x-ray	main
3	<u>see</u>	sea	plead	<u>sure</u>	<u>lead</u>
4	stare	stand	<del>chance</del>	hand	band
5	<u>subject</u>	stupid	bullet	tune	music

### Exercise 37

1	<u>climb</u>	bad	lad	clad	mad
2	burden	burglar	curtain	surprise	during
3	sparrow	pardon	part	remark	cart
4	pupil	during	purity	murder	humour
5	many	clazy	noisy	bumpy	style

### Exercise 38

1	forbid	pile	bring	sting	drill
2	employ	emerge	emergency	embassy	employee
3	hear	year	bear	ear	near
4	meat	heat	defeat	learn	neat
5	leap	cheap	pea	peach	pear

### Exercise 39

1	cancer	cat	card	bat	pan
2	government	mother	bottle	some	nothing
3	brand	land	battery	law	man
4	long	strong	obey	on	corn
5	hard	bath	partner	hazard	party

*Exercise 40*

1	dry	fly	cyclo	spy	my
2	shout	trout	loud	pour	mouse
3	fool	door	mood	wood	good
4	doubt	count	bought	outer	cloud
5	laugh	plough	enough	tough	thought

*Exercise 41*

1	personality	ability	laboratory	cinema	asleep
2	kind	mind	sin	sight	fight
3	dear	fear	feather	clear	hearing
4	boat	coat	roar	roast	toast
5	speak	squeak	speech	squeal	bear

*Exercise 42*

1	dam	ray	spray	nature	patient
2	hold	heal	honest	horn	hot
3	sick	sit	surely	search	send
4	took	book	look	root	floor
5	sold	hold	scold	score	cold

*Exercise 43*

1	turn	bury	burn	suspect	sustain
2	room	gloomy	wool	poor	wood
3	studio	music	bureau	pure	tutor
4	sure	surprise	surname	curtail	lure
5	knowledge	row	cow	tower	now

*Exercise 44*

1	from	prompt	bomb	tomb	atomic
2	rubber	cuttlefish	butcher	subtle	nut
3	bought	drought	scught	thought	ought
4	great	lead	leak	peak	beach
5	monkey	grocer	comb	opinion	ocean

### *Exercise 45*

1	person	clerk	certain	percent	clever
2	match	ban	march	van	cap
3	park	carp	barn	patch	march
4	pound	loud	south	mouth	cousin

### *Exercise 46*

1	company	compare	some	cover	glove
2	honey	store	explore	moreover	storm
3	uncle	stumble	utter	utility	shut
4	world	worker	worry	worse	workman
5	foot	mood	noon	tooth	flood

### *Exercise 47*

1	pan	axe	sad	bag	chance
2	dial	trial	dialogue	piano	dialect
3	pin	bin	pig	chick	plight
4	bell	sell	cell	cheque	enhance
5	charge	cheese	sneeze	cheap	cheat

### *Exercise 48*

1	change	anger	bridge	fridge	manage
2	plea	seat	peart	neat	peacock
3	leek	deer	cheek	sheep	queen
4	breath	path	although	thick	thin
5	death	meadow	breath	beat	tear

### *Exercise 49*

1	hot	cot	pot	sock	pose
2	law	paste	saw	dawn	lawn
3	full	bull	pull	push	fuss
4	heat	honesty	hut	health	horn
5	girl	stir	giraffe	sir	firm

### Exercise 50

1	jeep	beef	career	deep	sheep
2	sweater	clean	leather	weather	whether
3	battle	bark	cattle	matter	flat
4	sain	stain	main	stairs	claim
5	receive	Brunei	perceive	receipt	seize

### Exercise 51

1	code	rode	stode	mole	modeest
2	cord	clothe	cloth	landlord	portear
3	idea	bicycle	smile	ingredient	line
4	reduce	produce	popular	stupid	result
5	dull	bull	mushroom	stuffy	bumpy

### Exercise 52

1	style	syndrome	dry	spy	sty
2	breathe	leather	lean	pea	cheat
3	lamp	lamb	blame	ambition	stamp
4	jeer	cheer	deer	deep	steer
5	box	oxen	stock	ocean	modest

### Exercise 53

1	lane	stay	flame	may	crash
2	pen	centre	ceremony	mend	deny
3	both	pole	phone	stone	moth
4	beauty	bureau	beautiful	beautify	beautiful
5	caught	laugh	draught	aunt	laughing

### Exercise 54

1	barn	hard	chart	match	spark
2	tin	rite	chin	slim	tip
3	ball	stall	palm	although	small
4	cheque	banquet	question	quit	queen
5	belt	smell	check	clerk	depth

*Exercise 55*

1	cloth	moth	born	storm	police
2	heat	heart	beneath	league	lean
3	chop	choke	crop	stop	mot
4	bean	clean	earn	neat	cheat
5	brown	bow	mow	owing	snow

*Exercise 56*

1	engine	enrich	enhance	enquiry	enjoy
2	humour	flour	rumour	humorous	honour
3	winter	wind	spin	intelligent	dust-bin
4	trousers	shout	amount	route	bound
5	bush	rush	push	pull	lunar

*Exercise 57*

1	run	pun	nun	tune	fun
2	see	seat	sin	seen	sugar
3	bathe	hard	path	mark	shark
4	match	market	radial	tap	cap
5	socket	regret	bullet	starlet	rocket

*Exercise 58*

1	own	down	power	powder	tower
2	raise	upstairs	praise	maize	plain
3	high	hill	bill	phin	tin
4	dolphin	toll	poll	total	Poland
5	chatter	matter	sad	barn	catch

*Exercise 59*

1	tutor	visitor	origin	vendor	doctor
2	few	stew	steward	flew	new
3	leaf	means	lean	mean	meant
4	build	builder	guide	building	built
5	bettle	whistle	cattle	settle	battle

### *Exercise 60*

1	win	wine	dine	line	find
2	heal	seal	health	clean	teacher
3	health	steal	stealth	wealth	wear
4	version	pension	tension	mission	illussion
5	butter	cunning	cushion	tunnel	funny

### *Exercise 61*

1	clergy	error	energy	perish	murder
2	ocean	method	open	pose	close
3	north	born	torn	bone	pond
4	would	wound	pound	could	should
5	ash	dash	ask	clash	crash

### *Exercise 62*

1	piece	view	niece	field	shield
2	normal	pork	fork	note	orange
3	fail	nail	tail	spain	fair
4	neighbour	eight	height	weight	freight
5	night	pianist	wine	fine	combine

### *Exercise 63*

1	mile	smile	pupil	file	pile
2	monster	cone	ponder	pond	born
3	police	collide	polite	politics	political
4	mine	line	kite	kid	tubine
5	nonsense	sence	cent	bend	tent

### *Exercise 64*

1	fossil	ill	pupil	fill	nil
2	puma	burma	machine	seminar	lunar
3	sugar	lunar	bullet	lotus	pullcover
4	lorry	fossil	foggy	lost	lose
5	attitude	fat	mat	attend	spam



### *Exercise 65*

1	confuse	abuse	refuse	cluster	bush
2	expose	cloth	clothe	close	pose
3	three	tree	peer	free	freezer
4	heat	meat	feast	stealth	please
5	hour	sour	sound	cloud	soul

### *Exercise 66*

1	those	stove	glove	motion	location
2	even	event	eleven	open	stolen
3	stare	date	fate	state	rate
4	thirty	irritation	thirsty	shirt	dirty
5	mice	police	ice	slice	spice

### *Exercise 67*

1	dear	hear	fear	tear	bear
2	merely	there	sphere	atmosphere	sincere
3	recent	rate	grade	iron	right
4	march	marine	start	part	smart
5	fist	list	wine	filon	clip

### *Exercise 68*

1	pair	chair	air	airport	complain
2	mine	line	airline	famine	minus
3	die	pie	lie	piece	tie
4	means	meant	lean	bean	clean
5	live	vine	aviation	silent	pilot

### *Exercise 69*

1	jail	staircase	fail	failure	aimless
2	urban	surname	pure	burden	fur
3	congress	unless	messy	useless	pessimist
4	advantage	blade	fade	shade	made
5	sonic	sonny	tonne	corner	torn

### *Exercise 70*

1	father	farther	family	farm	tart
2	grand	sand	grant	band	fan
3	foot	boot	stood	wood	flood
4	production	reduction	introduction	delux	bus
5	agency	agent	intelligent	gene	deterggent

### *Exercise 71*

1	comb	cone	bone	throne	sonet
2	name	lame	lava	blame	mane
3	smart	cart	calin	palm	patternn
4	slogan	lounge	poem	ocean	cold
5	lucky	stuck	lucrative	luggage	bug

### *Exercise 72*

1	flirt	skirt	shirt	irritate	birthdday
2	earn	learn	earth	pearl	pear
3	soyabean	toy	coin	boy	bold
4	sold	score	hold	pole	hole
5	issue	tiny	tissue	miss	tip

### *Exercise 73*

1	niece	piece	client	species	brief
2	stick	chicken	brick	microchip	historric
3	beach	search	preach	beat	least
4	church	further	lure	sure	urgenrt
5	excellence	tense	intelligent	recent	often

### *Exercise 74*

1	nervous	person	erode	perish	urge
2	equal	equip	equipment	antique	erasee
3	base	bass	vacant	may	stay
4	knife	key	kiss	bleak	stick
5	radio	ratio	studio	audio	idiot

### *Exercise 75*

1	plum	minimum	maximum	triumph	triumph
2	school	sing	island	sick	bus
3	minority	authority	minor	origin	orange
4	butterfly	buffalo	butter	jury	shut
5	unit	knit	pile	sit	fix

### *Exercise 76*

1	cheat	teacher	chief	cheap	chef
2	see	beef	beer	jeep	steep
3	chorus	chat	chop	chalk	chip
4	climate	stimulate	skin	print	sin
5	timid	tidy	timer	title	kite

### *Exercise 77*

1	cheetah	cheap	chip	lichen	chicken
2	practise	exercise	advise	revise	wise
3	prison	prince	cylinder	silk	cide
4	acid	dioxide	nitrogen	oxide	combine
5	bit	hit	bite	sit	lit

### *Exercise 78*

1	machine	magic	magician	magnet	tag
2	mail	tail	sailor	failure	airline
3	boss	toss	focuss	fossil	fork
4	type	typhoon	typical	fly	style
5	mission	collision	tension	passion	pension

### **KEY**

1. c,a,a,d,d	2. e,d,e,c,b	3. b,c,c,d,e	4. c,b,b,e,b	5. c,d,c,c,c
6. b,d,a,a,d	7. e,e,c,c,d	8. c,d,a,a,c	9. e,c,c,d,e	10. c,c,e,b,b
11. b,d,e,d,b	12. b,c,b,d,a	13. a,d,a,b,a	14. d,c,c,c,d	15. d,b,d,e,d
16. c,c,d,d,e	17. c,d,d,b,c	18. a,d,b,d,d	19. d,d,a,c,d	20. a,c,d,d,d

21.d,b,a,a,e	22.c,d,e,d,a	23.e,a,b,c,b	24.e,c,b,b,e	25.c,d,d,c,d
26.b,a,c,b,a	27.c,a,b,d,e	28.d,b,d,d,e	29.d,d,e,d,e	30.c,a,c,c,b
31.b,d,d,a,e	32.d,c,c,d,a	33.b,b,c,a,a	34.b,c,b,a,b	35.b,b,e,b,d
36.c,e,d,c,a	37.a,e,a,d,e	38.b,d,c,d,e	39.c,c,d,c,d	40.c,d,b,c,e
41.d,c,c,c,e	42.a,c,c,e,d	43.b,d,d,a,a	44.d,c,b,a,a	45.b,c,d,d,e
46.b,a,d,c,e	47.e,d,e,e,c	48.b,c,b,c,b	49.e,b,e,b,c	50.c,b,b,d,b
51.e,b,d,e,b	52.b,b,c,d,d	53.e,e,e,b,a	54.d,b,c,a,d	55.e,b,b,c,a
56.a,b,b,d,b	57.d,e,a,b,b	58.a,b,a,d,d	59.c,d,e,c,b	60.a,c,b,a,c
61.e,b,d,c,e	62.b,d,e,c,b	63.c,b,d,d,a	64.c,d,c,e,d	65.d,b,c,d,e
66.c,b,a,d,d	67.e,b,d,b,c	68.e,d,d,b,c	69.b,c,d,a,c	70.c,c,e,d,d
71.e,c,d,b,c	72.d,e,e,b,b	73.c,d,b,d,b	74.c,d,b,a,e	75.a,c,c,d,c
76.e,c,a,a,a	77.d,a,e,a,c	78.a,e,c,c,b		

## C. CÁC BÀI TẬP VỀ TỪ VỰNG

### Dạng 1: Chọn từ thích hợp nhất để hoàn chỉnh câu

1. Do you ever plan to move back to Minnesota ?  
 - No, but I occasionally think... my friends there.  
 a. visiting      b. to visit      c. of visit      d. of visiting
2. You should have known that Anne couldn't keep a secret—Never again.... her anything.  
 a. will I tell      b. I will tell      c. will tell      d. I tell
3. How do you like your new car ?  
 - We're very.... with the gas mileage.  
 a. pleasing      b. pleasure      c. please      d. pleased
4. Your pictures are beautiful.  
 We... more if we had not run out of film.  
 a. would take      b. had take  
 c. will have taken      d. would have taken

55. This coupon... fifty cents toward your next purchase.  
- Thank you. I'll use it next week.
- a. worths      b. is worth      c. worthy      d. to worth
66. ... does the plane fly ?  
- It flies at 600 miles an hour
- a. how far      b. how fast      c. how soon      d. how long
77. Two gangs fought... in the alley last night.
- a. each other      b. to another      c. with other      d. with each
83. I wish...
- a. I was at home when you called yesterday.  
b. I were at home when you called yesterday.  
c. I am at home when you called yesterday.  
d. I had been at home when you called yesterday.
99. The restless dog has got up and... down 3 times.
- a. laid      b. lain      c. lie      d. lay
100. Can I... your dictionary, please ? I can't find mine.
- a. look      b. owe      c. borrow      d. lay
111. There's not much rice left, but I think there's just ... to end of the week.
- a. enough of rice      b. enough of the rice  
c. little of it      d. enough of it
122. The angry boy ran out of the room... the door behind.
- a. slam      b. slams      c. slamming      d. slammed
133. There is only one student in the classroom... his lesson.
- a. prepares      b. to prepare      c. was preparing      d. preparing
144. My father had the telephone... out of his office.
- a. take      b. taking      c. taken      d. to take

15. Life without... would be dull.

- a. a laughter   b. laught   c. the laughter   d. laughter

16.... that reason, I don't agree with you.

- a. because   b. owing to   c. due to   d. for

17. You don't want another ice cream... ?

- a. won't you   b. don't you   c. do you   d. isn't it

18. All the rooms in this small hotel are... , and that would make it too expensive to stay in.

- a. air condition   b. air conditioners  
c. air conditioning   d. air conditioned

19. There were large rooms with... in the house.

- a. beautiful decorating wall   b. beautiful wall decorating  
c. beautifully decorated walls   d. beautiful decorating walls

20. Sakda always wins the prize because his projects are ...

- a. extremely presented well.   b. presented well extremely  
c. extremely well presented.   d. well presented extremely.

21. Whose book is this ?

- I don't know, but I think...

- a. it's John's brother   b. it's John's brother's  
c. John's brother book   d. that John's brother's

22. If anybody... question, please ask me after class.

- a. has   b. have   c. to have   d. has a

23.... Mt Everest is... highest peak of... Himalayas.

- a. A... the ... -   b. - ... the ... the  
c. A... the   d. the... the ... the

24. He wants to go to the movies and she...

- a. wants too   b. wants also   c. does too   d. does either

25. It was a long time... I lived here.

- a. that                      b. since                      c. ago that                      d. ago

26. The members of the club quarrelled... themselves.

- a. with                      b. among                      c. between                      d. against

27.... of the visitors were strangers to me.

- a. mostly                      b. almost                      c. most                      d. the most

28.... have never heard of Shakespeare.

- a. very few                      b. only few                      c. quite few                      d. just few

29. All the furniture in the house... old fashioned.

- a. is                      b. are                      c. have                      d. have been

30. The news... bad last night.

- a. were                      b. was                      c. has                      d. have been

31. I can't begin sewing my dress until my mother... it out.

- a. will cut                      b. cut                      c. has cut                      d. will be cutting

32. The teacher... has not yet arrived.

- a. I wrote to you about                      b. who I wrote to you  
c. I wrote to you about him                      d. whom I wrote to you about him

33. Some people are used to ... in crowded buses and don't mind it at all

- a. ride                      b. riding                      c. rode                      d. ridden

34. I couldn't help... afraid when I was alone in the house.

- a. be                      b. being                      c. am                      d. was

35. I didn't know that Carol was a waitress here.

- She... here on Saturdays since June.

- a. has been working                      b. has working  
c. having working                      d. has been worked



16. Did you check your paper ?

- No I... it now

a. checking      b. am checking      c. check      d. checked

17. Are you going to the fair ?

- Yes , you're welcome to go with us, so long... you don't have to come back right away.

a. that      b. to      c. as      d. so

18. His grandmother still treats him like a child.

- She can't imagine... grown up.

a. he      b. him      c. his      d. he'll

19. Can't you take a few days off from work to go with me to Newyork ?

- Sure... my way and I'll try to ask my boss for permission.

a. pay      b. if you pay      c. that you pay      d. paying

10. Did you like the book that I gave you ?

- ... the novels that I've read, I enjoyed this one the most.

a. of all      b. all of      c. for all      d. from all

11. What would you like for dinner ?

- ... we're both so tired, why don't we order a pizza

a. however      b. moreover      c. since      d. although

12. I think that the Smiths were embarrassed by Jane's generosity.

- She insisted.... it as a gift

a. on them to accept      b. then accepting  
c. that they accept      d. that they accepted

13. ... left your purse in the car ?

- No, I'm sure that I had it with me in the restaurant.

a. might you have      b. might have you  
c. have you might      d. had you might

44. I couldn't go to the party because of a... cold.  
a. quick      b. surprising      c. sudden      d. hurried
45. When the headmaster... the room, all the pupils stood up.  
a. came      b. arrived      c. appeared      d. entered
46. Mr Bond wasn't in his own car, he was driving ... car.  
a. someone's else      b. someone else  
c. someone else's      d. someone's else's
47. She asked if I would like half an apple or...  
a. whole one      b. the whole one  
c. a one whole      d. a whole one
48. Will the boy who has taken my pencil please bring...?  
a. back to me      b. it back to me  
c. back it to me      d. it to me back
49. Last Monday night, thieves broke... out flat.  
a. into      b. down      c. out of      d. away
50. The Browns have moved into a huge...  
a. two storey house      b. house of two storey  
c. two storeys house      d. houses two storeys
51. Jupiter spins faster than... planet.  
a. any      b. any another      c. any others      d. any other
52. War stole his youth and his home... everything in his life changed. ...  
a. as a result      b. moreover      c. by no means      d. therefore
53. Every student in those five rooms must bring ... own books to class.  
a. one's      b. his      c. their      d. one's

54. I understand that the picnic has been postponed.

- Well , the interest... was not very promising.

- a. showing      b. showed      c. shown      d. shows

55. Have you written to Daeng yet ?

- No, I did not know his address... I would have written to him.

- a. because      b. otherwise      c. consequently      d. there fore

56. Daeng didn't go out lastnight.

- But he said he'd rather have gone out... home.

- a. to having      b. than stay  
c. rather than have stayed      d. than have stayed

57. Who told      you about Nop's bad news ?

- He . . .

- a. told me himself this, and with his voice quivering.  
b. himself told me this, and with his voice quivering.  
c. told me himself this, his voice quivered.  
d. told me this by himself with his voice quivering.

58. Why did you return so suddenly ?

- Well, he demanded that I...

- a. left      b. have left      c. leave      d. must leave

59. Do you know anything about birds ?

- Yes, when I was a child I... read books.

- a. used to      b. am used to reading  
c. was used to read      d. used to reading

60. Seldom... such a beautiful sight.

- a. saw      b. I have ever seen  
c. have I seen      d. was ever seeing

(61). Under no circumstance, ... or exchanged.

- a. goods will be returned                      b. goods should be returned
- c. can goods be returned                      d. are goods being returned

(62). How will you be able to get to Cheingmai in time for the meeting ?

- I'll fly... will only take 50 minutes.

- a. and such      b. that                      c. and therefore                      d. this

(63). Do you believe Absence makes the heart grow fonder ?

- Yes, if my husband and I are parted for a time, ... tend to appreciate. .. more .

- a. we... each other                      b. I... the other
- c. we... us                      d. I... another

(64). I ... thirty cigarettes a day, but now I ... down to ten.

- a. smoke... cut                      b. smoked... cut
- c. used to smoke... had cut                      d. used to smoke... have cut

(65). 'The Lewis children know a lot about farms'.

- They should. They were ... in the country.

- a. brought up                      b.. brought around
- c. brought down                      d. brought to

(66). He is the most... man I have ever known.

- a. deep- religion                      b. deeply - religion
- c. deep religious                      d. deeply religious

(67). I wonder where Mr White is ?

Didn't you know the committee forced him...

- a. resigned      b. resign                      c. resigning                      d. to resign

(68). It was a great... for him to be pleasant to people he didn't like.

- a. attempt      b. trouble                      c. power                      d. efforts

69. The finance minister has not been so... since he raised taxes to such a high level.
- a. famous      b. well know      c. favourable      d. popular
70. She has lost her handbag with the... sum of \$200 in it.
- a. extraordinary      b. important  
c. considerable      d. valuable
71. The building of motorway... major cities... goods and passengers to be transported at high speed.
- a. connecting/enables      b. connecting/enable  
c. connect/enabling      d. connected/enable
- 72.... form of transport is as popular as the private car .
- a. No other      b. No others      c. None other      d. Nothing other
73. I thought you had already seen that movie.  
- Well, it is such a good film...
- a. That I have ever been to      b. That ever I have seen  
c. That I want to see it again      d. That I go to see it again
74. Jack wants to get to Tokyo quickly.  
- ... today, he would be there by Friday.
- a. were he to leave      b. would he leave  
c. to leave      d. was he leaving
75. ... , she usually spends her time... about old times
- a. like most elderly people, \_\_\_\_\_ at talking  
b. like most of the elderly people, \_\_\_\_\_ to talk  
c. like most of the elderly people, \_\_\_\_\_ talking  
d. like most elderly people, \_\_\_\_\_ talking
76. No sooner... the rain...
- a. had we started than \_\_\_\_\_ came

- b. we started when \_\_\_\_ came
- c. did we start that \_\_\_\_ came
- d. we had started that \_\_\_\_ would come

77. ... I was... this morning

- a. Because of the rain, \_\_\_\_\_ an hour late
- b. Because of the rain \_\_\_\_\_ late an hour
- c. Raining, \_\_\_\_\_ late for an hour
- d. Because of raining, \_\_\_\_\_ an hour later

78. Frank... when he noticed a large package lying on the floor

- a. has about to leave
- b. had about to leave
- c. is about to leave
- d. was about to leave

79. Do you think Jenifer is a beautiful girl ?

- I think she is a...

- a. good look
- b. good looked
- c. good looking
- d. well lookin

80. Do you fix your own car ?

- No I always have a mechanic... it.

- a. fix
- b. fixed
- c. fixing
- d. fixes

81. Would you mind if I had you... Peter off at the airport tomorrow morning ?

- a. seen
- b. seeing
- c. see
- d. to see

82. He returned the borrowed book...

- a. the next very day
- b. the day next very
- c. the very day next
- d. the very next day

83. John may not pass the examination but he will do...

- a. his possible best
- b. the best possible
- c. his best
- d. the best

84. Time is short, and the secretaries are typing.....
- a. with a pressure                      b. under pressure  
c. under the pressure                  d. to pressure
85. He has gone... to continue his education
- a. to overseas   b. for overseas   c. in overseas   d. overseas
86. In China an ancient medical treatment... as acupuncture is sometimes used during surgery.
- a. to know      b. knowing      c. known      d. knows
87. If you can't lend me the money, I think I'll ask Fred  
- Don't bother. He has... than I do
- a. fewer      b. little      c. few      d. less
88. I think I failed the test  
- In my opinion, the ... was the most unreasonable
- a. examination third question  
b. question third of the examination  
c. third examination question  
d. examination of the third question
89. Sandra is a miserable person  
- Of course she is. She is jealous... everyone
- a. about      b. with      c. to      d. of
90. He went doing it... our protests
- a. owing to      b. because      c. in spite of      d. instead of
91. It is imperative that this letter. . . immediately.
- a. were sent      b. sent      c. be sent      d. send
92. I wish I . . . more English.
- a. know      b. knew      c. had known      d. have known



913. What would you like for your birthday ?

- . . . will do

a. anything    b. none    c. something    d. somebody

914. . . . would you solve the problem if this method failed ?

a. what else    b. whose else    c. who else    d. how else

915. . . . ourselves, Jack's brother is a drug addict.

a. for    b. among    c. between    d. with

916. It is high time we got going. . . ?

a. Is not it    b. didn't it    c. should we    d. aren't we

917. Though you have been advised to talk less, you need not. . . your opinion when asked.

a. should reserve    b. reserving

c. to reserve    d. reserve

918. If you hurry you will overtake him. He has only just left here and . . . far .

a. mustn't go    b. can't have gone

c. couldn't go    d. can't be going

919. . . . sacrifice was it that people talked about it for years. .

a. much great    b. so great a

c. as great as    d. how great a

1000. I think of yourself, if not of. . .

- Thanks, but I don't see any other way out

a. others    b. another    c. other    d. oneself

## KEY

1. d	2. a	3. d	4. d	5. b
6. b	7. a	8. d	9. b	10. c
11. d	12. c	13. d	14. c	15. d
16. d	17. c	18. d	19. c	20. c
21. b	22. d	23. b	24. c	25. c
26. b	27. c	28. a	29. a	30. b
31. c	32. a	33. b	34. b	35. a
36. b	37. c	38. b	39. a	40. a
41. c	42. c	43. a	44. c	45. d
46. c	47. c	48. b	49. a	50. a
51. d	52. a	53. b	54. c	55. b
56. d	57. b	58. c	59. a	60. c
61. c	62. d	63. a	64. d	65. a
66. d	67. d	68. d	69. e	70. c
71. a	72. a	73. c	74. a	75. d
76. a	77. a	78. d	79. c	80. a
81. c	82. d	83. c	84. b	85. d
86. c	87. d	88. c	89. d	90. c
91. c	92. b	93. a	94. d	95. c
96. a	97. d	98. b	99. b	100. a

**Dạng 2 : Chọn trong số những từ gạch chân cho sẵn để hoàn chỉnh câu, thay đổi những chỗ cần.**

1. produce, production, product, productive

a) We can..... some goods ourselves and import those that we can

b) Car ..... hasn't been developed in Vietnam yet

- c) This is one of the best ..... of his factory  
d) The yield would be much higher if the land were more .....

2. economy, economic, economical, economise

- a) Japan's ..... is now the most powerful in Asia  
b) We started our ..... reforms in 1986  
c) I like this motorbike as it's very .....  
d) We have to ..... energy if we want to reach the destination

3. allow, allowance

- a) My mother doesn't ..... me to come back home after 10p.m.  
b) No one can enter this area without the Lord's .....

4. fame, famous

- a) This novel has brought him .....  
b) Hanoi is ..... for its beauty and history

5. advise, advice, advisory

- a) She ..... me not to accept his invitation  
b) She'll feel sorry for not taking her mother's .....  
c) He works for an ..... company for investment

6. beauty, beautiful, beautify

- a) Her ..... helped her much in her life  
b) She looks more ..... with her Sunday best clothes.  
c) We'll ..... our room with some roses

7. Picture, picturesque

- a) This's a ..... of Paris  
b) Hue is famous for its ..... beauty

8. hot, heat

- a) The Sun is the .....planet on solar system
- b) The ..... from the Sun warms the Earth
- c) It's too cold. You must ..... the coffee before drinking

9. long, length

- a) I first studied English ..... ago
- b) What is the..... of this river
- c) In order to ..... the paragraph we have to add some supporting sentences

10. able , ability

- a) She's ..... to swim across the river but she doesn't like to do so
- b) The teacher 'll check our..... in speaking and writing

11. strong, strength, strengthen

- a) We're ..... enough to defeat our rivals
- b) The .....of winter is in their pens
- c) We should ..... our military forces

12. Help, helpful, helpless

- a) Only her mother can..... her in this situation
- b) We shouldn't throw it away for it may be .....
- c) She is ..... because she has no children or relatives

13. serve, service, servant

- a) They're willing to..... the army
- b) I'm always at your .....
- c) They're ..... of Jesus Christ

14. rain , rainy

- a) It ..... cats and dogs all day

- b) Heavy .....have raised the water level in the Red river
- c) I hate ..... weather

15. sun, sunny

- a) The ..... rises in the East
- b) According to the weather forecast, tomorrow will be .....

16. hill, hilly

- a) The ..... is not very high but quite large
- b) Vinhphu is a ..... area

17. suburb, suburban

- a) I used to live in the ..... of Hanoi
- b) Hanoi has got a large ..... area

18. invent, invention, inventor

- a) The first cart was .....in China
- b) Computer is one of the most important ..... of the 20th century
- c) Marie Curies is considered as the greatest ..... in the world

19. industry, industrialize, industrial, industrialisation

- a) Vietnam is now concentrating on its heavy.....
- b) To be a developed country, we have to..... our production successfully
- c) Our environment could be damaged by ..... wastes from the factories
- d) We're now carrying out the process of.....

20. silence, silent, silently

- a) I couldn't understand his.....

b) Every pupil can be punished for not keeping ..... in  
class.

c) She entered my room .....

21. absent, absence

a) He has been ..... from class for nearly a week

b) She can say anything for her sudden ..... from the  
meeting

22. please, pleasure, pleasant

a) Her daughter always ..... her with good mark

b) It's a ..... to talk with you

c) The party last night was very .....

23. decide, decision, decisive

a) They ..... to stay at home because of the rain

b) He had considered carefully before making this important  
.....

c) Secret keeping is a ..... factor to that victory

24. apply, applicant, application

a) Who ..... for a job is called an .....  
.....

b) We have to fill our names, jobs, ages...in the ..... forms  
before sending them

25. danger, dangerous, endanger

a) US's economy is in ..... of a recession at present

b) In USA, it's very ..... to go out too late in the  
evening

c) Some rare species are ..... as we're cutting down  
trees

26. depend, dependent, dependence, dependency

a) Colonies have to ..... on the protector for any decision

- b) She used to be .....<sup>2</sup>.....on her parents when she was a student
- c) .....<sup>3</sup>..... means no freedom
- d) Vietnam was France's .....<sup>4</sup>..... in late 19th century

27. attract, attraction, attractive

- a) Colorful flowers .....more bees and butterflies
- b) The .....of the books in its very good plot
- c) Her manner of talking is very .....

28. attend, attention, attentive

- a) We all..... the student's meeting yesterday
- b) She pays much..... to her clothes and shoes.
- c) The students are very.....during the lesson.

29. develop, development, developer

- a) We're now..... our market economy instead of the subsidy
- b) Vietnam's joining ASEAN will provides new oppotunities for regional .....
- c) House ..... in Hanoi are investing a lot of money in building hotels

30. environment, environmental

- a) Our ..... is being seriously destroyed
- b) Nuclear power stations have caused much ..... pollution

31. brave , bravery

- a) He is a very .....boy when doing so
- b) His..... was highly appreciated by his friends and teachers



2. invite, inviting, invitation

- a) He had ..... me to his party but I refused
- b) They advised me not to accept his .....
- c) The food was so ..... that I couldn't help ordering one

3. deep, deepen, depth

- a) It's not every one that was ..... understanding on that aspect
- b) The ..... of this lake is 20 meters
- c) The pond is too shallow we have to..... it

4. urban, urbanize, urbanization

- a) In Vietnam, ..... is about 20%
- b) Some cities in Vietnam are being..... quickly
- c) ..... has cause a lot of social problems

5. interested, interesting, interest

- a) His ..... in the novel increases when he reads some parts of the novel.
- b) It's ..... to know that we are going to visit London.
- c) Nobody is ..... in what she is speaking about.

**KEY**

- |            |               |               |               |
|------------|---------------|---------------|---------------|
| a. produce | b. production | c. product    | d. productive |
| a. economy | b. economic   | c. economical | d. economise  |
| a. allow   | b. allowance  |               |               |
| a. fame    | b. famous     |               |               |
| a. advises | b. advice     | c. advisory   |               |
| a. beauty  | b. beautiful  | c. beautify   |               |

- |                    |                  |                  |                      |
|--------------------|------------------|------------------|----------------------|
| 7. a. picture      | b. picturesque   |                  |                      |
| 8. a. hottest      | b. heat          | c. heat          |                      |
| 9. a. long         | b. length        | c. lengthen      |                      |
| 10. a. able        | b. ability       |                  |                      |
| 11. a. strong      | b. strength      | c. strengthen    |                      |
| 12. a. help        | b. helpful       | c. helpless      |                      |
| 13. a. serve       | b. service       | c. servants      |                      |
| 14. a. rains       | b. rains         | c. rainy         |                      |
| 15. a. sun         | b. sunny         |                  |                      |
| 16. a. hill        | b. hilly         |                  |                      |
| 17. a. suburbs     | b. suburban      |                  |                      |
| 18. a. invented    | b. invention     | c. inventor      |                      |
| 19. a. industry    | b. industrialize | c. industrial    | d. industrialization |
| 20. a. silence     | b. silent        | c. silently      |                      |
| 21. a. absent      | b. absence       |                  |                      |
| 22. a. pleases     | b. pleasure      | c. pleasant      |                      |
| 23. a. decide      | b. decision      | c. decisive      |                      |
| 24. a. applies     | b. applicant     | c. application   |                      |
| 25. a. danger      | b. dangerous     | c. endangered    |                      |
| 26. a. depend      | b. dependence    | c. dependency    |                      |
| 27. a. attract     | b. attraction    | c. attractive    |                      |
| 28. a. attended    | b. attention     | c. attentive     |                      |
| 29. a. developing  | b. development   | c. developer     |                      |
| 30. a. environment |                  | b. environmental |                      |
| 31. a. brave       | b. bravery       |                  |                      |
| 32. a. invited     | b. invitation    | c. inviting      |                      |
| 33. a. deeply      | b. depth         | c. deepen        |                      |
| 34. a. urban       |                  | b. urbanized     | c. urbanization      |
| 35. a. interest    | b. interesting   | c. interested    |                      |

**Dạng 3 : Chọn từ đồng nghĩa/trái nghĩa/gần nhau về nghĩa.**

**Bài tập về từ đồng nghĩa**

- |                     |                      |                      |
|---------------------|----------------------|----------------------|
| 1. Clever           | a. stupid            | c. Familiar          |
|                     | b. Intelligent       | d. Wise              |
| 2 Stop              | a. Like              | c. Cease             |
|                     | b. Continue          | d. Hold              |
| 3. Woman            | a. Car               | c. Book              |
|                     | b. Wife              | d. Boyhood           |
| 4. Help             | a. Prevent           | c. Assist            |
|                     | b. Object            | d. Influence         |
| 5. High             | a. Full              | c. Much              |
|                     | b. Tall              | d. Long              |
| 6. Get              | a. Receive           | c. Lose              |
|                     | b. Perform           | d. Train             |
| 7. Similar          | a. Perform           | d. Train             |
|                     | b. Exact             | d. Shameful          |
| 8. Annual           | a. Yearly            | c. Year              |
|                     | b. Timely            | d. Monthly           |
| 9. High temperature | a. a fever           | c. a favour          |
|                     | b. an operation      | d. an examination    |
| 10. Ocean           | a. Sea               | c. Tree              |
|                     | b. North             | d. South             |
| 11. Tropic          | a. Hot, dry country  | c. Cold, wet country |
|                     | b. Cold, dry country | d. Hot, wet country  |
| 12. Toward          | a. From              | c. To                |
|                     | b. in                | d. of                |
| 13. both            | a. two of them       | c. five of them      |
|                     | b. not any           | d. all of them       |

114.. Difficult	a. not easy	c. easy
	b. thick	d. cool
115.. deaf	a. can't see	c. can't hear
	b. can't walk	d. can't run
116.. Ago	a. again	c. Before now
	b. after today	d. leave
117.. Raise	a. Grow	c. Pick up
	b. Find	d. Enjoy
118.. Nearly	a. Beside	c. Almost
	b. Inside	d. After
119.. Century	a. Ten years	c. hundred years
	b. fifty years	d. thousand years
20.. terrible	a. Good	c. very good
	b. bad	d. very bad
21.. quickly	a. slowly	c. fast
	b. poorly	d. nice
22.. Perhaps	a. Over	c. Blow
	b. Maybe	d. at all
23.. Gift	a. \$ 100	c. food
	b. Present	d. battle
24.. Pleased	a. Unhappy	c. Afraid
	b. Deep	d. Happy
25.. Injure	a. Hurt	c. arrive
	b. Tell	d. win
26.. Over	a. Wonderful	c. finished
	b. Double	d. Middle
27.. Dozen	a. Fourteen	c. Eight
	b. Twelve	d. Sixteen
28.. Nation	a. Country	c. Mountain
	b. Religion	d. Governor



- |                |                    |                    |
|----------------|--------------------|--------------------|
| 44. Wounded    | a. Unconscious     | c. Diseased        |
|                | b. Injured         | d. Distressed      |
| 45. Recently   | a. Suddenly        | c. Lately          |
|                | b. Quietly         | d. Formerly        |
| 46. Obligation | a. Restriction     | c. Observation     |
|                | b. Annoyance       | d. duty            |
| 47. Vanish     | a. Land            | c. attack          |
|                | b. Disappear       | d. rise            |
| 48. Small      | a. Big             | c. Little          |
|                | b. few             | d. great           |
| 49. Wish       | a. desire          | c. sung            |
|                | b. wash            | d. give            |
| 50. effect     | a. Depth           | c. affliction      |
|                | b. affection       | d. Influence       |
| 51. Boundary   | a. Border          | c. Water           |
|                | b. Bridge          | d. Diplomatic rela |
| 52. Inquiry    | a. Gossip          | c. Investigation   |
|                | b. Inquisitiveness | d. Recording       |

### KEY

- |      |      |      |      |      |      |
|------|------|------|------|------|------|
| 1.b  | 11.d | 21.c | 31.c | 41.a | 51.a |
| 2.c  | 12.c | 22.b | 32.c | 42.c | 52.c |
| 3.b  | 13.a | 23.b | 33.d | 43.b |      |
| 4.c  | 14.a | 24.d | 34.c | 44.b |      |
| 5.b  | 15.c | 25.a | 35.d | 45.c |      |
| 6.a  | 16.c | 26.c | 36.d | 46.d |      |
| 7.a  | 17.a | 27.b | 37.b | 47.b |      |
| 8.a  | 18.c | 28.a | 38.b | 48.c |      |
| 9.a  | 19.c | 29.a | 39.c | 49.a |      |
| 10.a | 20.d | 30.b | 40.d | 50.d |      |

## Dạng 4 : Tìm từ theo chủ điểm

### 1. Characteristic - Appearance

Generous, beautiful, slant eyes, reasonable, shy, obedient, buck tooth, harelip ambitious, attractive.

### 2. Subject - books

Literature, detective story, mathematics, history, short stories, novel, poems, chemist, geography, magazine.

### 3. Travel - Library

Ticket, librarian, reader, travel agent, journey, platform, bookish, newspaper, jumbojet, books.

### 4. Parts of the body - Telephoning

Head, operator, dial, nose, mouth, hands, recall, foot, phone number, ringing

### 5. City - Country

Field, paddy, pasture, street, avenue building, buffaloes, cow, super market, zebra - crossing.

### 6. Colour - book

Detective story, title, yellow, auburn, jet black, horror story, characters, dictionary, dark, walnut

### 7. Means of transport - Title of book

Motorbike, truck, play, novel, poem, helicopter, short stories, ship, tram, tragedies.

### 8. Town - Country

Cottage, concert hall, mountains, villages, hills, farm, statue, traffic lights, theatre, pollution

### 9. Names of nation - capital

Budapest, Romania, Hungary, Poland, Sofia, Prague, Warsaw Bulgaria, Albania, Bucharest, Tirana, the Czech Republic



110. Males - Females

Man, woman, actor, princess, queen actress, prince, usherette, usher

111. Current - land

River, ocean, hill, mountain, highland stream, sea, sea - currents, delta, continent

112. School - Hospital

School boy, teacher, headmaster, patient, nurse, chalk, dean, doctor, medicine ward.

113. Diseases - entertainments

Measles, football, high - blood - pressure, volleyball, smallpox, fever, fencing, sore throat, walking, strolling

114. Revolution - Entertainment

Go for a walk, war, veterans, Take a good rest, Defend one's country, Struggle, Listen to music, Go on a strike, go camping, Picnic, fight for final

115. Post office - Trade

Mail, green grocer's, shop assistant, stamp, envelope, operator, commercial - centre, phonebox, market, seller.

116. Renting houses, going by plane

Aeroplane, move in, landlady, airhostess, new house, take off, smell of new paint, stewardess, return ticket, far from bus stop.

117. Fighting - Learning

Battle, do homework, commander, soldier, join the army, stop attacking, reading book, writing, making a conversation, taking an examination

## 18. Career - Population

Economist, birthrate, dentist, family planning, population explosion, administrator, secretary, technician, grow rapidly, death rate

## 19. Members in family- In court

Grandparents, arbitrator, jury, husband, daughter, uncle, aunt, judge, deliberations, attorney.

## 20. Social subjects - Natural subjects

Literature, biology, history, maths, languages, physics, chemistry, psychology, engineering, pedagogy.

## 21. Times - Places

Student club, spring, year, station, fort, beach, tomorrow, autumn, lecture hall, summer.

## 22. Fruit - Flower

Orchid, madonna lilly, orange, peach, peach blossom, lavender, jack - fruit, longan, apricot blossom, durian, litchi, lotus.

## 23. Sports - Colors

Horse - racing, cream, blond, rugby, ski - jumping, down - hill - skiing, surfing, sapphire blue, red lake, roller - skate.

## 24. Foot balls - sports

Penalty spot, defender, billiard, cricket, weight - lifting, wind - surfing, goal keeper, linesman, supporter, darts, badminton

## 25. Seasons - weathers

Spring, sunny, snowy, autumn, cold, midautumn, foggy, winter, summer, mild

## 26. Dates- Months

January, Monday, September, February, Sunday, October, Tuesday, Thursday, November, December.

27. Music instruments - Cooking

Piano, knife, spoon, guitar, trumpet, Saucepan, pot, flute, bosol  
micro

28. Expression - Colour.

Navyblue, exciting, jade, feeling, opera pink, love, vermillion  
deep. purple, hate, bored.

29. Position - Camping

Between, above, beneath, torch, string, tent, curtain, under  
sleeping bag, among.

30. School - University

Pupil, student, campus, playground lecturer, professor, teacher.  
alphabet dean, researcher, school boy.

31. Forest - Ocean

Spa, brook, bay wave, tidal wave, ship, salt, tree, tiger, buoy,  
water fall

32. Bank - Airline

Cashier, air plane, capital, loan, account, flight, air - hostess,  
cheque, passenger, pilot.

33. Asian food, western food

Rice, bread, cheese, fish sauce, butter, dogmeat, hamburger,  
sandwich, omelette, fried chicken

34. Construction - Metric system.

Architect, kilometre, square metre, brick, glass, decimetre, sand,  
cement, worker, hectare, tonne.

35. Factory - School

Salary, manager, examination, products, chalk, summer holiday,  
maternity leave, premature pension, sign a contract, class ,  
eraser, blackboard

## KEY

1. C. generous, resonable, shy, obedient, ambitious.  
A. Beautiful, slant eyes, buck tooth, harelip, attractive.
2. S. literature, mathematic, history, chemistry, geography  
B. Detective story, short - story, novel, poems, magazine.
3. T. ticket, travel agent, journey, platform, jumbo jet  
L. librarian, reader, bookish, newspaper, books.
4. P. head, nose, mouth, hand, foot.  
T. Operator, dial, phone number, ringing.
5. City : street, avenue, building, supermarket, zebra - crossing  
Country : field, paddy, pasture, cow, buffaloes.
6. C. Yellow, auburn, jet black, dark, walnut.  
B. Detective story, title, horror story characters, dictionary.
7. M : Motorbike, truck, helicopter, shiptram  
T : Play, novel, poem, short stories tragedies.
8. T. Concert hall, statue, traffic lights, theatre, pollution.  
C. Cottage, mountain, villages, hills , farm.
9. Capital : Budapest, Sofia, Prague, Warsaw, Bucharest, Traina.  
N: Hungary, Bulgaria, the Czech Republic, Poland, Romania  
Albania.
10. M. Man, actor, prince, usher.  
F. Woman, actress, princess, queen usherette.
11. C. river, ocean, stream, sea , sea - currents.  
L. Hill, mountain, highland, delta, continent.
12. S. School boy, teacher, headmaster chalk, dean  
H. Patient, nurse, doctor, ward medicine.
13. D. Measles, high-blood-pressure, smallpox, fever, sore throat  
E. Football, volleyball, fencing walking, strolling

14. R  
Struggle  
Go on strike  
War veterans  
Fight for  
Final victory  
Defend one's country
- E  
Go for a walk  
Take a good rest  
Picnic  
Go camping  
Listen to music
15. P. Mail, stamp, envelope, operator, phone box.  
T. Greengrocer's, shop assistant, commercial centre, market, seller
16. Renting houses : Move in, landlady new house, smell of new paint, far from bus - stop.  
Going by plane : aeroplane, air - hostess, take off, stewardess, return - ticket.
17. F. Battle, commander, soldier, join the army, stop attacking  
L. Do exercise , reading books, writing, making conversation, taking an examination
18. P. Birthrate, family planning, population explosion, grow rapidly, death rate.
19. F. Grand parents, husband daughter uncle, aunt.  
C. Arbitrator, jury, attorney judge, deliberations
20. S. literature, history, languages, psychology, pedagogy.  
N. Biology, maths, physics, chemistry, engineering.
21. T. Spring, year, tomorrow, autumn, summer.  
P. Student club, station, port, beach, lecture hall
22. Fruit. Orange, peach, jack fruit, longan, durian, litchi.  
Flower. orchid, madonna lily, lavender peach blossom, apricot blossom lotus.
23. S. Horse - racing, rugby, ski - jumping down - hill - skiing, surfing, roller - skate.  
C. Cream, blond, red lake, sapphire blue, copper yellow

24. F. Penalty spot, defender, linesman, supporter, goal keeper.  
S. Billiard, cricket, weight – Lifting, darts, badminton
25. S. Spring, autumn, midautumn, winter, summer.  
W. Sunny, snowy, cold, foggy, mild.
26. D. Monday, Sunday, Tuesday, Thursday, Saturday.  
M. January, September, February, October, November, December
27. M. Piano, guitar, trumpet, flute micro.  
C. Knife, spoon, pot, bowl, saucepan.
28. E. Exciting, feeling, love, hate, bored  
C. Navy blue, jade, opera pink, vermilion deep, purple.
29. P. Between, above, beneath, under, among.  
C. Torch, string, tent, curtain, sleeping bag.
30. S. Pupil, playground, teacher, alphabet, schoolboy.  
U. Campus, lecturer, professor dean, researcher.
31. F. Spa, brook, tree, tiger, water fall  
O. Bay, wave, tidal wave, ship, buoy.
32. B. Cashier, capital, loan, account, cheque.  
A. Air plane, flight, air hostess, passenger, pilot
33. A. Rice, fish sauce, dogmeat, omelette, fried chicken.  
W. Bread, cheese, butter, sandwich hamburger
34. C. Architect, brick, glass, sand, cement, worker.  
M. Kilometre, square, tonne.
35. F. Salary, manager products, maternity leave,  
premature pension, sign a contract.  
S. Examination, chalk, summer holiday, class, eraser,  
black board.

## Dạng 5 : Gạch chân từ không đồng loại

1. Fruit, mushrooms, soap, cereal, cheese  
Dress, suit, shirt, film, jumper, shorts  
Baker's, hairdresser's, green grocer's, butcher's, doctor
2. Coke, alcohol, liquer, port, bread, water  
Carefully, friendly, dangerously, heavily, difficultly, beautiful  
Germany, France, Italy, Mexican, America, Australia
3. Taste, sip, drink, play, eat,  
Sailor, soldier, pilot, captain, war  
Hair, foot, eyes, voice, hands, arms
4. Fall in love ; get married, get engaged, be retired  
Pink, yellow, violet, warm, blue  
Camera, stereo, computer, television , photographer
5. Shy, nervous, angry, happy, thirsty  
Century, season, year, clock, month  
Recipe, biscuit, cake, bread, jam
6. Orange, apple, chicken, banana, litchi  
Fridge, dishwasher, television, washing machine, vacuum cleaner  
Station, train, ticket, journey, letter
7. Vegetable, cabbage, carrot, cauliflower, salad.  
Beautiful, handsome, nice, lovely, ugly  
Hotel, tourist, plane, receptionist, fat
8. Carbondioxide, sulphurdioxide, nitrogen dioxide,  
hydrocarbons, chemical  
Water cress, broccoli, artichoke, aubergine, vinegar, courgette  
Greengage, tonic, durian, banana, strawberry



9. Cider, lemonade, orangeade, bechamel, coke  
Dog, cat, pig, cow, tiger, chicken  
Grape, mango, pear, butterfly, papaw
10. Lilly, forget - me -not, violet, apple, flame - flower  
Pansy, rose, orchid, tea, jasmine  
Lotus, lily, peach blossom, apricot
11. Yellow, straw yellow, lemon yellow, canary yellow, cabbage  
Blue, lilac, brown, olive, plum  
Paper, notebook, stamp, driver, envelope
12. Doctor, worker, nurse, patient, dentist.  
Door, window, widen, ceiling, floor  
Syllable, word, sound, calendar, sentence
13. Laughed, smiled, wrote, spoke, took  
Happy, noisy, person, quiet, calm  
Breakfast, lunch, bill, dinner, supper
14. Pen, pencil, ball - pointed pen, ink  
Part- time, full time, singer, over work, unemployment  
Sun, moon, star, sky, storm, cloud
15. Crop, field, chimney, manure, pump  
Workshop, machine, factory, paddy, chimney  
Mercury, Mars, Planets, Venus, Saturn

## KEY 5

- |             |             |            |
|-------------|-------------|------------|
| 1. a. Soap  | b. film     | c. Doctor  |
| 2. a. Bread | b. Friendly | c. Mexican |
| 3. a. Play  | b. War      | c. Voice   |

- |                  |               |                 |
|------------------|---------------|-----------------|
| 4. a. Be retired | b. Warm       | c. Photographer |
| 5. a. Thirsty    | b. Clock      | c. Recipe       |
| 6. a. Chicken    | b. Television | c. Letter       |
| 7. a. Vegetable  | b. Ugly       | c. Fat          |
| 8. a. Chemical   | b. Vinegar    | c. Tonic        |
| 9. a. Bechamel   | b. Tiger      | c. Butterfly    |
| 10. a. Apple     | b. Tea        | c. Apricot      |
| 11. a. Cabbage   | b. Plum       | c. Driver       |
| 12. a. Worker    | b. Widen      | c. Calendar     |
| 13. a. Write     | b. Person     | c. Bill         |
| 14. a. Ink       | b. Singer     | c. Storm        |
| 15. a. Chimney   | b. Paddy      | c. Planets.     |

**Dạng 6 : Hoàn chỉnh câu bằng dạng thích hợp của từ cho sẵn**

1. He said good morning in a most \_\_\_\_\_ way (friend).
2. My teacher encourage me to take this examination (courage)
3. Recently nutritious foods have increased in population.  
(popular)
4. The old lady hid all her \_\_\_\_\_ under the floor. (save)
5. On \_\_\_\_\_ his letter, her face changed. (open)
6. I said " I've lost all my money at the races", but my friend were  
\_\_\_\_\_ (sympathy)
7. He is a nice chap but even his children sometimes laugh at his  
\_\_\_\_\_ (stupid)

3. Your money will be refunded if the goods are not to your complete \_\_\_\_ (satisfy)
4. We always have a bed ready in the spare room in case visitors arrive \_\_\_\_ (expect)
5. The book does not say much about prices, but is very \_\_\_\_ about everything else. (inform)
6. These quantities are \_\_\_\_ for the number of orders received. (sufficient)
7. I am not saying he is \_\_\_\_, but he is not very good with money (honest).
8. The \_\_\_\_ she gave last night was marvellous. (perform)
9. She has one of the biggest \_\_\_\_ in Britain (collect).
10. They managed to find three miners who were still \_\_\_\_ three days after the underground explosion. (live)
11. Cats are supposed to have nice \_\_\_\_ (live).
12. "Look after your mother", were his \_\_\_\_ words. (die)
13. He claimed that his \_\_\_\_ had caused him to become a criminal. (bring up).
14. It was a difficult \_\_\_\_ and she almost lost the baby. (pregnant)
15. The government has promised to deal with the problem of \_\_\_\_ among young people. (employ)
16. I am sorry about my \_\_\_\_, but I hate being kept waiting. (patient)
17. I'm looking for a suiting gift for an old lady (suit)
18. It was quite \_\_\_\_ to order so much food (necessary)
19. The judge told him it was \_\_\_\_ to drink and drive, and banned him for a year. (responsible)

25. This poem shows the wonderful \_\_\_\_\_ of the poet.  
(sensitive)
26. It was a \_\_\_\_\_ episode in the country's history.  
(shame)
27. They celebrate their \_\_\_\_\_ on 4th July. (depend).
28. The gas from the chemical factory was extremely \_\_\_\_\_.  
(harm)
29. The restaurant is now under new \_\_\_\_\_ (manage).
30. The government has planned to increase the rate of \_\_\_\_\_ among young people. (employ)
31. He was given a light sentence because of his \_\_\_\_\_.  
(young)
32. I am tired of your \_\_\_\_\_ behaviour. When are you going to grow up? (child)
33. You could hardly think she has two \_\_\_\_\_ girls. She just looks so young. (teen)
34. She divorced him because of his \_\_\_\_\_ to the children.  
(kind)
35. The evening was \_\_\_\_\_ spent playing and talking.  
(enjoy)
36. The keys were locked inside the car, \_\_\_\_\_, a side window was open. (luck).
37. He was turned down for the job because he was not \_\_\_\_\_ (qualify)
38. In parts of the country the \_\_\_\_\_ situation is terrible. As many as 20% of the working population is without a job.  
(employ)
39. The world of computers is extremely \_\_\_\_\_ (compete).
40. The government is expected to take \_\_\_\_\_ against the level of unemployment. (act)

41. They have added three new songs to the show, which \_\_\_\_\_ it by about fifteen minutes .(long) ,
42. I am looking for a \_\_\_\_\_ gift for an old lady (suit).
43. Oscar had eaten so much that he had to \_\_\_\_\_ his belt (loose)
44. The dictionaries are with the other \_\_\_\_\_ books. (refer)
45. No one would call him a giant but you must admit he's \_\_\_\_\_ (tall).
46. He rescued a child from drowning and was given a medal for his \_\_\_\_\_ (brave).
47. She bites her nails all the time. It is a sign of \_\_\_\_\_ (nervous).
48. This coffee is too \_\_\_\_\_ to drink. (heat)
49. I really don't think he has the \_\_\_\_\_ to do this job. (able)
50. The professor explained his ideas with great \_\_\_\_\_ (clear).
51. All the newspapers praised the \_\_\_\_\_ of the firemen. (brave)
52. Saucepans are sold in the \_\_\_\_\_ goods department. (house)
53. The group called "Friends of the Earth" is concerned about the \_\_\_\_\_ of the natural environment. (conserve)
54. I has to check the wages in \_\_\_\_\_ to my normal work. (add)
55. During his \_\_\_\_\_ the family lived in Cornwall. (child)
56. This matter is very \_\_\_\_\_. Don't discuss it outside this office. (confidence)
57. He's very generous, will help anyone and is very \_\_\_\_\_ (self)

58. You can never be sure what he is going to do. He's so \_\_\_\_\_ (predict)
59. She's very \_\_\_\_\_ and loves looking after babies and toddlers. (mother)
60. She received a lot of \_\_\_\_\_ from her mother. (encourage)
61. Does this \_\_\_\_\_ suit you ? (arrange)
62. Conversation is one of the most enjoyable form of \_\_\_\_\_ (entertain)
63. You are talking complete \_\_\_\_\_ (sense)
64. He seemed to be quite \_\_\_\_\_ about the future. (hopeful)
65. The ending of the detective novel seemed highly \_\_\_\_\_ (probable)
66. The berries are \_\_\_\_\_. Don't eat them. (poison).
67. He was very \_\_\_\_\_ of the work he had done. (pride).
68. There has been a \_\_\_\_\_ of 10% in the amount of money available for buying new books. (reduce)
69. He is a very \_\_\_\_\_ carpenter. (skill)
70. He \_\_\_\_\_ to hit me if I didn't hand over my money. (threat)
71. Do you know what the \_\_\_\_\_ of the river. (deep)
72. There is a \_\_\_\_\_ of fruits in Vietnam. (vary)
73. \_\_\_\_\_, I'm in favour of the plan, but there are still one or two points that I'm not entirely happy with. (base)
74. He was born blind, but despite this \_\_\_\_\_ he still managed to become one of the top Pop singers of his generation. (able)

75. I think it is very \_\_\_\_\_ of him to expect us to work overtime everynight this week. (reason)
76. English is a \_\_\_\_\_ easy language for Swedes to learn. (compare)
77. Due to the clerk's \_\_\_\_\_, we missed the train. (stubborn)
78. Thousands of people are living in \_\_\_\_\_ after the earthquake .(miserable)
79. The thing I hate about John is his \_\_\_\_\_ (reliable)
80. He interested in the \_\_\_\_\_ of old buildings. (preserve)
81. The manager handed in his \_\_\_\_\_ after being accused of dishonesty .(resign)
82. The thief replaced the diamond with a \_\_\_\_\_ stone. (worth)
83. \_\_\_\_\_about the company's future means that few people wanted to invest money in it. (certain)
84. Simon admitted that his cruel joke was \_\_\_\_\_ (intend)
85. The refugees found \_\_\_\_\_ over the border. (safe)
86. The king's \_\_\_\_\_ organised a revolution. (oppose)
87. Their \_\_\_\_\_ has lasted a lifetime. (friend)
88. In many countries the \_\_\_\_\_ get the dole. (employ)
89. She left school with good \_\_\_\_\_ (qualify)
90. The factory was \_\_\_\_\_ so the management tried to cut costs by making some workers redundant. (compete)
91. She was sent to prison for \_\_\_\_\_ for murdering her husband. (live)
92. This bottle contains a \_\_\_\_\_ poison. (die)
93. \_\_\_\_\_ is a time that is supposed to be free of worries. (child)



94. \_\_\_\_\_ is traditionally a time when parents and children don't get on very well with each other. (adolescent)
95. He is thinking of taking early \_\_\_\_\_ next year. (retire)
96. People with very \_\_\_\_\_ skin shouldn't go sunbathing for long periods. (sensitive)
97. Thousands of people have been made \_\_\_\_\_ by the war. (homeless)
98. Her boss accused her of being over \_\_\_\_\_ (ambitious)
99. She upset him with a \_\_\_\_\_ remark about his big nose. (tactless)
100. She is a \_\_\_\_\_ of theatre programmes. (collector)
101. \_\_\_\_\_ is an extremely popular hobby. (photography)
102. There were 50 \_\_\_\_\_ in the talent contest. (competitors)
103. Young children are often very \_\_\_\_\_. They have so much energy they can't sit still for a moment. (lively)
104. She was shocked to find out she had been \_\_\_\_\_ (adopted)
105. They were sent to an \_\_\_\_\_ run by nuns. (orphanage)
106. My aunt is an \_\_\_\_\_ officer. (immigration)
107. Yesterday afternoon, there was a bank \_\_\_\_\_ in the city. (robbery)
108. There are \_\_\_\_\_ with the old testament. (similarities)
109. He missed the \_\_\_\_\_ of his train by a minute. (departure)
110. The \_\_\_\_\_ was won in the last minute of the game. (champion)
111. It was a complete \_\_\_\_\_ due to poor planning. (failure)
112. Their \_\_\_\_\_ has lasted a lifetime. (friendship)
113. He cycled \_\_\_\_\_ and had an accident. (careless)
114. Could you \_\_\_\_\_ the picture over the sofa? (straighten)

115. It's hard to buy meat on the island but fish is \_\_\_\_\_  
(plenty)
116. I've only been to Bristol \_\_\_\_\_ before, and that was  
many years ago. (one)
117. My car is much too \_\_\_\_\_ to take on a long journey (rely)
118. In \_\_\_\_\_, I'd like to thank the people who have helped  
me while I have been working here. (conclude)
119. She was sentenced to forty years \_\_\_\_\_ for  
manslaughter. (prison)
120. There was a \_\_\_\_\_ silence when he mentioned his  
ex-wives name. (die)
121. He is completely \_\_\_\_\_. Not only he is lazy but he is  
dishonest too. (employ)
122. Their best designer went to work for a \_\_\_\_\_  
(compete)
123. More than a thousand workers are \_\_\_\_\_ here.  
(employ)
124. Three firms are in \_\_\_\_\_ for the same contract. (compete)
125. The USA is a land of \_\_\_\_\_ (immigrate)
126. Going around the world in a hot-air balloon was a fantastic  
\_\_\_\_\_. (achieve)
127. Facing dangers and difficulties together is supposed to give  
the members of an expedition an amazing feeling of  
\_\_\_\_\_ (company)
128. To sail single-handed across the ocean takes both skill and  
\_\_\_\_\_ (determine)
129. They became \_\_\_\_\_ short of water so Jan had to make her  
way down the steep path to the river with a bucket. (danger)
130. Modern farm animals and crops are result of centuries of  
\_\_\_\_\_ breeding. (select)

131. My friend is a keen amateur \_\_\_\_\_ (nature)
132. Cattle and chickens are \_\_\_\_\_ animals. (domestic)
133. The whales have not only suffered untold cruelty but now face, total \_\_\_\_\_ (exterminate)
134. Graig's old jacket was so \_\_\_\_\_ that he had to buy a new one. (wear)
135. The ring was not valuable : in fact it was almost \_\_\_\_\_ (worth)
136. During his speech, he kept on \_\_\_\_\_ his tie. (straight)
137. The water in this area is \_\_\_\_\_ and should not be drunk. (pure)
138. A successful business needs good \_\_\_\_\_ (organise)
139. Alison's \_\_\_\_\_ made it hard for her to speak in public. (shy)
140. He drives very \_\_\_\_\_ (care) so he smetimes has accidents
141. \_\_\_\_\_ have been investigating selenium's role in the body since 1957. (research)
142. Nicotine is responsible for the \_\_\_\_\_ effects of smoking. (behave)
143. If you still feel ill after taking this treatment, you should see \_\_\_\_\_ (special)
144. After her illness she started worrying that she was \_\_\_\_\_ (weigh)
145. What are the \_\_\_\_\_ between examining a person's physical state and examining a person from a psychiatric point of view. (similar)
146. One day he would have to accept the \_\_\_\_\_ of one of his heroes in public life. (resign)

147. After having drunk a lot of wine, he came back home \_\_\_\_\_ (steady)
148. \_\_\_\_\_ He failed the final exam. (luck)
149. It is very \_\_\_\_\_ for you to go alone on the road at night. (danger)
150. Although he clearly knows that his business is \_\_\_\_\_ he still does that. (legal)
151. The author gives three examples of the \_\_\_\_\_ culture shock. (Orient)
152. People who feel culture shock stay at home because of \_\_\_\_\_ (solve)
153. A newcomer is \_\_\_\_\_ with the area around him or her. (familiar)
154. People usually have hobbies for \_\_\_\_\_ (enjoy)
155. Disorientation is a feeling of \_\_\_\_\_ (real)
156. Street noise is one of the \_\_\_\_\_ of living in the city (advantage)
157. Studies show that smoking cigarettes is \_\_\_\_\_ (health)
158. Some universities in United States have \_\_\_\_\_ dormitories. (Co- educate)
159. A \_\_\_\_\_ person is one who is kind. (think)
160. There are various \_\_\_\_\_ for the party. (possible)
161. Everyone was shocked. It was a \_\_\_\_\_ murder. (sense)
162. Only a few things in life are \_\_\_\_\_ (change)
163. That diamond is a \_\_\_\_\_ antique (price)
164. What kind of \_\_\_\_\_ does that pie have? (pleasant)
165. He used all his \_\_\_\_\_ to force the door open. (strong)

166. He was too \_\_\_\_\_ to tell his teacher about the stupid mistake. (shame)
167. The police are interested in the sudden \_\_\_\_\_ of the valuable painting. (appear)
168. I believe you because I know you are \_\_\_\_\_ (true)
169. I feel so \_\_\_\_\_ that I'm going to bed. (sleep)
170. The cost of \_\_\_\_\_ must be paid by the buyer. (carry)
171. I was late because I \_\_\_\_\_ how much time I need. (estimate)
172. He wrote the book alone, so he doesn't have a \_\_\_\_\_ (author)
173. Even if you are good at a game, you shouldn't be \_\_\_\_\_ (confident)
174. It is very rude to interrupt someone in \_\_\_\_\_ (sentence)
175. Many buildings were \_\_\_\_\_ after the earthquake in 1980. (build)
176. Most people who work feel that they are \_\_\_\_\_ (pay)
177. She's having a rest because she had been \_\_\_\_\_ (work)
178. I'd lost my key so I couldn't \_\_\_\_\_ the door when I got home. (lock)
179. Their \_\_\_\_\_ gave us heart to go on. (encourage)
180. People who eat a lot often become \_\_\_\_\_ (weight)
181. like him, because he's a very \_\_\_\_\_ person. (rely)
182. Don't be so \_\_\_\_\_, we've only been waiting for a few minutes. (patient)
183. 7.30 a.m on a Saturday is a rather \_\_\_\_\_ time for an appointment. (convenient)
184. Please don't be so \_\_\_\_\_ I can't do all the work by myself. (reason)

185. There are always mistakes because the firm is so \_\_\_\_\_ (efficient)
186. Sorry about the mistake, I \_\_\_\_\_ the instructions you gave me. (understand)
187. They've \_\_\_\_\_, my name on this form the first letter is L not R. (spell)
188. After I had got to know him better, I \_\_\_\_\_ him intensely. (like)
189. It was very \_\_\_\_\_ of you to break that coffee cup. (care)
190. Thank you for your postcard, it was very \_\_\_\_\_ of you to send it. (think)
191. She's quite \_\_\_\_\_ : she plays the flute and the piano. (music)
192. He was \_\_\_\_\_ when he did the test badly. (hope)
193. We started our trip on a beautiful \_\_\_\_\_ morning. (sun)
194. I enjoyed the book very much, because it was so \_\_\_\_\_ (read)
195. His \_\_\_\_\_ knowledge is very poor - he thinks Paris is in Italy. (geography)
196. Her hair is \_\_\_\_\_, not bright red. (red)
197. A very old car is usually an \_\_\_\_\_ car. (rely)
198. I'll always remember that journey - it was an \_\_\_\_\_ experience. (forget)
199. The knife may need \_\_\_\_\_ before it is used. (sharp)
200. The city has over million \_\_\_\_\_ (inhabit)

## KEY

- |                   |                    |                   |
|-------------------|--------------------|-------------------|
| 1. friendly       | 2. encouraged      | 3. popularity     |
| 4. savings        | 5. opening         | 6. unsympathetic  |
| 7. stupidity      | 8. satisfaction    | 9. unexpectedly   |
| 10. informative   | 11. insufficient   | 12. dishonest     |
| 13. performance   | 14. collections    | 15. alive         |
| 16. lives /       | 17. dying          | 18. upbringing    |
| 19. pregnancy /   | 20. employment     | 21. impatience    |
| 22. suitable      | 23. unnecessary    | 24. irresponsible |
| 25. sensitivity / | ✓ 26. shameful     | 27. independence  |
| 28. harmful       | 29. management     | 30. employment    |
| 31. youth         | 32. childish       | 33. teenage       |
| 34. unkindness    | 35. enjoyably      | 36. luckily       |
| 37. qualified     | 38. unemployment   | 39. competitive   |
| 40. action        | 41. lengthens      | 42. suitable      |
| 43. loosen        | 44. reference      | 45. tall          |
| 46. bravery       | ✓ 47. nervousness  | 48. hot           |
| 49. ability       | ✓ 50. clarity      | 51. bravery       |
| 52. household     | 53. conservation   | 54. addition      |
| 55. childhood     | 56. confident      | 57. unselfish     |
| 58. unpredictable | 59. motherly       | 60. encouragement |
| 61. arrangement   | 62. entertainment  | 63. nonsense      |
| 64. unhopeful     | 65. improbable     | 66. poisonous     |
| 67. proud         | 68. reduction      | 69. skilful       |
| 70. threatened    | 71. depth          | 72. variety       |
| 73. basically     | 74. disability     | 75. unreasonable  |
| 76. comparatively | 77. stubbornness   | 78. miryse        |
| 79. unreliability | 80. preservation   | 81. resignation   |
| 82. worthless     | 83. uncertainty    | 84. intentional   |
| 85. safety        | 86. opposition     | 87. friendship    |
| 88. unemployed    | 89. qualifications | 90. uncompetitive |
| 91. life          | 92. deadly         | 93. childhood     |
| 94. adolescence   | 95. retirement     | 96. sensitive     |
| 97. homeless      | 98. ambitious      | 99. tactless      |
| 100. collector    |                    |                   |



- |                         |                          |                     |
|-------------------------|--------------------------|---------------------|
| 101. photography        | 102. competitors         | 103. lively         |
| 104. adopted            | 105. orphanage           | 106. immigration    |
| 107. robbery            | 108. similarities        | 109. departure      |
| 110. championship.      | 111. failure             | 112. friendship     |
| 113. carelessly.        | 114. strengthen          | 115. plentiful      |
| 116. once               | 117. unreliable          | 118. conclusion     |
| 119. life               | 120. deathly             | 121. unemployed     |
| 122. competition        | 123. employed/unemployed |                     |
| 124. competition        | 125. immigrants          | 126. achievement    |
| 127. companionship      | 128. determination       | 129. dangerously    |
| 130. selective          | 131. naturalist          | 132. domesticated   |
| 133. extermination      | 134. worn                | 135. worthless      |
| 136. straighten         | 137. impure              | 138. organization   |
| 139. shyness            | 140. carelessly          |                     |
| 141. researchers        | 142. behavioural         | 143. specialist     |
| 144. underweight        | 145. similarities        | 146. resignation    |
| 147. unsteadily         | 148. unluckily           | 149. dangerous      |
| 150. illegal            | 151. disorientation      | 152. solution       |
| 153. unfamiliar         | 154. enjoyment           | 155. unreality      |
| 156. disadvantages      | 157. unhealthy           | 158. coeducational  |
| 159. thoughtful         | 160. possibilities       | 161. senseless      |
| 162. changeless         | 163. priceless           | 164. pleasantly     |
| 165. strength           | 166. ashamed             | 167. disappearance  |
| 168. truthful           | 169. sleepy              | 170. carriage       |
| 171. underestimate      | 172. co-author           | 173. over confident |
| 174. mid-sentence       | 175. rebuilt             | 176. underpaid      |
| 177. overworking        | 178. unlock              | 179. encouragement  |
| 180. overeat/overweight |                          | 181. reliable       |
| 182. impatient          | 183. inconvenient        | 184. unreasonable   |
| 185. insufficient       | 186. misunderstood       | 187. misspelt       |
| 188. dislike            | 189. careless            | 190. thoughtful     |
| 191. musical            | 192. childish            | 193. sunny          |
| 194. readable           | 195. geographical        | 196. reddish        |
| 197. unreliable         | 198. unforgettable       | 199. sharpening     |
| 200. inhabitants.       |                          |                     |

## D. CÁC BÀI TẬP KIỂM TRA KĨ NĂNG

### I. CÁC BÀI TẬP KIỂM TRA KĨ NĂNG ĐỌC HIỂU :

**Dạng 1: Đọc một đoạn văn rồi điền từ thích hợp vào ô trống**  
EX1.

The job sounded interesting. With a fashion house <sup>at</sup>(1) the city centre. The telephone conversation I ... (2) had with them were relaxed and friendly, and the letter from the boss had also been a friendly ... (3). He had invited me to visit the office and join some of them for lunch. The appointment was <sup>at</sup>(4) 12 o'clock.

I naturally thought long and hard about ... (5) to wear. In the fashion business, of course, you were expected to be smart. The question was ... (6) to be businesslike, or fashionable. There was something ... (7) to think about, too. I had to get there <sup>by</sup>(8) train and bus. The journey was over two hours, and that affects the clothes you choose.

In the end, I decided <sup>to</sup>(9) wear my most expensive clothes. These were a pair of boots, a pair of fashion jeans which had cost me a week's salary, a hand-made sweater and a coat. I was not (10) <sup>so</sup> satisfied with my appearance, but at <sup>last</sup>(11) everything was new and expensive.

In fact, I realized ... (12) my arrival that I had chosen exactly the wrong clothes. The men in the office ... (13) wearing dark suits and ties. The women wore business suits.

The boss was just ... (14) friendly as his letter had been. We looked ... (15) the offices, chatted about the business, and finally went out for lunch. They had chosen a smart restaurant nearby where the boss was ... (16) well known. The restaurant manager greeted him ... (17) name. Then he caught sight of me. He shook his head apologetically, and smiled. "Sorry", he said, the house rules were quite ... (18). No one in jeans would be admitted. I ... (19) the way out, and we started looking for somewhere ... (20) to eat

## EX 2.

Some friends visiting me from the Caribbean remarked ... (1) the tobacco I was smoking. It seemed that the same tobacco was popular in their country, but I was paying four times ... (2) for it than they were. They offered to send me some when they ... (3) home again. I was very grateful, and promised to pay them for it.

Some weeks ... (4) an official letter arrived in a brown envelop. It was from the customs office, informing me that they had intercepted a package with my name and address ... (5) it. The package was found to ... (6) a letter and some contraband : four packets of tobacco. If I wanted the package, I ... (7) have to pay customs duty, tax and penalty. If they did not hear ... (8) me, they would destroy the package. It was going to turn ... (9) to be rather expensive tobacco, if I paid everything they demanded. On the other ... (10) I had been looking forward to ... (11) from my friends, and wanted to ... (12) the letter, and I could not get the letter ... (13) paying the duty, the tax and ... (14) on. In the ... (15) I sent the money.

A few more weeks passed, and the package finally ... (16) me. It was covered ... (17) official government stamps and seals. I opened it and took out the letter. It said "here's your tobacco . We hope you enjoy it. It's silly paying ... (18) much for it when we can buy it so cheaply here. We'll send you ... (19) for packets next month".

## EX 3.

Beatrice had had a number of jobs, none of them for very long, she had been a bus conductor ... (1) one time, then a postman, and then she ... (2) cleaned the floors in a supermarket. Usually she left the job when she got tired ... (3) it. Sometimes she was sacked.

Then one day she saw an ... (4) for a job as a canal warden. She applied ... (5) the job, just because it sounded interesting ... (6) she had no idea what a canal warden did. Surprisingly, she ... (7) the job, and started work a few days ... (8). As far as she could see,

her duties were to ... (9) an official cap and coat, and walk ... (10) the banks of the canal, enjoying the fresh air.

... (11) days when it rained, she should sit ... (12) a cafe nearby, and watch the canal from here. She ... (13) us it was the best job she had ever had.

It was too good to ... (14), of course. One day, she fell into the canal, and shouted for help. A fellow warden knew that she could not swim ... (15) a shock to her employers. They said her main purpose was rescuing people ... (16) fell into the canal. She said she never knew that. She also said they never asked her ... (17) she could swim. Anyway, she had to start looking for (18)... job. She said that she might still have been a canal warden, if it had not (19)... for falling in the canal that day.

#### EX 4.

Our neighbours are an elderly couple, (1)... have worked hard all (2)... lives. They live simply and quietly, (3)... early and going to bed early everyday. When the annual summer holiday arrives, they (4)... a week with the wife's sister, and (5)... rest of the time repainting and decorating their home. It is the same every year, so (6)... of the paint work in the house is more than 2 years (7)...

Last year, for the first time, their routine changed. For one thing, the wife's sister was (8) ... hospital. For another, they had talked it (9)... and decided that for once they (10)... take a holiday like everyone else.

They chose a caravan camp at the seaside. They (11)... their bags, and traveled there (12)... train. The caravan was dusty, they said, and people in neighbouring caravans played their radios (13) ... most of the night. The next day was cold and wet (14)... they did not mind the rain, they did not mind the wind, which (15)... the caravan shake and rock like a boat.

That night, there was a storm. Two caravans were blown (16) ... the sea. Their own caravan was safe, but (17)... of them had any sleep.

(18)... they packed their bags again, and next morning, they were at the station, waiting for the first train home.

Now, if you ask them about holidays, they will (19)... you : "We don't like holidays. We're not going (20)... holiday again".

## EX 5.

In that part of the world, it was snobbish to own an English car. My contractor there, a successful businessman, had decided to prove his success by getting, not (1)... an English car, a vastly expensive antique Rolls Royce, (2)... also a right-hand drive one. The car had (3) ... to be shipped specially from England. The instructions were in English, with the instruments in miles rather (4)... kilometres, and degrees Fahrenheit (5)... of degrees Centigrade. My friend was immensely proud (6)... it. A real English Rolls Royce, he said, was the (7) ... of fashion. His friends, he said, would be green (8)... envy. The car arrived, and 2 days (9)... we had to make a trip to a town three hours' (10)... away. We set off in the hot morning sun, getting admiring (11)... from people in the street. My friend spoke enthusiastically of his car. It was (12) ... a pleasure to drive, he said, that he (13)... not imagine why everyone (14) ... not buy one. Out (15)... the open road, we went faster. The air was not hot, and my friend tried to switch on the air-conditioning (16)... he could find was a heater. I told him that, in England, heaters were more necessary than air-conditioning. He would not (17)... me. He tried all the other switches, but kept returning to the heater. The outside air, which was already uncomfortably hot and dry, was made (18)... hotter, and was blown into to the car. Again and again, he tried the switches. Again and again a blast of hot air hit us. It was painful to breathe. "I'm sending this car (19)... back to the makers," he gasped : there's (20)... badly wrong with the air-conditioning."



## EX 6.

About 3 years (1)..., in my mid-forties, I had a sudden and severe mental breakdown. There was nothing unusual about the breakdown itself, (2)... about the events in my own life that (3) ... up to it. The (4)... exceptional feature was that I am (5) ... psychologist and should therefore be able to view the events of my illness (6)... two standpoints, subjectively as the patient and (7) ... objectively as the detached professional observer. Until I broke down I (8) ... always regarded (9)... as reasonably well-balanced : (10)... I had sometime worried (11) ... physical illness, (12)... thought that I might be subjected (13)... the torture and humiliation of a severe mental illness had never entered my head (14)... many years I had (15)... out going, efficient, continually active and reasonably cheerful : (16) ... of myself as well-meaning but (17)... possibly some what intensive (18) ... to my own and other's feelings (19)... never occurred to me that one day my existence would disintegrate (20)... the space of a few hours.

## EX 7.

My friend Jonathan, who lives (1)... the road, develops and prints films. (2)... Jonathan most of us take awful pictures. Usually, we fail to aim (3)... the subject so that the subject is not even in the pictures. Sometimes the subject is too far (4)..., sometimes too near. Some photos are spoilt because the sun is (5)... us, when of course, it should always be (6)... us. Some of us take blank pictures (7)... we take the lens cover off (8)... we have taken our shots. We take most of our pictures when we are on holiday and like to catch our friends when they are fooling (9)... It's a pity we don't practise using our cameras (10)... we go on holiday. A good book (11) ... photography would make us better (12)... taking pictures, but most of us are too lazy to bother. I asked Jonathan what was the worst film he had ever seen. He didn't have to think very hard (13)... the question. At once he answered, "Twenty four shots of the photographer's left ear".

## EX 8.

(1)... my grandmother used to say "Don't sign for anything (2)... checking it first." I forgot this good advice when two delivery-men brought my new sideboard yesterday. Delivery was very late (3) ... to the heavy traffic on to road. I saw a delivery-van goes (4)... the house and stop outside a neighbour's (5)... the street. Then I watched it reverse until it stopped right (6)... my house. I went outside to look into the back of the van : there was in place, (9)... the dining-room wall. I had waited so long for it, it was (10) ... a dream. It was only when the men left that I realized I had checked every (11) ... the keys. It had been delivered (12)... keys. It was too late to phone the shop, but I needn't have worried because the next morning, the keys arrived in the post. I unlooked the sideboard and found a note inside which said "Keys will follow (13)... post".

## EX 9

She was a striking woman (1)... about 25, dressed for the races. (2)... her smart dress and fantastic hat made (3)... feathers, she drew admiring glances as she walked down the street. Her hat attracted even more attention when a gust (4)... wind lifted it (5)... her head and caried it into the air. We all stopped to watch as this amazing hat flew (6)... our heads. People came (7)... buildings and into the street. The young woman (8)... the smart dress was as entertained as the rest (9) ... us. Suddenly, the hat rested (10)... a high building and we lost sight of it. the wind lifted it up again. "There it is" cried a man (11)... an umbrella. He jabbed his umbrella at the sky (12) ... Then an amazing thing happened. The hat simply disappeared ! The mystery was solved when someone shouted (13)... a loud voice. There was a tall yellow crane (14)... a high building and the crane driver looked down at the crowd (15)... Lost your hat, miss ? the crane driver cried and we all gasped (16)... surprise when we saw that the hat had been caught by his crane !



## EX 10.

A dentist in Bavaria has been haunted by a voice which swears (1)... him all the time. The voice comes (2)... light sockets, wash basins and the telephone. It is a sharp, deep voice which laughs (3)... the dentist and mocks him. The poor dentist is suffering (4) ... a bad case of news. Recently, the voice was recorded and broadcast, so now everyone in Bavaria is looking (5) ... the ghost, but so far no one has succeeded (6)... finding it. People who don't believe (7) ... ghosts think it is just a practical joke. The voice always shouts (8)... the dentist, but speaks sweetly (9)... his 17-year-old assistant, Claudia. But no one can blame Claudia (10)... the behaviour of the ghost or accuse her (11)... playing tricks (12)... her poor boss. Engineers don't know what to make (13)... it. He's technical genius, one of them said. The ghost has responded (14) ... all this activity by saying, in a thick Bavarian accent "you'll never get hold (15)... me".

## EX 11.

It was Katy's birthday last Thursday. Her husband, Paul bought her a beautiful bouquet with what (1) ... to be an unusual flower as the centre piece. Katy was delighted with the flowers. They (2)... wonderful and (3) ... wonderful, too. Katy (4)... very excited when she saw the beautiful flower in the centre of the bouquet. She bent over to smell it when it (5) ... to punch her in the nose ! Paul was amazed. He (6)... so interested in the flower that he took it to the botanical gardens at Kere to find it out. An expert examined the flower and told him that it was a kind of orchid called a cymbidium. This flower seizes anything that (7)... like an insect so that it will carry its pollen. If you try to smell it, the Cymbidium will try to grab your nose ! So next time you (8)... like sniffing a rare orchid, hold your nose on the (9)... side.

## EX 12.

There was a knock at the door. I opened it and saw a stranger. "Hullo. Fred", he cried" (1)... I come in ? "How do you know my name ?" I asked. We met ten years ago on a ferry-boat and you gave me your card. "You (2)... mistaken", I said. "No, I (3)... not," the stranger said. He produced my card : Fred Ames. I (4)... given it to him ten years ago, but I (5)... remember it !" I (6)... remember you," I said. "We exchanged cards years ago," the stranger said. You said, "You (7)... come and stay with us for as long as you like any time you're in England. "I'm sorry I (8)... waited for so many years before coming to visit you. I've been so busy. I haven't been (9)... to, but here I am at last ! Better late than never ! I've just arrived on the ferry. My wife and children are in the car and we wonder if we (10)... stay with you for a month."

## EX 13.

Many people persuade themselves that they can not understand mechanical things, or that they have no head for figures. There convictions (1)... them feel enclosed and safe, and (2)... course save them a great (3)... of trouble. But the reader who has a head for anything at (4)... is pretty sure to have a head for whatever he really wants to put his mind (5)... His interest, say (6)... mathematics, has usually been killed (7) ... routine teaching, in exactly the (8) ... way that the literary interest of most scientists, and for (9)... matter of most non-scientists, has been killed by the book and the Shakespeare play. Few people would argue that (10)... whose taste (11)... poetry has not survived (12)... examination syllabus are fundamentally insensitive (13) ... Yet they cheerfully write.(14)... the large intellectual pleasures of science (15) ... if they belonged only to the mind (16) ... a special cast. Science is not a special sense. It is as wide as the literal meaning (17)... its name : knowledge. The notion of the specialized mind is (18)... comparison. (19) ... modern as the notion of the specialized man, the scientist, a word which is only (20)... hundred years.

## EX 14

British television is the big success story of post-war years. Little (1) ... than a limited experiment before the war, it blossomed in (2)... years following 1945 (3) ... 1955, commercial television began. Today, 90 percent of the population have television in (4) ... home. In 1960, a committee of inquiry was (5)... up, (6)... the chairmanship of sir Harry Pilkington, to investigate the workings of broadcasting the Pilkington Report, published in 1962, had (7) to say :

Television has been (8)... a mirror of society, but the metaphor, (9)... striking, wholly misses the major issue of the responsibility (10)... the broadcasting authorities. For, if we consider the first aspect of this responsibility, what is the (11)... to reflect ? Is it to reflect the best or the worst (12)... us ? One can not escape the question by saying that it must do both ; one must ask then (13) ... it is to present the best and the worst with complete indifference and (14) ... comment. Television (15)... not, and can not, merely reflect the moral standards of society. It must affect (16) ... either by changing or by reinforcing them. All broadcasting, and television (17)..., must be ready and anxious to experiment, to show (18) ... new and unusual, to give a hearing (19)... dissent. Here, broadcasting must be most willing to make mistakes, for if it does not, it will (20)... no discoveries.

## EX 15.

New technologies, like all technologies, are morally neutral. (1) ... their advent (2) ... the word a better place or (3) ... depends on the uses to which they are (4) ... And that, (5)... turn, depends upon (6)... decisions of many people, especially of politicians, managers, trade (7)... leaders, engineers (8)... scientists. The new technologies, cheap, flexible dependent (9)... knowledge and information as their main input, on (10)... human being from many (11) ... their current constraints, (12)... example constraints of resources and geography (13... the new technologies could also (14)... those with

power to control their fellow citizens even (15) . . . effectively than in the (16)... efficient dictatorships (17) ... the past. The new technological society will (18)... colossal demands on our imagination and ingenuity and on the capacity (19)... our instructions to respond (20)... new challenges.

#### EX 16.

Carter was usually able to catch the 6.35 train from Euston. This brought (1)... to the town where he lived at 7.12. His bicycle waited (2)... him at the station – the ticket collector always looked (3)... it for him. Then he (4)... home, changing his route from day to day. He crossed the canal (5)..., turned (6) ... the church and up the hill to his small, semi-detached house (7)... Queens Road. He had (8)... it on his return to England and although he (9)... have afforded a much bigger house, he had no wish to draw attention to himself (10)... the source of his income. He always arrived home at 7.30, unless he had (11)... Sarah, his wife, to say that he would be (12)... late. There was just time (13) ... say goodnight to his baby son and have a whisky or two before dinner at 8.00. When he (14)... the door of his house he saw that the hall was empty, and there was no sound from the kitchen. He noticed at (15)... that the whisky bottle was not standing ready on the small table in the living-room. The habit of years had (16)... broken and Carter felt anxious. He called, "Sarah !" but there was (17)... reply. He had always, (18)... they turned (19)... England, known that this moment (20)... come, and he tried not to panic.

#### EX 17.

When we visit foreign countries, we see and learn all sorts of things that we can never see or learn at (1)..., though we may read about them in books and (2)..., and see pictures of them at the cinema. The best way to (3)... geography is to travel, and the best way to get to know and (4)... the people in other countries is to meet them in (5)... own homes. Most people on visits to other countries take a (6)... with them and photograph anything (7)...



interests them. Those photographs will remind them (8)... the happy time they had on a visit to a foreign country.

#### EX 18.

July 20 th 1969 was an important day. Two Americans (1)... on the moon. They went (2)... a space-ship. Its name was Apollo. On July 20th the (3) ... landed in the sea of tranquility. The astronauts walked on the (4)... of the moon. They picked up (5)... rocks and put them in the spaceship. Then they (6)... a flag on the ground. On July 21st Apollo II (7)... the moon and returned to (8)...

#### EX 19.

Advice for travellers who may fall ill while abroad ! Most British people go abroad on holiday, to visit their families on short business trips. People are (1)... to find out how to get urgent treatment before leaving the U.K. They have to (2) ... a form which explains what they (3) ... do if they fall ill or (4)... an accident and what arrangements exist in (5) ... country for medical treatment. The regulations are fairly simple but (6)... people do not have this information, they may (7)... not unusual for people to discover that they do not have (8) ... money with them to (9)... the total costs and (10) ... such circumstances an already difficult situation becomes even more complicated.

#### EX 20.

Computers are helpful in many ways : First, they are fast. They can work with information much more quickly than a person. (1)..., computers can work with lots of information at the (2)... time. Third, they can keep (3)... for a long time. They do not forget things the way (4)... do. Also, computers are almost always correct. They are not (5)..., of course, but they usually don't make mistakes. These days, (6)... is important to know something about computers. There are a number of ways to (7)... Some companies have classes at work. Also, most universities offer day and (8) ... courses in

computer science. Another way to learn is (9)... a book. There are many bookes about computers in bookstores and libraries. Or you can learn from a friend. After a few hours of practice you can work with (10)... You may not be an expert, but you can have fun !

#### EX 21.

When I was about 7, a traveling (1)... came to our town and I still remember what a strong (2) ... it made on me. I loved all the characters and had dreamt (3)... running away to join them. I seriously considered all the possibilities : lion tamer, elephant boy, acrobat, trapper artist, but in the (4)... I decided to be a (5) ... I remember (6)... long hours at my mother's dressing table, putting (7)... make up to create a clown's face and then pulling faces in front of the mirror. Unfortunately I (8)... run away to join the circus.

#### EX 22.

Television is one of man's most important (1)... of communication. It brings (2)... and sounds from around the world into millions of homes. A person with a TV set can sit in his house and watch the president (3)... a speech or visit a foreign country (4)... television, viewers can see and learn about people, places and things in far lands. In addition to all those things, TV brings its viewers a steady stream of programs (5)... are designed to entertain. In fact, TV is very useful to our spiritual life (6)... it is a continuous cheap source of (7)... and (8)...

#### EX 23.

One day, and old man (1)... a rude boy stealing apples from one of his trees. The old man asked the boy to come down out of the (2)... immediately. The boy refused (3)... "Won't you ?" asked the old man. Then I'll have to (4)... you down". At that, the old man reached down and pulled up some handful of grass and (5)... those at the boy. The boy only laughed at the old man for thinking that

grass would force him out of the apple tree. "Well, well" said the old man. "If neither (6) ... nor grass will do, I suppose I must try stones". With these words the old man picked up a handful of rocks and started to pelt the boy with (7)... The boy quickly jumped out of the tree and (8)... the man's pardon.

#### EX 24.

Before the development of agriculture, people got all their food (1)... gathering wild plants, hunting and fishing. They had to (2)... for food continually, which left them little time for (3)... activities. But as agriculture developed and farm (4)... increased, fewer people were needed to (5)... food. The nonfarmers could then develop the arts, crafts, trades, and other activities of (6)... Agriculture therefore not only greatly (7)... most of the food supply but also made (8)... possible.

#### EX 25.

My father waved me good-bye and the bus set off. The person sitting (1)... to me was a government engineer going to Peshawar (2)... inspect the road. He said that travelling by bus was (3)... excellent way to test the roads. We passed many villages (4)... the way and stopped once or (5)... buy cold drinks (6)... it was very hot and dusty. The countryside was brown and dry and (7)... were long stretches (8)... people or villages in sight. We (9)... to stop once at some road works, too, (10)... made my travelling companion (11)... happy.

#### EX 26.

For a fortnight each summer, we (1)... to rent the same house by the sea. The house, (2) ... owner worked with my uncle, was on a cliff top overlooking (3)... channel. (4)... it was only a couple of hours drive away (5)... our house, our preparations (6)... have done justice to a pear expedition. Suitcases were (7)... down from the attic and filled with clothes for (8)... kinds of weather.



## EX 27.

London has a very fine old zoo, which many children with their parents and friends visit everyday. The zoo is in a large park which (1)... not very far from the centre of London. (2)... old trees grown in the park, and (3). .. Spring, Summer and Autumn there are a (4)... of flowers there, too. The zoo is open every (5)... from 9a.m to 7p.m. People who want to (6)... there can go by bus or by underground (7)... by taxi. Many kinds of animals(8)... there : elephants, giraffes, seals, lions, and polar bears, brown bears and foxes, big and little monkeys.

## EX 28.

The Captain and the Enemy is a novel (1)... was written by Graham Greene in 1988. It is a story (2) ... a boy, Victor Baxter, (3)... father (4)... he calls the Devil loses him in a game of backgammon to a man (5)... is only known as the Captain. The Captain, (6)... real name is never revealed, appears to be a sort (7)... criminal. (8)... the boy has been taken away from his boarding school, 'he is brought (9)... by a woman called Lisa, (10)... is the Captain's mistress. From time to (11)... the Captain returns (12)... visit them, (13)... for months on end they are alone together. (14)... this time a close relationship develops (15)... them, and Lisa treats Victor as if he was her son. Eventually, the Captain goes to live in Panama, (16)... tells them that they can not join him there (17)... he has made enough money. (18)... he is eighteen, Victor leaves Lisa and gets his own flat, but (19)... her death in a road accident he flies to Panama (20)... meet the Captain.

## EX 29.

Alfred Bernhard Nobel (1833-1896) a Swedish scientist, was the first man to make dynamite. He (1)... his invention to be used in peace. (2)... he saw it being used in war to destroy things, he was (3)... unhappy. On his (4)..., he left all his money to be spent upon a (5)... every year. The Nobel Prize is now one of (6)... greatest

prizes that a person (7)... ever receive. It is given every (8)... for the best work in (9)... of the following subjects : Physics, chemistry, medicine, literature and peace. Some of the world's greatest are asked to (10)... who should be given the prizes.

### EX 30.

Last Tuesday I took my 2 nieces, aged three and five, to town in the car. It began to pour (1)... rain so I decided I would leave the children in the car, (2)... I dashed into a shop. I warned the girls (3)... to touch anything and told them I would be (4)... within a few minutes. Then I locked all the doors and left (5)... happily looking out of the window. I was back at the car in (6)... than 5 minutes but the girls had vanished ! I could hardly (7)... my eyes. The car doors were still locked, the (8)... tightly shut and on the back seat were (9)... two jackets. In a panic I ran (10)... the corner of the street (11)... there was no sign of them. I rushed up to a couple of passers by and (12)... in vain whether they had seen two small girls. Feeling quite sick (13)... fear, I sat (14)... the driver's seat, (15)... to stop trembling. Suddenly, behind me I (16) ... a tapping noise and laughter. I (17)... out of the car, ran round to open the boot and there inside (18)... two very red-faced and excited children. They had apparently pulled out the back seat, crawled behind (19)... and then been unable to push the seat forward again. I (20)... wept with relief !

### EX 31.

He was born in a very poor part of London. His father (1)... a comedian and his mother worked (2)... a dancer and singer. (3)... of them was very successful, however, and the family had very (4)... money, at one time they were (5)... poor that he and his brothers had only one pair of shoes (6)... them and they had to take turns wearing them. The first time he himself earned money (7)... dancing and singing, he was only 5 years old. He did many kinds of jobs, but what he loved (8)... was working in the theatre.

(9)... he was about 15 he joined a travelling theatre company and went on trips to American. On (10), such tours he was offered a part in a film, so he went to Hollywood, (11)... he eventually became both an actor and a film director. He was known to be perfectionist, and sometimes (12)... the other actors repeat a scene many times (13)... he was finally satisfied with it.

Many people found (14)... difficult and some accused him (15)... mean, but it was really his early experiences of poverty (16)... made him careful with his (17)... He died in Switzerland in 1977, (18)... the age of 88. (19)... is now a status of him in Leicester Square, London, the city of his (20)... and early upbringing. His name was Charlie Chaplin.

## EX 32

In 1960, Laura Ashley, a housewife with young children, began designing and selling clothes. After some early success, (1)... husband, Bernard, (2)... experienced businessman, joined her (3)... was able to provide considerable help and advice. The business expanded rapidly. Laura (4)... started working (5)... home, (6)... soon there were several, Laura Ashley shops where women could buy pretty, traditional clothes in a country style, (7)... of natural materials, (8)... the 1980s the company had developed (9)... a multimillion pound international organization with branches in places as (10)... apart as London, Brussels, San Francisco and Tokyo.

## EX 33.

Laura Ashley was a woman (1)... simple tastes and strong moral beliefs. She was born in Wales and one of her largest factories producing clothes (2)... situated in the countryside there. Her employees were encouraged to have healthy lives, enjoy the fresh air and good diet. Many of the Ashley's family was involved (3)... the business, but in 1985 (4)... was decided that the public (5)... be given the opportunity to invest money in the company. Obviously

this was (6)... major development and a clear sign of commercial success. But the woman (7)... ideas had been the basis of the company's development did not live to see it. She (8)... down in stairs (9)... staying at a friend's house and died in hospital a few days (10)... . She was only sixty-one.

#### EX 34.

Now it has been known for many years that wireless waves travel at very great (1)..... It takes them less than four seconds to go from the earth to the moon and back. But the difficult thing is to (2)..... the time they take to go to a certain distance. Radar was made possible by the use of a thing called "cathode - ray tube" which can measure millions of a second. With this tube, we can "see" things at a great (3)..... and it shows us how far (4)..... they are, in which (5)..... they like, and what movements they are (6)..... On the radar screen we can "see" all around us. The captain of a ship can find his way between rocks and other ships, and the soldiers (7)..... a town can see enemy aeroplanes (8)..... hundreds of miles different directions at once.

#### EX 35.

Charles Dickens, a social novelist, was (1)..... at Portsmouth. His father a poor government servant, was arrested and imprisoned (2)..... debt. Therefore he had to earn his (3)..... at eleven in a factory. Dickens had a very little (4)....., most of his education was acquired from the (5)..... he read and the experiences he lived. Later he taught (6)..... shorthand and became a newspaper reporter. Then he continued until his (7)....., almost 20 volumes. But his most popular (8)..... are "THE PICKWICK PAPER" and "DAVID COPPERFIELD" an autobiographical novel with various scenes of his early life.

## EX 36.

Few people who have never had the (1)..... can imagine what it is (2)..... to ride a fit horse when horses are running. The nearest thing in my (3)..... experience is a fast but inexpert downhill run on skis (4)..... hidden rocks and half-buried tree-stumps, never (5)..... when the next cham is going to open before your eyes, when the next bump in the racing hillside is (6)..... to pitch you out of your skis and into a long and painful (7)..... in a hospital bed. Only with this difference, that the hidden bumps and stumps are hedges which seem to (8)..... up and tower over the horse's head, ditches which seem wide and deep (9)..... to swallow both horse and rider, rails (10)..... will break a horse's legs beneath you. And with this difference, ( 11)....., that the skis have come (12)..... and turned into a wildly unpredictable, (13)..... uncontrollable animal, powerful enough to kill both (14)..... and you in a flash and yet absolutely dependent (15)..... your skill and nerve to guide it. It is to me the (16)..... utterly terrifying and (17)..... also the most totally exhilarating experience in the world. I know this (18)..... I have hunted, more often crowding through a gate (19)..... flying over hedges with the leader, but with just enough courage, every (20)..... and then, to get a taste of that fearful pleasure.

## EX 37.

Private enterprise is (1)..... thing. We went to a party on the river ( 2)..... this summer. The host, (3)..... is old enough to know better, served a punch made (4)..... his home-made wine. As I was driving, I was ( 5)..... to decline, but my wife (6)..... took a glass and subsequently fell upstairs. The wound (7)..... weekly dressing by the district nurse, a talkative (8)..... who enjoyed the social (9)..... of her work. She stayed for most of the afternoon, admiring things and (10)..... about village life. About the (11).....



time I call in the regional crime officer, to (12)..... me on how to make the house reasonably secure against the child criminals who commit most of the (13)..... in this parts. He, (14)....., was companionable soul and made an afternoon of it. And why is it that when I write to a public utility (15)..... as the gas board I get a printed card to tell me they received my ( 16)..... and will shortly act on it ? The money spent (17)..... printing, typing, filling in and stamping these cards (18)..... add up to a very large sum (19)....., when spread over all these industries. No commercial house sends such acknowledgement. Money, (20)..... it reaches a public service, lose the value that was stamped on it by the trouble to get it.

### EX 38.

Fill in each of numbered blanks in the following passage with one suitable word.

A year in China (1) .....you, among other thing, a (2)..... respect to the elements. I don't suppose that (3)..... climate here is (4)..... worse than that (5)..... New York. The big (6) .....is that, unlike New York, the people of Beijing don't live in comfortably heated and air-conditioned buildings. The other day, hailstones the (7) .....of hens' eggs smashed my window and a neighbour's car windscreen. Huge electric (8)..... rip the sky in summer. In spring, blinding clouds of dust blow in (9)..... the Gobi desert and winds (10)..... the topsoil from the bare earth.

A year in China teaches you other things, too, and not least how wrong most of your (11).....were. The Chinese, it is well-known, are rather short, drink tea with their meals and do not (12)..... their emotion. The Chinese, in my observation, answer to none of those descriptions. I (13)..... that Chinese people below the age of, say, 25 are taller (14)..... their counterparts in London not as heavy, almost certainly, but taller.

I have never seen (15)..... from North China drink tea with a meal, though they do in Hong Kong.

As for their emotion, it's true that you don't get much out of officials. But to (16)..... on an argument between, say, two cyclists who have (17)....., or between a housewife (18) .....thinks she has (19)..... cheated and a market-trader, is to lose at once the illusion that the Chinese are somehow an impassive people with their emotions under (20)..... control.

### EX 39.

Are some people born clever, and others (1.)..... stupid ? Or is intelligence developed by environment or ( 2)..... experiences ? (3)..... enough the answer is that ( 4)..... is given at birth, and no amount ( 5)..... special education can make a genius out of a ( 6)..... born with low intelligence. On the other (7)....., a child who lives in a boring ( 8)..... will develop his intelligence less than the (9)..... who lives in rich and varied surroundings. Thus (10)..... limits of a person's intelligence are fixed at birth, but (11)..... or not he reaches those limits will depend (12)..... his environment. . This view now held by most experts, can ( 13)..... supported in a number of ways.

It is easy to show that intelligence is something we are (14)..... with. If we take two unrelated people ( 15)..... random in the population, it is likely that (16)..... degrees of intelligence will be completely ( 17)..... If on the other hand, we take ( 18)..... indential twins, they will very likely be as (19)..... as each other. This clearly suggests that intelligence (20)..... on birth.

### EX 40.

Jenny Lee, British ex-member of Parliament, describes an experience she had at university. Most of our lectures at the



university were dreary and boring. The lecturer would enter the room and begin to dictate and the students would write down everything that was said. Only once during the four years I attended classes where an attempt was made to break away from the mechanical routine.

I was then in my fourth (1)..... and had enrolled for a post - graduate (2)..... in education. The class was intended (3)..... for those of us who expected (4)..... see the new Chairman of the Education (5).....(6)....was going to give his introductory (7)..... We walked in to the room, took (8)..... our pens and note - books and sat (9)..... as usually to an hour's industrious (10)..... Straight away the professor told us to (11)..... away our note books and pens, (12)..... would not be needed. He did (13)..... intend reading aloud to us at dictation pace. It really was not necessary. (14)..... material was available in book form. This said, smiling in the friendliest way, he (15)..... for a moment. The poor man (16)..... have expected some sign of (17)..... Instead there was mutiny in the (18)..... Not noisy munity. Just sullen, anxious (19)..... No notes ? What did that mean ? (20)..... then could we memorize for examination (21)..... ? His next announcement was worse. We (22)..... to form ourselves into groups, each (23)..... doing a special piece of reading (24)..... research and, later in the term, (25)..... to the general class. That was (26)..... much. That was taking the group from (27)..... our feet altogether. That made the (28)..... of possible questions when examination time (29)..... too dangerously varied and unpredictable. A (30)..... of us were flattered by the (31)..... professor's expectations and disgusted with the (32)..... of most of the students who (33)..... afraid when a university class threatened (34)..... become anything more serious than memorizing set piece of dictation. For

once I (35)..... myself on the side of authority (36)..... of course, I had to choose (37)..... occasion when authority was hopelessly outnumbered (38)..... rebels won. The proposed scheme of work was modified to give a much (39)..... proportion of formal lecturing than had (40)..... originally intended. As far as I (41)..... discover the explanation of this was (42)..... fear- Economic fear. Most of us (43)..... poor students. We could not afford (44)..... take risks. We wanted the old familiar system that enabled us to graduate successfully (45)..... the shortest possible time.

#### EX 41.

In my childhood, the whole family would sometimes go on a diet (1) ..... that we were all oversized, far from (2)....In fact, one of my brothers was and (3) ..... is one of the thinnest people I have (4) ..... known. The (5) ..... for all this dieting was partly my father's health and (6) ..... my mother's strange ideas. My father had heart trouble (7) ..... quite sometimes and the doctor advised him to cut (8) ..... on fats and smoking. My mother (9) ..... this as a sign that all of us should restrain (10) ..... from overeating and immediately cut our food portions in half.

#### EX 42.

The Post Office in Britain is famous for getting letters and parcels to their destinations. The problem is that we the public (1) ..... observe the rules. For example, we must put a (2) ..... on a letter. If we don't, the (3) ..... must pay double. We often see the sign "All letters must be correctly addressed". These days, this means having to use postcode. If you didn't use a (4) ....., it's no good complaining about your lost package (5) ..... Aunt Shophie is going to send you a jar of your favourite Jam, she (6) ..... wrap it up well. The most important thing we (7) ....., to do is to address our letters and parcels legibly and (8) ..... This means clear hand writing and correct spelling. (9) ..... we have to do and what we actually do are often miles apart.

EX 43.

A Yeti is supposed to be a strange creature that lives in the Himalayas. Nearly (1) ..... has heard of Yetis, but (2) ..... has actually seen one. Recently, a party of climbers went up Mount Jaonhi looking for Yetis. Unlike more famous mountains, Jaonhi has (3) ..... been climbed. The party saw (4) ..... Yetis (5) ..... There was a woman's excitement one night when a climber heard a strange, two-note sound. He rushed out of his tent and asked his Tbatan guide, Chewang Thundup, if he had heard (6) ..... "No, I heard (7) ..... the guide replied. "But I just heard a strange sound," the climber said. "That was not Yeti, Chewang laughed. "It was me, blowing my nose..."

EX 44.

What we believe depends on our view of the world. For example, If we ask, "(1) ..... was America discovered ?" Most of us would think of Christopher Columbus in 1492. But Chinese children learn that Huisher, a Buddhist monk, got to America 1000 years earlier than Columbus (2) ..... was printing invented by and (3) ..... year was it invented ? You immediately think of Gutenberg in 1436, but Chinese children learn that it was invented by Bishen in 1041. (4) ..... invention is spaghetti ? It's the invention of the Italians, you will say. Wrong again. The Chinese had it before them. (5) ..... and (6) ..... was the compass invented ? Answer : in China in 200 B.C (7) ..... was silk-making invented ? Not in Persia, as you might think, but in China. (8) ..... was the first country to put a man into space and (9) ..... was he ? The Soviet Union, you will say and the man's name was Yuri Gagarin. But according to the Chinese, Wan Hu made an attempt long before Yuri.

(10) ..... do you think ? In A.D 1500 ! He sat in a chair attached to 7 rockets, holding a grand kite which would help him return to earth. He came back.

EX 45.

Lord Byron had an unhappy early (1) ..... He was singularly unfortunate in both (2) ..... His father was of an ancient and aristocratic family. (3) ..... lived a so wild and reckless life that his comrades called him "MadJack". His (4) ..... was a woman of most passionate extremes. His father married her (5) ..... her money and (6) ..... her as soon as he had spent it. (7) ..... 13, He was sent to school at Harrow. At 17, he went (8) ..... Cambridge. Here he had more attention (9) ..... shooting, boxing and riding than (10) ..... his studies.

EX 46.

Charles Dickens (1) ..... a social novelist. He was (2) ..... at Portsmouth, from a lower middle class family. His father, (3) ..... poor government servant, was arrested and imprisoned for debt. So that (4) ..... had to earn his (5) ..... at 11 in a factory. He (6) ..... very little schooling, most (7) ..... his education was acquired from the books he (8) ..... and the experiences he (9) ..... Later, he taught (10) ..... short hand and became a newspaper reporter.

EX 47.

Thackeray (1) ..... born in India. At 6 years of (2) ....., after his father's death, he was sent (3) ..... England. He was educated there : (4) ..... at Chickwick, (5) ..... at Chater house and (6) ..... at Cambridge. But he left school without degree. He (7) ..... abroad, studying art in Paris and finally took up writing as a (9) ..... He (10) ..... his literary career as a journalist, writing stories, reviews and art criticism.

EX 48.

O'scar Wilde was born in Dublin. His father (1) ..... a famous Irish surgeon. His (2) ..... was a graceful writer of verse and

prose. He was (3) ..... at Trinity College. He joined the Aesthetic Movement (4) ..... protest against the bourgeois hypocrisy and bigotry and became (5) ..... leader. Later, he toured America to (6) ..... lectures on English Aesthetic Movement. In 1884, he (7) ..... married, had 2 sons. (8) ..... 1895, he was (9) ..... to 2 years imprisonment (10) ..... misconduct.

#### EX 49.

Kipling was the first writer (1) ..... expressed the faith and national pride. He was (2) ..... in Bombay India (3) ..... 1865 and was taken (4) ..... England to (5) ..... educated at the (6) ..... of 6. But at the age of 17 he returned (7) ..... India and became a journalist. (8) ..... this time he (9) ..... a great amount of prose and poetry. Afterwards he returned to England and travelled in Japan and America... He received the 1907 Nobel (10) ..... for literature and died in 1936 while he was working on his autobiographical notes.

#### EX 50.

George Bernard Shaw was (1) ..... into a middle class family. His mother was a talented singer and teacher of music, helping him much in his public speaking later. (2) ..... 10 he entered school and educated (3) ..... by reading and learning foreign languages. At 15, he (4) ..... to work (5) ..... a clerk and came (6) ..... contact with common people and (7) ..... poverty. He took great (8) ..... in social movements and politics, called (9) ..... an Irish proletarian and (10) ..... the first socialist organization.

#### EX 51.

John Galsworthy was a novelist, a dramatist, a short story (1) ..... and essayist (2) ..... . He gave the (3) ..... the most complete and critical picture of English bourgeois society (4) ..... the beginning (5) ..... 20th century. J.G. was the son of a rich



lawyer. He was (6) ..... at Combe, Surey. He went to Hanrow and studied law at Oxford. At the early (7) ....., he was intimate with upper classes, so that (8) ..... his books are the (9) ..... of the upper bourgeois. J.G. was destinate to (10) ..... a lawyer as his father used to want him to.

EX 52.

### **A lesson in politeness**

One morning, a London boy (1) ..... sitting in the bus on his way to school. He was sniffing (2) ..... the time and making (3) ..... a noise with his nose that the other people in the bus began (4) ..... shake their heads. At last an old man (5) ..... was sitting next to him said : "Little boy, (6) ..... you got a handkerchief ?"

"Yes, I've got a clear (7) ..... in my pocket" said the boy, "But I can't let (8) ..... have it. Mother says it's not polite to ask anybody (9) ..... a handkerchief. You must have and use (10) ..... own".

EX 53.

### **It was just right**

A rich lady had an old cake (1) ..... the house. She didn't want (2) ..... eat it herself, but she didn't want (3) ..... throw away, either. So she called a poor boy who lived next door, and gave the cake (4) ..... him. The boy ate (5) ..... and said

"Thank you (6) ..... the cake, Lady. It was just right".

"What do you mean "just right" ?, the Lady (7) ..... suspiciously "I mean "said the boy" that (8) ..... it had been better you would never have (9) ..... it to me, and if it had been worse, I could (10) ..... never eaten it. So, it was just right".

EX 54.

### **A stolen watch**

After a dinner given (1) ..... the Prime Minister of a little South American Republic, a distinguished diplomat complained (2) ..... his host that the minister of justice, who had (3) ..... sitting on his left, had stolen (4) ..... watch. "Ah" he shouldn't (5) ..... done that "said the Prime Minister." I will get (6) ..... back for you". Sure enough, toward (7) ..... end of the evening the watch (8) ..... returned to its owner.

"And what (9) ..... he say ?" asked the diplomat.

"Hush !" said the host, glancing anxiously at him. "He doesn't know that I have got it (10) ....."

EX 55.

### **The poet and the Lady**

A famous poet came (1) ..... a visit to a Lady who always said that she was fond (2) ..... literature and especially of poetry. When they (3) ..... down to tea, the poet wondered whether she (4) ..... received the little book of poems he had sent her. With (5) ..... charming smile the lady said the poems (6) ..... splendid and she would (7) ..... to read some from the book but she could not remember (8) ..... she had put it. Her little son (9) ..... ready with the answer : "Under the leg of the table, Mama, to make (10) ..... steady".

EX 56.

### **I am her mother**

Two elderly Englishmen were talking (1) ..... young people in day. One of them said : "Young (2) ..... now are so different from (3) ..... we were 30 years ago. Look at that young person (4) ..... short hair, smoking a cigarette and wearing jeans. What (5) ..... it, a boy or a girl ? it's impossible (6) ..... say. "It's a girl" (7) ..... a middle-aged person sitting near them (8) ..... a



bench. "I'm sorry, Sir" said the first English man "suppose you (9) ..... her father".

EX 57.

### **They both made a mistake**

2 men were staying (1) ..... a hotel in the same room. One of (2) ..... could not find his purse and said that his neighbour had taken it. After (3) ..... time, the man found the purse (4) ..... his pocket and apologized to his neighbour. The other man said : "You thought (5) ..... was a thief, and I thought (6) ..... were a gentlemen, and (7) ..... both made a mistake".

EX 58.

When I (1) ..... a child I used (2) ..... go to see my grandmother. I thought her house was (3) ..... beautiful as a palace and the garden seemed bigger than a park. (4) ..... I grew (5) ..... the house and (6) ..... seemed smaller but I still loved visiting the old lady. There were so many beautiful things in the house. Sometimes, I played (7) ..... the doll's house which was older than Grandmother herself. At (8) ..... times, I looked (9) ..... books (10) ..... were more interesting than my children's books at home.

EX 59.

(1) ..... is a famous zoo in England at a place called Whipsnade. Here the (2) ..... have much more room, and though they can't escape they can move about a lot. It is much (3) ..... comfortable for them than being in small (4) ..... Then enjoy being in the (5) ..... . The birds can fly about among (6) ..... trees, and get some of their food (7) ..... In a place like this we can see what animals and birds really do, and (8) ..... they like.

# EX 60.

(1) *After* half an hour we arrived at my friend's house (2) ..... we saw a row of lights (3) ..... came from the windows, and (4) ..... we were suddenly at the door, (5) ..... about half a dozen children of all (6) ..... shouting and asking questions all together. As we were getting out of the carriage, a fine old lady with white hair came out, (7) ..... I recognized without difficulty (8) ..... my friend's mother.

# EX 61.

The little train stopped (1) ..... our station and we got (2) ....., very glad to be so near home at last. The first part (3) ..... the journey (4) ..... London had been quite comfortable, but when we had changed (5) ..... the little train, we were already tired and dirty, and the slow runs, with its frequent stops at unimportant villages had only made us more tired and dirty. There was a carriage waiting for us at the station, pulled (6) ..... two black horses. As soon as we and our luggage were (7) ....., the driver waved his whip and we set (8) ..... through the scenery forest.

# EX 62.

Many (1) ..... believe that life on a (2) ..... is very quiet and easy, but it is very (3) *hard*. I myself have (4) *lived* on a farm for nearly 20 years and I know what farm work (5) *is*. You must get up early, feed the chickens and cows, water the flowers, do a lot of (6) *work* and (7) *you* work in the fields. But my aunt likes this way of life. So do all her (8) *family*.

# EX 63.

Many people (1) *like* to live in big cities, but (2) *some* prefer to live in the (3) *country*. My aunt has a small (4) *house* near my home city. She bought it (5) *about* ten years ago. At the side of the farm house there is a (6) ..... garden. In it apple-trees are

(7) ..... The vegetable garden is at the back of the house. My aunt grow all (8) ..... of vegetables, but she is especially fond of potatoes and tomatoes.

#### EX 64.

Jack London was (1) ..... in San Francisco, California, in 1876. He took a high place in American literature at the (2) ..... of the twentieth (3) ..... At that time, the library shelves and bookshops of America were already (4) ..... of books by famous (5) ..... But Jack London's stories were new (6) ....., his were not like the ones in the books of (7) ..... writers, and the (8) ..... he painted were not the same as their pictures.

#### EX 65.

The men in Jack London's books live a (1) ..... life, a life (2) ..... of danger. In his stories, Jack London shows us that in the terrible world a man must fall and die in the snow if he makes even the smallest (3) ..... But his (4) ..... are afraid of nothing and nothing can (5) ..... them. People in books by Jack London never (6) ..... hope, they never stop fighting for live (7) ..... when the end of life seems very near. That is the lesson for us to (8) ..... in everything we want and everything we do, if we do not lose hope, we must and will win.

#### EX 66.

Gulliver was always very quick (1) ..... learning languages, and before long he was (2) ..... to understand (3) ..... the little people said and to talk to them (4) ..... they were rather frightened of him, they brought him plenty to eat and when he had (5) ..... to be careful not to step on them and not to put them in his pockets, they took the chain (6) ..... his leg.

(7) ..... his great strength he was able to help the little men in many ways, for example, in building. He could lift great stones which seemed to (8) ..... very heavy. And they wanted him to

measure their island for them by walking round it and counting the steps he took.

#### EX 67.

(1)..... The Richardson family came up to London, they spent everyday in seeing as much as (2) ..... Mrs Richardson was (3) ..... interested in the shops, especially in Oxford street and Kensington and bought all (4) ..... of things that she couldn't find in the (5) ..... in the north. The two children had never been in London (6) ....., and were astonished at the crowds everywhere. They enjoyed (7) ..... on the Tube railways and going down the moving stairs which led to the platforms. They found that they had to be quick and get on the train or it would go off (8) ..... then.

#### EX 68.

Railway-trains run on special (1) ....., but motor-cars, which often travel (2) ..... than a train, use the roads which we all have to walk on or cross. That is the great danger for all of us. It is (3) ..... for everybody - the drivers of cars and people on (4) ..... to be as careful as possible to avoid accidents. It is too late to be (5) ..... for our fault when somebody is dead or injured. Many of those, young and old, who die on the roads lose their lives (6) ..... they themselves or other people have been careless. The number of deaths might be much (7) ..... if we all took care, and especially if we taught little children how to keep (8) ..... of danger.

#### EX 69.

India is the (1) ..... of tigers, and every year large numbers of people are killed by these animals. (2) ..... tiger, however, does not usually form the habit of killing and eating human beings. It prefers wild (3) ..... that it finds in the forests. But sometimes, when a tiger has become old and lost some of its teeth, (4) .....

when it has been injured in someways, it is no longer strong or quick (5)..... to kill human beings, and when (6)..... has once tasted (7)..... flesh it goes on killing men, women and children for (8).....

#### EX 70.

Isambard Kingdom Brunel was a famous nineteenth-century engineer. He (1) ..... born in 1806 in Portsmouth, a seaport in the South of England. In 1823, after studying (2) ..... two years in Paris, he started (3) ..... for his father, (4) ..... was an engineer and an inventor. He had been born near Rouen in France but in 1792 had left France for the USA and had later settled in England. Both father and son were responsible for the design (5) ..... construction of the first tunnel under the River Thames. The digging of this tunnel was (6) ..... in 1825 and completed twenty years later. Today, it (7) ..... part of the London Underground system. Isambard Kingdom Brunel went (8) ..... to design the Great Britain (1845). (9).... was the first large ship to be built (10)..... iron instead of wood.

#### EX 71.

The Army may not be the fit thing you think about when you're considering your son's or daughter's future. But it's something you and many other parents should seriously consider.

Because if you (1) ..... the world's changed a lot since you were 18, (2) ..... should see the Army. Today's Army is a modern (3) ..... A technical Army. And it needs many sophisticated, technical skills. So we (4) ..... young people these skills. And pay them (5) ..... they learn. The Army can (6) ..... pay for one. We'll pay up to 75% (7) ..... of the tuition (8) ..... approved courses soldiers take (9) ..... off-duty hours. And now there are new veterans educational benefits that can help (10) ..... son or daughter accumulate (11)..... much as £14,100 for college in four years.



EX 72.

Nothing helps a young (1) ..... view of the world better than seeing some of (2) ..... In the army, your son or daughter might get to (3) ..... Europe, Alaska, Hawaii, Korea, Danama, or almost (4) ..... in the continental United States. Starting (5) ..... has never been high , 448.80 a (6)..... before deductions. There are enlistment bonuses available up to \$3,000. (7) ..... earn 30 days, vacation a year. And, of course, (8) ..... room, board, medical and dental care. There's no military hardware to replace (9) ..... human heart, no computer to out - think the mind. (10) ..... need people. We are people. We want your son or daughter to share the pride that comes from serving our country.

EX 73.

There is (1) ..... really new about cheating in exams. Perhaps that was why Mrs. O'Neill didn't even (2) ..... anything about it. (3) ..... only asked the 12 boys to remain after class. They (4) ..... with fear in their hearts, for they knew why Mrs. O'Neill wanted to see them. They were (5) ..... but only in part. Mrs. O'Neill asked no (6) ..... She said nothing. She gave out no punishment. (7) ..... she was alone with the (8) ..... pupils, Mrs. O'Neill wrote on the blackboard the above twenty (9) ..... words, together with the name of the great man who composed (10) ..... She then ordered them to (11) ..... their words into their copy-books one hundred times.

EX 74.

Great Britain is an Island that lies of the North-West coast of Europe. The nearest country is France (1) ..... is 20 miles away and from which Britain is separated by the English (2) ..... The Island is surrounded by the Atlantic Ocean, to the West, and the North Sea, (3) ..... the east. It comprises the

main lands of England, Wales is in the west. Ireland which is also an (4) *island* lies of the coast of Great Britain. It consists (5) *of* Northern Ireland and the Irish Republic. Great Britain together (6) *with* Northern Ireland constitutes the United Kingdom. There, the United Kingdom is composed of four countries. The (7) *largest* of these is England which is divided into 43 administrative counties. The (8) *largest* city is London which is situated in South-East England.

#### EX 75.

The United States of America of the U.S.A is a large country. Its (1) *area* is only a little smaller than the area of Europe. (2) *In* to population, it is the fourth largest country in the (3) *world*. About 216 million people live there. Once the U.S.A (4) *was* an English colony. In the war of Independence (1776 - 1783) she freed (5) *herself* from British sovereignty and became (6) *independent*. At that time (7) *it* consisted of 30 States, which stretched from the Atlantic Coast (8) *to* the Mississippi. For two and a half centuries the (9) *U.S.A.* extended her territory to the Pacific (10) *across*.

#### EX 76.

Although I have a car, I prefer to travel by train, especially if I have to make a long journey. As the train travels at speed through the (1) *country* I can relax, drink a coffee, read a (2) *book* or just look out of the window, sometimes (3) *the* movement of the train keeps me asleep, something (4) *I* couldn't do while driving a car. The trouble (5) *is* that I have to wait in cold station, and (6) *I* get angry when I have to waste time (7) *waiting* for a taxi a bus at the (8) *beginning* or end of my journey.

#### EX 77.

Watching T.V and going for walks (1) *are* the most popular leisure activities in Britain. but although longer holidays and



shorter (2) ..... hours have given people more free (3) .....  
 women generally have less free time (4) ..... men, because they  
 spend time (5) ..... domestic work, shopping, and child care.

((6) ..... survey showed that men were more (7) ..... to read  
 newspapers than women, while (8) ..... slightly higher proportion  
 of adults read (9) ..... newspapers than read daily morning  
 national (10).....

## KEY

### EX1.

- |            |            |           |                   |                    |
|------------|------------|-----------|-------------------|--------------------|
| 1. in/near | 5. What    | 9. to     | 13. were          | 17. by             |
| 2. had     | 6. whether | 10. very  | 14. as            | 18. clear/definite |
| 3. one     | 7. else    | 11. least | 15. at/round/over | 19. led            |
| 4. at/for  | 8. by      | 12. on    | 16. very/quite    | 20. else/different |

### EX2

- |                           |               |              |             |
|---------------------------|---------------|--------------|-------------|
| 1. on/about               | 6. contain/be | 11. hearing  | 16. more    |
| 2. more                   | 7. would      | 12. see/read | 17. reached |
| 3. got/arrived<br>//reach | 8. from       | 13. without  | 18. with/in |
| 4. Later                  | 9. out        | 14. so       | 19. so      |
| 5. on                     | 10. hand      | 15. end      | 20. another |

### EX3.

- |                              |                 |          |                |
|------------------------------|-----------------|----------|----------------|
| 1. at                        | 6. although/but | 11. on   | 16. was        |
| 2. had                       | 7. got          | 12. in   | 17. who        |
| 3. of                        | 8. later/after  | 13. told | 18. Whether/if |
| 4. advertisement<br>//advert | 9. wear         | 14. last | 19. another    |
| 5. for                       | 10. along       | 15. to   | 20. been       |

## EX4.

- |                 |                  |              |                 |
|-----------------|------------------|--------------|-----------------|
| 1. Who          | 6. none          | 11. packed   | 16. into        |
| 2. their        | 7. old           | 12. by       | 17. neither     |
| 3. getting - up | 8. in            | 13. loudly   | 18. so          |
| 4. spend        | 9. over          | 14. although | 19. tell/answer |
| 5. the          | 10. would/should | 15. made     | 20. on          |

## EX5.

- |              |                |                   |               |
|--------------|----------------|-------------------|---------------|
| 1. Just/only | 6. of          | 11. glances/looks | 16. all       |
| 2. but       | 7. height      | 12. such          | 17. believe   |
| 3. had       | 8. with        | 13. could         | 18. even      |
| 4. than      | 9. later/after | 14. did           | 19. straight  |
| 5. instead   | 10. drive      | 15. on            | 20. something |

## EX6.

- |         |              |           |             |
|---------|--------------|-----------|-------------|
| 1. ago  | 6. from      | 11. about | 16. thought |
| 2. or   | 7. more      | 12. the   | 17. but     |
| 3. led  | 8. was       | 13. to    | 18. both    |
| 4. Most | 9. myself    | 14. for   | 19. it      |
| 5. a    | 10. although | 15. been  | 20. within  |

## EX7.

- |                 |            |                |
|-----------------|------------|----------------|
| 1. across       | 6. behind  | 11. on (about) |
| 2. according to | 7. because | 12. at         |
| 3. at           | 8. after   | 13. about      |
| 4. away         | 9. about   |                |
| 5. in front of  | 10. before |                |

## EX8.

- |            |              |             |        |
|------------|--------------|-------------|--------|
| 1. as      | 5. down/up   | 9. by       | 13. by |
| 2. without | 6. beside/by | 10. like    |        |
| 3. due     | 7. among     | 11. except  |        |
| 4. past/by | 8. between   | 12. without |        |

## EX9.

- |              |               |               |               |
|--------------|---------------|---------------|---------------|
| 1. of        | 5. off        | 9. of         | 13. in        |
| 2. in        | 6. over/above | 10. on top of | 14. on top of |
| 3. of/out of | 7. out of     | 11. with      | 15. below     |
| 4. of        | 8. in         | 12. above     | 16. in/with   |

## EX10.

- |                |         |        |
|----------------|---------|--------|
| 1. at          | 6. in   | 11. of |
| 2. out of/from | 7. in   | 12. on |
| 3. at          | 8. at   | 13. of |
| 4. from        | 9. to   | 14. to |
| 5. for         | 10. for | 15. of |

## EX11.

- |                    |                    |                |
|--------------------|--------------------|----------------|
| 1. seemed/appeared | 4. got/became      | 7. seems/looks |
| 2. looked          | 5. seemed/appeared | 8. feel        |
| 3. smelt           | 6. became/got      | 9. safe        |

## EX12.

- |            |              |             |             |
|------------|--------------|-------------|-------------|
| 1. May/can | 4. must have | 7. must/can | 10. can/may |
| 2. Must be | 5. couldn't  | 8. have     |             |
| 3. am      | 6. can't     | 9. able to  |             |

## EX13.

- |         |           |              |        |
|---------|-----------|--------------|--------|
| 1. Make | 6. in     | 11. for      | 16. of |
| 2. of   | 7. by     | 12. an       | 17. of |
| 3. deal | 8. same   | 13. poetry   | 18. in |
| 4. all  | 9. that   | 14. of/about | 19. as |
| 5. to   | 10. those | 15. as       | 20. a  |

## EX14.

- |          |            |             |                |
|----------|------------|-------------|----------------|
| 1. more  | 6. under   | 11. mirror  | 16. them       |
| 2. the   | 7. this    | 12. on      | 17. especially |
| 3. in    | 8. called  | 13. whether | 18. the        |
| 4. their | 9. however | 14. without | 19. to         |
| 5. set   | 10. off    | 15. must    | 20. make       |

## EX15.

- |            |              |            |          |
|------------|--------------|------------|----------|
| 1. whether | 6. the       | 11. of     | 16. most |
| 2. makes   | 7. union     | 12. for    | 17. of   |
| 3. not     | 8. and       | 13. but    | 18. make |
| 4. put     | 9. on        | 14. enable | 19. of   |
| 5. in      | 10. liberate | 15. more   | 20. to   |

## EX16.

- |          |            |            |           |
|----------|------------|------------|-----------|
| 1. him   | 6. towards | 11. called | 16. been  |
| 2. for   | 7. in      | 12. back   | 17. no    |
| 3. after | 8. bought  | 13. to     | 18. since |
| 4. rode  | 9. could   | 14. opened | 19. to    |
| 5. first | 10. on     | 15. once   | 20. would |

## EX17.

- |               |                |           |          |
|---------------|----------------|-----------|----------|
| 1. home       | 3. study/learn | 5. their  | 7. which |
| 2. newspapers | 4. understand  | 6. camera | 8. about |

## EX18.

- |           |              |         |          |
|-----------|--------------|---------|----------|
| 1. landed | 3. spaceship | 5. some | 7. left  |
| 2. on     | 4. surface   | 6. put  | 8. earth |

### EX19.

- |            |         |           |        |
|------------|---------|-----------|--------|
| 1. advised | 4. have | 7. find   | 10. in |
| 2. fill    | 5. this | 8. enough |        |
| 3. should  | 6. if   | 9. pay    |        |

### EX20.

- |                |               |
|----------------|---------------|
| 1. second      | 6. it         |
| 2. same        | 7. learn      |
| 3. information | 8. night      |
| 4. to          | 9. from       |
| 5. perfect     | 10. computers |

### EX21.

- |               |        |             |             |
|---------------|--------|-------------|-------------|
| 1. circus     | 3. of  | 5. clown    | 7. on       |
| 2. impression | 4. end | 6. spending | 8. couldn't |

### EX22.

- |               |             |                  |
|---------------|-------------|------------------|
| 1. advantages | 4. on       | 7. entertainment |
| 2. image      | 5. addition | 8. hobby         |
| 3. make       | 6. which    |                  |

### EX23.

- |         |         |          |           |
|---------|---------|----------|-----------|
| 1. saw  | 3. him  | 5. threw | 7. them   |
| 2. tree | 4. make | 6. words | 8. begged |

### EX24.

- |             |                  |
|-------------|------------------|
| 1. by       | 5. produce       |
| 2. search   | 6. life, society |
| 3. other    | 7. affected      |
| 4. products | 8. civilization  |

## EX25.

- |         |          |          |          |
|---------|----------|----------|----------|
| 1. next | 4. on    | 7. there | 10. it   |
| 2. to   | 5. twice | 8. with  | 11. very |
| 3. an   | 6. as    | 9. had   |          |

## EX26.

- |            |             |          |
|------------|-------------|----------|
| 1. decided | 4. since    | 7. taken |
| 2. whose   | 5. from     | 8. all   |
| 3. the     | 6. actually |          |

## EX27.

- |         |        |         |         |
|---------|--------|---------|---------|
| 1. is   | 3. in  | 5. day  | 7. or   |
| 2. Many | 4. lot | 6. come | 8. live |

## EX28.

- |          |          |             |           |
|----------|----------|-------------|-----------|
| 1. which | 6. whose | 11. time    | 16. he    |
| 2. about | 7. of    | 12. to      | 17. until |
| 3. whose | 8. Since | 13. but     | 18. when  |
| 4. whom  | 9. up    | 14. During  | 19. after |
| 5. who   | 10. who  | 15. between | 20. to    |

## EX29.

- |                        |          |         |                  |
|------------------------|----------|---------|------------------|
| 1. allowed             | 4. death | 7. can  | 10. decide//choo |
| 2. However             | 5. prize | 8. year |                  |
| 3. every/<br>extremely | 6. the   | 9. one  |                  |

## EX30.

- |          |            |            |           |
|----------|------------|------------|-----------|
| 1. with  | 6. less    | 11. but    | 16. heard |
| 2. while | 7. believe | 12. asked  | 17. got   |
| 3. not   | 8. windows | 13. with   | 18. were  |
| 4. back  | 9. their   | 14. on     | 19. it    |
| 5. them  | 10. to     | 15. trying | 20. just  |

## EX31.

- |            |            |            |           |
|------------|------------|------------|-----------|
| 1. was     | 6. between | 11. where  | 16. that  |
| 2. as      | 7. by      | 12. made   | 17. money |
| 3. neither | 8. most    | 13. before | 18. at    |
| 4. little  | 9. when    | 14. him    | 19. there |
| 5. so      | 10. one    | 15. being  | 20. birth |

## EX32.

- |        |        |         |         |
|--------|--------|---------|---------|
| 1. her | 4. had | 7. made | 10. far |
| 2. an  | 5. at  | 8. in   |         |
| 3. and | 6. but | 9. into |         |

## EX33.

- |        |           |          |           |
|--------|-----------|----------|-----------|
| 1. of  | 4. it     | 7. whose | 9. while  |
| 2. was | 5. should | 8. felt  | 10. later |
| 3. in  | 6. a      |          |           |

## EX34.

- |             |              |             |
|-------------|--------------|-------------|
| 1. speed    | 4. away      | 7. guarding |
| 2. measure  | 5. direction | 8. approach |
| 3. distance | 6. taking    |             |

## EX35.

- |           |              |          |
|-----------|--------------|----------|
| 1. born   | 4. education | 7. death |
| 2. for    | 5. books     | 8. works |
| 3. living | 6. himself   |          |

## EX36.

- |               |                     |              |             |
|---------------|---------------------|--------------|-------------|
| 1. experience | 6. going            | 11. too/also | 16. most    |
| 2. like       | 7. stretch/stay     | 12. alive    | 17. yet     |
| 3. own        | 8. rise/rear/spring | 13. almost   | 18. because |
| 4. over       | 9. enough           | 14. itself   | 19. than    |
| 5. knowing    | 10. that/which      | 15. on       | 20. now     |



EX37.

- |                  |               |              |               |
|------------------|---------------|--------------|---------------|
| 1. the           | 6. politely   | 11. same     | 16. letter    |
| 2. early/earlier | 7. required   | 12. advise   | 17. on        |
| 3. who           | 8. soul       | 13. burglary | 18. must      |
| 4. from/with     | 9. side       | 14. too      | 19. indeed    |
| 5. obligated     | 10. gossiping | 15. such     | 20. once/when |

EX38.

- |                  |                                     |
|------------------|-------------------------------------|
| 1. gives/teaches | 11. suppositions<br>/preconceptions |
| 2. great/certain | 12. show                            |
| 3. the           | 13. believe                         |
| 4. much          | 14. than                            |
| 5. in            | 15. people                          |
| 6. difference    | 16. eavesdrop                       |
| 7. size          | 17. crashed/collided                |
| 8. storms        | 18. who                             |
| 9. the           | 19. been                            |
| 10. tear         | 20. strict                          |

EX39.

- |                 |                                 |                 |
|-----------------|---------------------------------|-----------------|
| 1. born         | 6. child (person)               | 14. born        |
| 2. by           | 7. hand                         | 15. at          |
| 3. strangely    | 8. environment<br>/surroundings | 16. their       |
| 4. intelligence | 9. child (one)                  | 17. different   |
| 5. of           | 10. the                         | 18. two         |
|                 | 11. whether/if                  | 19. intelligent |
|                 | 12. on                          | 20. depends     |
|                 | 13. be                          |                 |

#### EX40.

- |                             |                    |
|-----------------------------|--------------------|
| 1. Year                     | 24. And            |
| 2. Course/degree/diploma    | 25. Reporting      |
| 3. chiefly/Primarily/mainly | 26. Too            |
| 4. To                       | 27. Under          |
| 5. department               | 28. Range/List     |
| 6. who                      | 29. Arrived/came   |
| 7. Lecture                  | 30. Few/number     |
| 8. Out                      | 31. New            |
| 9. Down                     | 32. Timidity       |
| 10. Note/Talking/Writing    | 33. Were           |
| 11. Put                     | 34. to             |
| 12. They                    | 35. Found          |
| 13. Not                     | 36. But            |
| 14. The                     | 37. An, the        |
| 15. Paused                  | 38. The            |
| 16. would                   | 39. Larger/Greater |
| 17. Approval/Relief         | 40. Been           |
| 18. Air/Class               |                    |
| 19. Dismay/looks            | 41. Could          |
| 20. How/what                | 42. Simply         |
| 21. Time/purposes           | 43. Were           |
| 22. Were/had                | 44. were to        |
| 23. Group                   | 45. in             |

#### EX41.

- |          |           |         |               |
|----------|-----------|---------|---------------|
| 1. not   | 4. ever   | 7. for  | 10. ourselves |
| 2. it    | 5. reason | 8. down |               |
| 3. still | 6. partly | 9. took |               |

EX42.

- |              |             |             |
|--------------|-------------|-------------|
| 1. Must      | 4. postcode | 7. have     |
| 2. Stamp     | 5. if       | 8. Recently |
| 3. recipient | 6. Must     | 9. What     |

EX43.

- |             |           |             |
|-------------|-----------|-------------|
| 1. very one | 3. hardly | 5. anywhere |
| 2. no one   | 4. no     | 6. anything |
|             |           | 7. nothing  |

EX44.

- |          |          |          |          |
|----------|----------|----------|----------|
| 1. When  | 4. Whose | 7. Where | 10. When |
| 2. Who   | 5. Where | 8. Which |          |
| 3. Which | 6. When  | 9. Where |          |

EX45.

- |           |           |       |        |
|-----------|-----------|-------|--------|
| 1. life   | 4. mother | 7. at | 10. to |
| 2. parent | 5. for    | 8. to |        |
| 3. He     | 6. left   | 9. to |        |

EX46.

- |         |           |          |             |
|---------|-----------|----------|-------------|
| 1. was  | 4. he     | 7. of    | 10. himself |
| 2. born | 5. living | 8. read  |             |
| 3. a    | 6. had    | 9. lived |             |

EX47.

- |        |          |               |             |
|--------|----------|---------------|-------------|
| 1. was | 4. first | 7. Went       | 10. started |
| 2. age | 5. next  | 8. up         |             |
| 3. to  | 6. then  | 9. profession |             |

## EX48.

- |             |          |              |         |
|-------------|----------|--------------|---------|
| 1. was      | 4. which | 7. got       | 10. for |
| 2. mother   | 5. its   | 8. in        |         |
| 3. educated | 6. give  | 9. sentenced |         |

## EX49.

- |         |        |           |           |
|---------|--------|-----------|-----------|
| 1. Who  | 4. to  | 7. to     | 10. prize |
| 2. born | 5. be  | 8. during |           |
| 3. in   | 6. age | 9. wrote  |           |

## EX50.

- |            |         |             |            |
|------------|---------|-------------|------------|
| 1. born    | 4. went | 7. their    | 10. Joined |
| 2. at      | 5. as   | 8. interest |            |
| 3. himself | 6. into | 9. himself  |            |

## EX51.

- |            |         |                   |            |
|------------|---------|-------------------|------------|
| 1. Writer  | 4. at   | 7. age            | 10. become |
| 2. as well | 5. of   | 8. all            |            |
| 3. readers | 6. Born | 9. representation |            |

## EX52.

- |         |         |                 |          |
|---------|---------|-----------------|----------|
| 1. was  | 4. to   | 7. handkerchief | 10. your |
| 2. all  | 5. who  | 8. you          |          |
| 3. such | 6. have | 9. for          |          |

## EX53.

- |       |        |          |          |
|-------|--------|----------|----------|
| 1. In | 4. to  | 7. asked | 10. have |
| 2. To | 5. it  | 8. if    |          |
| 3. To | 6. for | 9. given |          |

EX54.

- |         |         |        |          |
|---------|---------|--------|----------|
| 1. by   | 4. his  | 7. the | 10. back |
| 2. To   | 5. have | 8. was |          |
| 3. been | 6. it   | 9. did |          |

EX55.

- |        |         |          |        |
|--------|---------|----------|--------|
| 1. on  | 4. had  | 7. like  | 10. it |
| 2. of  | 5. a    | 8. Where |        |
| 3. sat | 6. were | 9. were  |        |

EX56.

- |           |         |         |
|-----------|---------|---------|
| 1. about  | 4. with | 7. said |
| 2. people | 5. is   | 8. on   |
| 3. what   | 6. to   | 9. were |

EX57.

- |         |         |        |       |
|---------|---------|--------|-------|
| 1. at   | 3. some | 5. I   | 7. We |
| 2. them | 4. in   | 6. you |       |

EX58.

- |        |               |          |           |
|--------|---------------|----------|-----------|
| 1. was | 4. When       | 7. with  | 10. Which |
| 2. to  | 5. up         | 8. other |           |
| 3. as  | 6. everything | 9. for   |           |

EX59.

- |            |               |               |
|------------|---------------|---------------|
| 1. there   | 4. cages      | 7. themselves |
| 2. animals | 5. open       | 8. what       |
| 3. more    | 6. real (the) |               |

EX60.

- |          |         |         |
|----------|---------|---------|
| 1. after | 4. then | 7. whom |
| 2. first | 5. with | 8. as   |
| 3. which | 6. ages |         |

EX61.

- |        |         |         |        |
|--------|---------|---------|--------|
| 1. at  | 3. of   | 5. into | 7. in  |
| 2. out | 4. from | 6. by   | 8. off |

EX62.

- |           |          |              |             |
|-----------|----------|--------------|-------------|
| 1. people | 3. hard  | 5. is        | 7. then     |
| 2. farm   | 4. lived | 6. gardening | 8. children |

EX63.

- |                |            |          |          |
|----------------|------------|----------|----------|
| 1. want (like) | 3. country | 5. about | 7. grown |
| 2. some        | 4. farm    | 6. fruit | 8. kinds |

EX64.

- |              |            |            |            |
|--------------|------------|------------|------------|
| 1. born      | 3. century | 5. writers | 7. other   |
| 2. beginning | 4. full    | 6. ones    | 8. picture |

EX65.

- |                     |           |          |
|---------------------|-----------|----------|
| 1. difficult (hard) | 4. heroes | 7. even  |
| 2. full             | 5. stop   | 8. learn |
| 3. mistake          | 6. lose   |          |

EX66.

- |         |             |             |          |
|---------|-------------|-------------|----------|
| 1. at   | 3. what     | 5. promised | 7. with  |
| 2. able | 4. although | 6. off      | 8. them. |

EX67.

- |             |                  |           |               |
|-------------|------------------|-----------|---------------|
| 1. when     | 3. most (very)   | 5. shops  | 7. travelling |
| 2. possible | 4. sorts (kinds) | 6. before | 8. without    |

EX68.

- |                   |              |            |            |
|-------------------|--------------|------------|------------|
| 1. lines          | 3. necessary | 5. sorry   | 7. smaller |
| 2. quicker/faster | 4. foot      | 6. because | 8. out     |

EX69.

- |         |               |           |          |
|---------|---------------|-----------|----------|
| 1. home | 3. animals    | 5. enough | 7. human |
| 2. the  | 4. especially | 6. it     | 8. food. |

EX70.

- |            |            |          |        |
|------------|------------|----------|--------|
| 1. was     | 4. who     | 7. is    | 10. of |
| 2. for     | 5. and     | 8. on    | 11. as |
| 3. working | 6. started | 9. which |        |

EX71.

- |             |             |              |          |
|-------------|-------------|--------------|----------|
| 1. think    | 4. teach    | 7. for       | 10. your |
| 2. you      | 5. as/while | 8. in/during |          |
| 3. one/army | 6. help     | 9. during/in |          |

EX72.

- |              |             |             |        |
|--------------|-------------|-------------|--------|
| 1. person's  | 4. anywhere | 7. soldiers | 10. we |
| 2. it        | 5. salary   | 8. there's  |        |
| 3. visit/see | 6. month    | 9. the      |        |

EX73.

- |            |             |           |          |
|------------|-------------|-----------|----------|
| 1. nothing | 4. did      | 7. when   | 10. them |
| 2. say     | 5. right    | 8. guilty | 11. copy |
| 3. she     | 6. question | 9. one    |          |

EX74.

- |            |           |            |
|------------|-----------|------------|
| 1. which   | 4. island | 7. largest |
| 2. channel | 5. of     | 8. capital |
| 3. to      | 6. with   |            |



EX75.

- |          |                |          |           |
|----------|----------------|----------|-----------|
| 1. area  | 4. was         | 7. she   | 10. ocean |
| 2. as    | 5. herself     | 8. to    |           |
| 3. world | 6. independent | 9. U.S.A |           |

EX76.

- |                |        |           |              |
|----------------|--------|-----------|--------------|
| 1. countryside | 3. the | 5. is     | 7. waiting   |
| 2. newspaper   | 4. you | 6. always | 8. beginning |

EX77.

- |            |         |           |               |
|------------|---------|-----------|---------------|
| 1. are     | 4. than | 7. likely | 10. newspaper |
| 2. working | 5. on   | 8. a      |               |
| 3. time    | 6. A    | 9. Sunday |               |

**Dạng 2: Đọc một đoạn văn rồi trả lời các câu hỏi.**

*Exercise 1.*

### **Hire - Purchase**

The system of buying goods by hire-purchase became very common during the first half of the 20<sup>th</sup> century. Today a large proportion of all families in Great Britain buy furniture and household goods paying by instalment. In the United States of America the proportion is much higher than in Great Britain. The price of the goods bought in this way is always higher than the price that would be paid in cash. One part of the price, perhaps one-quarter or one third, is paid by the buyer when the goods are delivered to him. He then makes regular payments, weekly or monthly, until the full price has been paid. But if the buyer can not pay the instalment at the fixed time, the goods are returned to the company.

### *Questions.*

1. What is the hire-purchase system ?  
.....
2. What goods are most commonly bought by this system ?  
.....
3. Is the hire-purchase price low or high ?  
.....
4. What will happen if the buyer can not pay the full price at the fixed time ?  
.....

### *Exercise 2 .*

One of the most striking features of English life is the self-discipline and courtesy of people of all classes. There is little noisy behaviour. People do not rush excitedly for seats on buses or trains, but take their seats in a quiet and orderly manner. Englishmen are naturally polite and are never tired of saying "Thank you", "I'm sorry", "I beg your pardon". If you follow anyone who is entering a building or a room he will hold a door open for you. Many foreigners have commented on a remarkable politeness of the English people.

English people don't like displaying their emotions even in dangerous and tragic situations and ordinary people seem to remain good-tempered and cheerful under difficulties.

### *Questions.*

1. What's one of the most striking features of English life ?  
.....
2. How do English people take their seats in public ?  
.....
3. How do English people behave when they are in danger ?  
.....

4. What is meant by English people are never tired of saying "thank you" and "I'm sorry" ?
- .....

### *Exercise 3.*

#### **My hobby**

My hobby is collecting stamps. When I was still a baby, my mother began to collect for me, of course, she did not let me touch the stamps till I was old enough not to spoil them. I remember that it was on my 15th birthday that she first put them into my hands. They were in four fat books, but since that time, I have added three more, so that now I have a bigger collection than any of my friends.

How do I get my stamps ? I have friends both here and in other lands who send me stamps in return for ones that I send to them. Now that I am working for my living, I do not have as much time as before to spend on my stamps, but in the evenings, what can be better than to sit down at a table with my precious books arranging new stamps in them, writing in the names of countries, or if I am too tired, only looking through stamps already in the books ? Each stamp has a story to tell me of far countries and strange people. I see pictures of men and women, birds and animals that I have never seen, Kings and presidents pass before my eyes and I can follow the history of nations.

But my stamp collection does not make me think only of the past. Just as my mother collected for me, so I too am collecting for my future child. What better way will there be of interesting to him in history, geography and languages, and of making these subjects live for him instead of being only things in school books ?

#### *Questions .*

1. What is the writer's hobby ?
- .....

2. When did he receive the stamps from his mother ?

.....

3. What does he like doing in the evenings ?

.....

4. What can he learn from the stamps ?

.....

5. Give adjectives corresponding to :

- book (n)
- nation (n)
- collect (v)
- friend (n)
- touch (v)
- pass (v)

#### *Exercise 4.*

The human race is spread all over the world, from the polar regions to the tropics. The people of which it is made up eat different kinds of food, partly according to the kind of food which their country produces. Thus, in India, people live chiefly on different kinds of grain, eggs, milk, or sometimes fish and meat. In Europe, people eat more flesh and less grain. In the Arctic regions, where no grain and fruits are produced, the Eskimo and other races live almost entirely on flesh, especially fat. The men of one race are able to eat the food of another race, if they are brought into the country inhabited by the latter. But as a rule, they still prefer their own food, at least for a time. In warm climates, flesh and fat are not much needed, but in the Arctic regions they seem to be very necessary for keeping up the heat of the body.

## Questions .

1. What kind of food do people eat in Europe ?

.....

2. Why are flesh and fat needed in Arctic regions ?

.....

3. What does the word ' latter' refer to ?

.....

4. Why do people who live in the Arctic live mainly on flesh ?

.....

## Exercise 5.

Television now plays such an important role in so many people's lives that it is essential for us to try to decide whether it is good or bad. first of all, television is not only a convenient source of entertainment, but also a rather cheap one. For a family of our, for example, it is more convenient as well as cheaper to sit comfortably at home than to go out. There is no transport to arrange. They don't have to pay for expensive seats at the theatre or in the cinema. All they have to do is to turn a switch, and they can see plays, films of every kind, not to mention political discussions and the latest exciting football match. Some people, however, say that this is just where the danger is. The T.V viewer need to do nothing. He doesn't even use his legs. He makes no choice. He is completely passive and has everything presented to him. T.V , people often say, informs one about current events, the latest developments in science and politics, and presents an endless series of programmes. The most farway countries and the strangest customs are brought into one's living-room. Yet, here again there is a danger. We get to like watching T.V so much that it begins to dominate our lives, and we don't have time to talk to each other and do other things. There are many arguments for

and against T.V. I think we must understand that T.V in itself is neither good nor bad . T.V is as good or as bad as we make it.

*Questions .*

1. Why is T.V a cheap source of entertainment ?

.....

2. What can you see on T.V ?

.....

3. Give one of the arguments against T.V.

.....

4. What is the writer's opinion about T.V ?

.....

*Exercise 6.*

**Man in space**

After the war, Soviet rocket technique rapidly developed. On Oct. 4th, 1957 Moscow radio broadcast the news of the tremendous achievement, the Soviet Union launched the world's first artificial satellite. The Russian word "sputnik" in one day became an international word.

Since that time, the Soviet Union has launched many other heavier sputniks and rockets to trail the path of man to the planets and the stars.

The whole world was waiting for the first manned space flight. Few people doubted that it would happen in the Soviet Union. Nevertheless, the actual flight came as a complete surprise. On April 12th 1961 a Soviet pilot, Yuri Gagarin, took mankind's first step into space.

The dream of Tsiolkovsky and other pioneers of space flight has come true. The Soviet spaceship Vostok has become the symbol of



human intelligence and courage a scientific platform for man to reach out and touch the distant stars and secrets of the Universe...

*Questions .*

1. When was the first artificial satellite launched ?

.....

2. Which country launched the world's first satellite ?

.....

3. When was the first manned spaceship launched ?

.....

4. Whose dream has come true ?

.....

*Exercise 7 .*

**On an English farm in October**

October is a busy month for any farmer. Of course, every farmer has one advantage over most people as long as he remains a farmer, he can never be out of work. On everyday in the year, he has only to go outside his house, and there, in his fields and farm buildings he will see hundreds of jobs waiting to be done. But in October there always seems to be three months' work to be done in one. The two most important jobs are to finish the harvesting of last year's crops, and to begin preparations for next year's harvest. All the grain is now in the stacks or in the thatched sheds safe from the rain. The potatoes were dug in September and are now stored in pits and the apples have been sold, stored or made into cider. But there are two crops which still await to be harvested - mangoes and sugar-beet. The wheat crop that will be harvested next August must be sown in Autumn. The best time to sow is the last fortnight in October and the first fortnight in November. If you sow much later, the cold weather may get in and your wheat will take months



to come up, and all this time, the rooks and starlings will be digging up the seeds and eating them.

What else is there to do in October ? Many other things ;for example, the poultry must be looked after. Then there are some hedges still untrimmed. But what with harvest and threshing, and wheat-sowing, and ploughing, and one thing and another, there hasn't been time to finish them all. Still, on a day when it's too wet to sow, even to pull roots, the men can do a little hedge-trimming. Will it be fine tomorrow ? It had better be, for tomorrow is November.

### *Questions .*

1. What is the best season for sowing wheat in Britain ?

.....

2. Can you use one word to name hens,ducks, geese etc ?.

.....

3. Where is grain usually stored ?

.....

4. What will happen if the seeds are sown later in October ?

.....

### *Exercise 8 .*

Parents whose children show a special interest in a particular sport have a difficult decision to make about their children's careers. Should they allow their children to train to become top sportsmen and women ? For many children it means starting very young and school work, going out with friends and other interest have to take second place. It's very difficult to explain to a young child why he or she has to train for five hours a day, even at the weekend, when most of his or her friends are playing. Another problem is of course money. In many countries money for training

is available from the government for the very best young sports men and women. If this help cannot be given it means that it is the parents who have to find the time and the money to support their child's development ;etc. This can all be very expensive.

Many parents are understandably worried that it is dangerous to start serious training in a sport at an early age. Some doctors agree that young muscles may be damaged by training before they are properly developed. Professional trainers, however, believe that it is only by starting young that you can reach the top as a successful sports perso. What is clear is that very few people do reach the top and both parents and children should be prepared for failure even after many years of training.

1. This is from

- a. a letter.
- b. an advertisement.
- c. a sports diary
- d. a newspaper article.

2. What is the writer's intention ?

- a. to inform about training
- b. to give details about traning costs.
- c. to give details about training costs.
- d. to suggest a training programme .

3. How do some governments help young people who are good at sport ?

.....

4. Give one advantage and one disadvantage of early training.

.....

### Exercise 9 .

I've always been a careful driver. I always. I think that's something to be proud of in fact. I've only ever had one accident in my life, and that wasn't serious. Just a little knock that's all. It must have happened thirteen .... or perhaps fourteen years ago. I had a job as a van driver. I still have actually. I was driving home from Birmingham. The van was one of those long wheel-bas Ford Transits, and it didn't have any back windows. For security you know, it just had door mirrors. It was a filthy night, pouring down, and the journey was very slow indeed. I was starving hungry and it was getting late. I saw a sign ahead for a village. It was Kiddleworth, I think. Anyway, I remembered passing a sweet shop there that stayed open late at night. As I said, the rain was beating down I decided to get some chocolate. There was a big parking space outside the shop and I drove straight in. Because of the rain I moved into his passenger's seat, slid the door open , it had sliding doors and dashed into the shop. I put the correct money on the counter, grabbed a Mrs. Bar, and went straight back into the van through the open passenger door I looked carefully in the door mirrors and put it into reverse. Crash ! I smashed straight into a Mini it must have parked behind me during the few seconds I was in the shop, and it was too small to see in the door mirrors. It was my fault if van drivers can't see they're supposed to walk round the van. I just forgot. But I've never had accidents since.

#### Questions :

1. He says two things that mean it was raining heavily.

.....  
.....

2. What did he stop to buy ?

.....

3. Why didn't he see the Mini when he arrived ?

.....

4. Why couldn't he see the Mini in the door mirrors ?

.....

*Exercise 10.*

**Digital phone revolution**

When telephoning friends in Australia, would you like to see pictures of them at the same time ? When calling a garage about a broken car, would you like to look at diagrams in a part of the catalogue ? When discussing financial figures, would you like to have them transferred into your own desk-top computer ?

If this can be done now - by big businesses with the money and expertise required. But in a few years ordinary people should be able to do the same. This became clear at the Telecom Fair, a trade exhibition and conference for the world's telecommunications community in Geneva earlier this month. There are facsimile machines able to transmit a document in six seconds (compared with the present 60 seconds), and one that can transmit in colour. There are picture phones which send and display a series of still photographs of the people talking on the line. And there are drawing pads which allow your doodles to appear on another pad at the receiving end. The technology for integrating communication services over a digital network is available now. But the telecommunications world has not yet defined all the standards necessary or a truly global network to emerge. This could take up to ten years.

In the future, terminals will look very different from normal telephone handsets. They will have video screens typewriter keyboards, drawing pads or printing devices. It is possible to have an intelligent terminal which could read a credit card, send data automatically to the computer centre, and then have the person say a few words in the telephone for the computer to recognize the voice pattern before authorization. It should work well unless you have a heavy cold !

### *Questions.*

1. Who was the Telecom Fair for ?

.....

2. What will telephone terminals be like in the future ?

.....

3. Why will it take up to ten years for a global network to merge ?

.....

4. What can an intelligent terminal do ?

.....

### *Exercise 11.*

Charlie Stowe waited until he heard his mother snore before he got out of bed. Even then he moved with caution and tiptoed to the window. The front of the house was irregular, so that it was possible to see a light burning in his mother's room. But now all the windows were dark. Charlie Stowe was frightened. But the thought of the tobacconist's shop which his father kept down a dozen wooden stairs drew him on. He was twelve years old, and already boys at the County School laughed at him because he had never smoked a cigarette. The packets were piled twelve deep below, and the little shop lay under a thin layer of stale smoke which would completely cover up his crime. That it was a crime to steal some of his father's stock. Charlie Stowe had no doubt, but he did not love his father ; his father was unreal to him, a shadowy figure, pale, thin, indefinite, who noticed him only occasionally and left even punishment to his mother. For his mother he felt a strong love ; ... from her speech he judged her the friend of everyone... But his father's affection and dislike were as indefinite as his movements. Tonight he said he would be in Norwich, and yet you never knew. Charlie Stowe had no sense of safety as he crept down the wooden stairs...

At the bottom of the stairs he came quite suddenly into the little shop. It was too dark to see his way, and he did not dare to touch the switch. For half a minute he sat in despair on the bottom step with his chin in his hands. Then the regular movement of the search light was reflected through an upper window and the boy had time to fix in memory the pile of cigarettes, the counter, and the small hole under it. The footsteps of a policeman on the pavement made him grab the first packet in his hand and dive for the hole. A light shone along the floor and a hand tried the door, then the footsteps passed on, and Charlie hid in the darkness. At last he got his courage back by telling himself in his strangely adult way that if he were caught now there was nothing to be done about it, and he might as well have his smoke. He put a cigarette in his mouth and then remembered that he had no matches.

### *Questions.*

1. How could Charlie see that his mother's window was dark ?

.....

2. How did Charlie feel about his father. ?

.....

3. What did Charlie do when he heard the policeman ?

.....

4. As soon as he went into the shop Charlie

a. switched the light on

b. felt safer

c. sat down on the stairs

d. could see the cigarettes

5. Charlie did not smoke a cigarette because

a. he regretted what he had done

b. he wanted to behave like an adult

c. he hadn't brought any matches

d. he was afraid of being caught



## *Exercise 12.*

Through a series of experiments an American scientist has obtained an understanding of the social structure of the most complex of ant societies. The ants examined are the only creatures other than man to have given up hunting and collecting for a completely agricultural way of life. In their underground nests they cultivate gardens on soil made from finely chopped leaves. This is a complex operation requiring considerable division of labour. The workers of this type of ant can be divided into four groups according to size. Each of the groups performs a particular set of jobs. The making and care of the gardens and the nursing of the young ants are done by the smallest workers. Slightly larger workers are responsible for chopping up leaves to make them suitable for use in the gardens and for cleaning the nest. A third group of still larger ants do the construction work and collect fresh leaves from outside the nest. The largest are the soldier ants responsible for defending the nest.

To find out how good the various size-groups are at different tasks, the scientist measured the amount of work done by the ant against the amount of energy they used. He first examined how efficiently these ants could find leaves and run back to the nest. Then he repeated the experiment for each of the other size-groups. In this way he could see whether any group could do the job more efficiently than the group normally undertaking it. The intermediate-sized ants that normally perform this task proved to be the most efficient for their energy costs, but when the scientist examined the whole set of jobs performed by each group of ants it appeared that some sizes of worker ant were not ideally suited to the particular jobs they performed.

### *Questions.*

1. In which way are the ants different from other non human societies ?  
.....



2. It seems that smaller ants perform more of the
  - a. construction tasks
  - b. domestic tasks
  - c. defensive work
  - d. heavy work
3. "Good" (first line of third paragraph) refers to the ants'
  - a. co-operation in working
  - b. sense of responsibility
  - c. efficiency in working
  - d. willingness to work hard
4. The organization of the ants has the effect of
  - a. getting the most work done
  - b. dividing the work up systematically
  - c. each ant helping with all the tasks
  - d. each ant doing what it can do best

*Exercise 13.*

**Mr Woolf works very hard**

<sup>a</sup>There was one thing that I found rather strange on my first day as<sup>v</sup>housekeeper at Monk's House. The floors in the house were very thin. The bathroom was directly above the kitchen, and when Mrs. Woolf was having her bath before breakfast, I could hear her talking to herself. On and on she went, talk, talk, talk, asking questions and giving herself the answers. I thought there must be two or three people up there with her. When Mr. Woolf saw that I looked surprised, he told me that Mrs. Woolf always said the sentences out loud that she had written during the night. She needed to know if they sounded right and the bath was a good place for trying them out. I was not allowed to make coffee at

Monk's house - Mr. and Mrs Woolf were very particular about coffee and always made it themselves - so Mr Woolf came into the kitchen at eight o'clock and always made it. When we carried the breakfast trays to Mrs Woolf's room I noticed that she had always been working during the night. There were pencils and paper beside her bed so that when she woke up she could work, and sometimes it seemed as though she had very little sleep.

I can always remember her coming to the house each day from the writing- room ; when I rang the bell for lunch at one o'clock she used to walk down through the garden smoking one of her favourite cigarettes in a long holder. She was tall and thin and very graceful. She had large, deep-set eyes and a wide curving mouth - I think ,perhaps, it was this that made her face seem particularly beautiful. She wore long skirts - usually blue or brown - in the fashion of the day, and silk jackets of the same colour. Her cigarettes were made from a special tobacco called My Mixture. Mr Woolf bought it for her in London, and, in the evenings, they used to sit by the fire and make these cigarettes themselves. Mrs Woolf wore clothes that suited her well. I pressed them for her and did any sewing that was necessary - she was not able to sew, although sometimes she liked to try. There was one thing in the kitchen that Mrs Woolf was very good at doing ; she could make beautiful bread.

### *Questions.*

1. Mrs Woolf wore clothes which were

- a. in matching colours
- b. designed for her individually
- c. suitable for country life
- d. rather dull and unattractive

2. Mrs Woolf was a

- |            |              |
|------------|--------------|
| a. writer  | b. poet      |
| c. teacher | d. housewife |

3. What kind of husband do you think Mr Woolf was ?

.....

4. What could Mrs Woolf do very well ?

.....

#### *Exercise 14.*

From this survey, one can estimate that fewer than one in five children have some contact with a hospital teacher - and that contact may last two hours a day. Most children interviewed were surprised to find a teacher in hospital at all. They had not been prepared for it by parents or their own school. If there was a teacher they were much more likely to read books and do maths or number work ; without a teacher they would only play games. Reasons for hospital teaching range from preventing a child falling behind and maintaining the habit of school to keeping a child occupied, and the latter is often all the teacher can do. The position and influence of many teachers was summed up when parents referred to them as the library lady or just the helper.

Children tend to rely on concerned school friends to keep in touch with school work. Several parents spoke of requests or work being ignored or refused by the school. Once back at school, children rarely get extra teaching, and are told to catch up as best as they can.

Many short-stay child-patients catch up quickly. But schools do very little to ease the anxiety about falling behind expressed by many of the children interviewed.

1. It seems that the children interviewed in hospital
  - a. liked having math lessons regularly
  - b. wanted to play games most of the time
  - c. did not expect to receive any teaching
  - d. did not want any contact with their schools

2. It is suggested that most teachers of children in hospital were
  - a. successful in getting the co-operation of parents
  - b. unable to get help from other hospital staff
  - c. unable to provide a proper teaching programme
  - d. in a position of great influence in the hospital
3. Some children in hospital are able to keep up with their school work because
  - a. the nurses try to teach them
  - b. their friends help them to do so.
  - c. teachers from the school come to the hospital
  - d. their parents bring them books from the library

#### *Exercise 15.*

I can not stress too much the importance of watching your opponent, of knowing exactly where he is on the tennis court and what he is doing. It is usually possible to work out the pattern of his game very early in a match. Test him at the front of the court. Try hitting one or two balls high up to see what his shots are like. The more quickly you discover his weaknesses, the easier the match should become.

Now and again it may be a good idea to give your opponent an opportunity of making a mistake. If, early in the match, it seems that he is a very accurate player, then you should tempt him to play a winning shot. Give him the opening, for there are some players who simply can not hit winners. They will try to play an attacking game but they can not quite finish it off. The way to break up their steady game may be by putting them into the front of the court. It is obviously wiser to try to decide at the beginning of the match whether your opponent is weaker on his left-hand or on his right-hand side, and then play a little more than fifty percent of your shots down that side. play a normal attacking game,

or the game you think you will win, but concentrate on the weaker side. A number of players experience more trouble than others in the back corners of the court—always be ready to recognise this weakness. Perhaps an opponent has a favourite backhand shot, but lacks certainty with his forehand shot. Tempt him to play the forehand shot.

There are advantages in learning as much as possible about another player even before you play with him. When you know, in a competition, who your next opponent will be, try to watch him play beforehand. It is only under match conditions that his weaknesses are likely to show—you are bound to pick up some information, even if it's a basic thing such as slowness in reaching the front of the team's opponents so that rarely does a member walk on to a court without knowing what to expect.

### *Questions.*

1. What are tennis players advised to do early in a match ?  
.....
2. What should a player do against an opponent who has difficulty in playing shots on one side ?  
.....
3. This passage tells a tennis player playing a match how to
  - a. get an opponent to make mistakes
  - b. avoid making mistakes himself
  - c. play accurately rather than forcefully
4. Before playing a match in competition what is a player advised to do ?
  - a. talk to members of his own team
  - b. talk to his opponent before hand
  - c. play a practice game against the opponent
  - d. observe his opponent playing a match

### *Exercise 16.*

They say every small child wants to be an engine-driver. But I myself wanted to be a pilot. I used to spend hours at the local airport with my brother writing down the plane registrations. I knew everything about plane or planes. When I was 12 I began to realize that the thick glasses I had to wear would make that ambition impossible. It's always ! It's funny. I really can't stand flying now. I often have to travel in my job and I suppose I've got used to flying. I am still a collector, but now it's Chinese ornaments, not plane registrations I think I've become something of an expert on 19th century English China. I'd really like to write a book about it. I think that would be my biggest ambition.

#### *Questions.*

1. What was his childhood ambition ?

.....

2. What were his childhood hobbies ?

.....

3. What are his present hobbies ?

.....

4. What is his ambition now ?

.....

### *Exercise 17.*

Except for a number of high school students who can continue their studies in colleges or universities, a large majority of school-leavers experience their transition from school to work with the feeling of hope and worry. To them, the end of school means the beginning of their independent new life. They are eager for their first job because it will help them contribute a bit to their family budget, feel better about themselves, and above all, give them the



desirable status of "workers". But they soon realize that they are ill-prepared for employment. They know little about their future job, and have no ideas of the tasks involved in it. When the time to start work gets nearer, many of them begin to worry and build up all sorts of fear in their minds.

Thus, it is the responsibility of the family, the school and the whole society to help these school-leavers get over the obstacles, uncertainties and even disappointments they usually encounter when entering life.

### *Questions.*

1. What feelings do most school boys and girls have when entering life ?

.....

2. Is the transition from school to work quite smooth for these school-leavers ? Why ?

.....

3. Which sentence gives the main idea of the passage ?

a. pupils are very upset and worried when they are going to finish school.

b. preparing for life, school boys and girls are eager and worried ; the responsibility of the family and the whole society is to help them because they know almost nothing about employment

c. pupils want to start working to get money for their families.

### *Exercise 18.*

In the future, astronauts will be required to descend from a spaceship while it is still in space and to return to it. The ability to do this will be necessary in future flights to distant planets. Scientists are now trying to discover if this is possible. The spaceship Astra which left the Earth for a short time ago will be travelling 300 miles into space. At a certain point, the Astra will



stop for a short time and an astronaut will attempt to leave the stationary spaceship and then return to it. We shall not know whether the experiment has been successful until we received a radio message. This first message is expected to arrive at 7 o'clock this evening. By that time the Astra will have been flying through space for 17 hours and will have circled the earth a great many times.

*Questions.*

1. What are scientists trying to do now ?

.....

2. When shall we know the result of the experiment ?

.....

*Exercise 19.*

In many places in the world today, the poor are getting poorer while the rich are getting richer and the programmes of development planning and foreign aid appear to be unable to reverse this trend. Nearly all the developing countries have a modern sector, where the patterns of living and working are not only unsatisfactory but in many cases are even getting worse.

The poor in developing countries have such limited work opportunities that they can not work their way out of their situation. There is no hope for them in the rural areas, so they drift into the big cities, which causes many social as well as economic problems. The mass migration into the cities called urbanization is one of the most serious problems facing the developing countries.

The problem can be solved quite simply by promoting economic growth outside the big cities and maximising work opportunities for the unemployed or underemployed. It is more important that everybody should produce something than that a few people should each produce a great deal.

### *Questions.*

1. Decide which sentence (s) is (are) true ?
  - a. In many less developed countries, the government has only concentrated resources and property on some sectors.
  - b. People in under developed countries are becoming poorer and poorer
  - c. According to the writer, the developing countries now have to face some serious problems.
2. What is the main cause of urbanization ?  
.....
3. What can the government do to solve the problem ?  
.....
4. What is the main idea of the passage ?  
.....

### *Exercise 20.*

#### **Thai boxing**

Boxing is popular in many countries. Two fighters wear boxing gloves on their hands. A bell rings. The boxers hit each other until one knocks out the other. Each part of the fight is 3 minutes long. It is called a round. Thai boxing is different. The boxing match begins with music from drums and flutes. Then the two fighters kneel and pray to God. Next they do a slow dance that copies the movements of Thai boxing. During this dance, each fighter tries to show the other he is best.

Then the fight begins. In Thai boxing, the fighters can kick with their feet and hit each other with the bows and knees, of course they hit with their hands too. Each round is 3 minutes long. Then the boxers have a 2 minute rest. Most boxers can fight only 5 rounds because this kind of fighting is very difficult.

Thai boxing began over 500 years ago. If a soldier lost his weapons in a battle, he needed to fight with just his body. The soldiers learned how to use all the parts of their body. In 1560, the Burmese army captured Naresuen, the king of Thailand in a war. King Naresuen was a very good boxer. He won his freedom from Burma by defeating all the best Burmese fighters. When he returned to Thai Land, his people were very proud of him. Thai boxing became a popular sport.

*Questions.*

1. What is one part of a fight called ?  
.....
2. How does a Thai boxing match begin ?  
.....
3. How is Thai boxing different from other boxing ?  
.....
4. Why did Thai soldiers learn to box ?  
.....
5. How did King Naresuen win his freedom ?  
.....

*Exercise 21.*

Camping holidays are always popular with students and young people – they are a cheap and easy way to see a country. People often travel by train, coach or on foot, so one thing is important to remember before starting : you can take with you what you can carry – usually in a rucksack on your back.

If you travel with a friend, of course, some items can be shared – a tent, a gas stove, food. Other things must be taken by each person-clothes ; foot wear, a sleeping bag. Many people who go camping for the first time take too much and then find they have

forgotten the essentials – a tin of beans is no good without a tin opener ! But with practice and good advice you can have a fantastic holiday.

*Questions.*

1. What are the usual ways of travelling on a camping holiday ?  
.....
2. How do people usually carry things with them ?  
.....
3. What are the advantages of travelling with another person ?  
.....
4. What do most people who go camping for the first time often do ?  
.....

*Exercise 22.*

Ecology is a branch of biology which studies the relationship between the organism and environment. In our times, the problem of pollution is more and more becoming international one. It is obvious that the consequences of this problem are serious. Unless urgent measures are taken pollution will undoubtedly become a danger to the problem of pollution and the environment protection must be the concern of everyone and ecology must become a global problem.

*Questions.*

1. What is ecology ?  
.....
2. What are the consequences of this problem ?  
.....

3. What is becoming the international problem ?

.....

4. What should be taken to avoid pollution ?

.....

### *Exercise 23.*

Our planet Earth is one of nine planets revolving around the sun, a fairly small and ordinary star, which lies in the outer areas of the Milky Way Galaxy. There are about 250 billion stars in our galaxy, and billions of galaxies in universe. People have always wondered about the possibility of intelligent life forms on other planets. In recent years, this has become serious scientific speculation. Some scientists believe that there must be large numbers of stars with planets which could support living intelligent beings. Perhaps we shall never know. The nearest star is 4.3 light years away. A light year is the distance covered by light (travelling at almost 300.000 kilometres a second) in one year. It would take the fastest Earth spacecraft about 40,000 years to reach the nearest star. For a number of years radio telescopes have been trying to pick up signals from outer space, so far without success. There are, however, millions of possible radio frequencies, and there is no reason why a completely alien civilization should not use a different type of communication, such as X-rays or even a type of wave we have not yet discovered. Suppose contact were made with beings 300 light years away. By the time we had send our reply, and received their response the earth would be 600 years older. It would be an interesting, but rather slow moving conversation !

### *Questions.*

1. Where is our earth ?

.....

2. How many stars are there in our galaxy ?

.....

3. What do scientists believe ?

.....

4. What is a light year ?

.....

5. How far is it from our earth to the nearest star ?

.....

#### *Exercise 24.*

For the seventh year in a row, thousands of scientists from around the world gathered last week to share their research and insights on the frustrating and fascinating disease that has challenged them for a decade. Although this year's international Conference on AIDS in Florence was less politicized than in previous years, there were some bitter demonstrations over a U.S immigration policy that bans anyone carrying the AIDS virus. There were gloomy predictions that by 1997 ; 15 million people will be infected world wide. Scientists reported that it is easier to get AIDS through heter sexual intercourse than most people think. But the conference offered good news as well : researchers now understand better why some people carrying the virus remain free of symptoms for a decade or more and new drugs hold out the promise of prolonging many lives.

AIDS will be with us for a long time to come. An estimated 8 million to 10 million people are infected right now. By 1997 newly - diagnosed cases of the disease will likely reach a plateau in the industrialized world, but transmission will explore in the developing nations. In Asia, AIDS is spreading fastest in Thailand (where an estimated 15 percent of female prostitutes are infected) and in India. During the next couple of decades in the third world,



AIDS will become the leading cause of death for adults in their most productive years.

*Questions .*

1. What is the purpose of the International conference on AIDS in Florence ?

.....

2. What is the easy way to get AIDS ?

.....

3. Why does AIDS spread quickly in Thailand ?

.....

4. How many percent of the world population will be affected by AIDS by 1997 ?

.....

*Exercise 25.*

Britain is served by a complete network of public libraries, administered by local public library authorities. These libraries have a total stock of some 115 million books (not including the libraries in publicly maintained schools).

Qualified and specialist staff are available for consultation in all but the smallest service points. About one third of the total population are members of public libraries. This lending and reference library service is, with some limitations, free.

Public libraries not only lend books, music scores and records, but also provide special libraries for, among others, children, patients in hospitals and prisoners, and they engage in many kinds of extension activities, such as play readings, lectures, film shows, and co-operation in adult education.



## Questions .

1. a. Do people have to pay to borrow books from a library ?  
.....  
b. Name some things that public libraries provide apart from books.  
.....
2. Choose the nearest meaning of the words underlined :
  - a) administered
    - a. advised      c. conducted
    - b. ordered      d. served
  - b) some
    - a. several      c. not more than
    - b. about      d. able
  - c) engage in
    - a. arrange      c. supply
    - b. control      d. take part in

## Exercise 26.

All the different plants and animals in natural community are in a state of balance. This balance is achieved by the plants and animals interacting with each other in non living surroundings. An example of a natural community is a woodland, and a woodland is usually dominated by a particular species of plant such as oak tree in an oakwood. The oak tree in this example is therefore called the dominant species but there are also many other types of plants, from algae growing on tree trunks and rocks. The plants of a community are the producers : They use carbon dioxide, oxygen, water and nitrogen to build up their tissues using energy in the form of sunlight. The plant tissues form food for the plant-eating

animals (carnivores). Thus plants produce the basic food supply for all the animals of a community. The animals themselves are the consumers and are either herbivores or carnivores.

Examples of herbivores in a woodland community are rabbits, deer, mice and snails, and insects such as aphids and caterpillars. The herbivores are sometimes eaten by the carnivores. Woodland carnivores are of all sizes from insects such as beetles and lacewings to animals such as owls, shrews and foxes. Some carnivores feed on herbivores, some feed on the smaller carnivores, while some feed on both : a tawny owl will eat beetles and shrews as well as voles and mice. These food relationships between the different members of the community are known as food chains. The links of the chain are formed by the herbivores that eat the plants and the carnivores that feed on the herbivores. There are more organisms at the base of a food chain than at the top ; for example, there are many more green plants than carnivores in a community.

### *Questions .*

Decide whether the following statements are true (T) or false (F) according to the text.

1. All the animals in a wood depend on plants for their food supply.
2. All the plants in a wood are eaten by animals.
3. Plants depend on the sun to grow.
4. Plants depend on the gases in the atmosphere to grow.
5. Some animals eat plant-eating animals and plants.

### *Exercise 27.*

Marianne Moore was born in St Louis in 1887 and graduated from Bryn Mawr college in 1909. She taught stenography for a few years and then worked as a librarian in New York. She was a member of the editorial staff of a famous literary magazine *The Dial* from 1925 to 1929. Although a book of her poems, titled

Observations, was published in America in 1924, Miss Moore has only recently received the full acclaim she deserves.

*Questions.*

1 : When did Miss Moore graduate from college ?

a : 1887

b : 1909

c : 1925

d : 1924

2 : The one profession not mentioned as being pursued by Miss Moore is that of

a : poet

b : teacher

c : scientist

d : librarian

3 : Where and when was her poem, titled Observations first published ?

.....

*Exercise 28.*

Hardly a week goes by without some advance in technology that would have seemed incredible 50 years ago. Over the past 20 years computers have completely revolutionized our lives. Yet we can expect the rate of change to accelerate rather than slow down within our lifetimes. The next 25 years will see as many changes as have been witnessed in the past 150. These developments in technology are bound to have a dramatic effect on the future of work. By 2010, new technology will have revolutionized communications. People will be transmitting messages down telephone lines that previously would have been sent by post. A

postal system which has essentially been the same since the Pharaohs will virtually disappear overnight. Once these changes are introduced, not only postmen but also clerks and secretaries will vanish in a paper - free society. All the routine tasks they perform will be carried on a tiny silicon chip. As soon as this technology is available, these people will be as obsolete as the horse and cart after the invention of the motor car. One change will make thousands, if not millions, redundant.

Even people in traditional professions, where expected knowledge has been the key, are unlikely to escape the effects of new technology. Instead of going to solicitor, you might go to a computer which is programmed with all the most up-to-date legal information. Indeed, you might even come up before a computer judge who would, in all probability, judge your case more fairly than a human counterpart. Doctors, too, will find that an electronic competitor will be able to carry out a much quicker and more accurate diagnosis and recommend more efficient courses of treatment.

In education, teachers will be largely replaced by teaching machines far more knowledgeable than any human being. What's more, most learning will take place in the home via video conferencing. Children will still go to school though, until another place is created where they can make friends and develop social skills through play.

*\* Choose the best answers to these questions.*

1. Changes :

- a. Occur daily
- b. Will deeply affect our lives
- c. Are dangerous to society
- d. Will take place five times faster than before

2. By 2010

- a. Postmen will have lost their jobs
  - b. Bookshops will have disappeared
  - c. People will no longer send letters
  - d. It will be cheaper to send messages
3. Which is not one of the writer's predictions ?
- a. Professionals won't escape change.
  - b. Doctors won't be as efficient as computers
  - c. Professionals will know less than today
  - d. Computers could make fairer judgements

### *Exercise 29.*

Scientists understand how twins are born. Now , though, they are trying to explain how being half of a biological pair influences a twin's identity. They want to know why many identical twins make similar choices even when they don't live near each other. For example , Jim Springer and Jim Lewis are identical twins. They were separated when they were only four months old. The two Jims grew up in different families and 39 years, when they finally met , they discovered some surprising similarity between them . Both men were married twice . Their first wives were both named Catherine and second wives were both named Betty! Both twins named their first sons James blue Chevrolets , and had dogs named Toy. Are all facts coincidences, or biological?

Scientists want to know what influences personality . They study pairs of identical twins who grew up in different surroundings like Jim Springer and Jim Lewis. These twins help scientists understand the connection between environment and biology . Researchers at the University of Minnesota studied 350 sets of identical twins together. They discovered many similarities in their personalities. Scientists have discovered that personality

characteristics such as friendliness , shyness and fear are not a result of environment . These characteristics are inherited

Read the passage once. then read the following statements check whether they are true (T) or false(F) .

1. Jim Springer and Jim Lewis always lived together.
2. Identical twins who grow up together help scientists understand them better.
3. John and Buell Fuller were separated at birth and did not grow up together.

\* Answer the questions

1. How are Jim Springer and Jim Lewis similar ?
2. Who did the researchers at the university of Minnesota study ?  
Why ?
3. What did the researchers learn ?

### *Exercise 30.*

The smoke that comes from a lit cigarette contains many different poisonous chemical. In the past, scientists did not think that these chemicals could harm a nonsmoker's health. Recently, though, scientists changed their opinion after they studied a large group of nonsmokers. They discovered that even nonsmokers had unhealthy amount of these toxic chemicals in their bodies. As a matter of fact, almost all of us,breathe tobacco smoke at times, whether we realize it or not. For example, we cannot avoid smoke in restaurants, hotels, and other public places. Even though many public places have "nonsmoking is permitted". It is even harder for children to avoid secondhand smoke. In the United States , nine million children under the age of five live in homes with at least one smoker . Research shows that these children are sick more often than children who live in homes where non smokers live.



damaging effects of secondhand smoke on children also continue as they grow up . The children , of smokers are more than twice as likely to develop lung cancer when they are adults as children of nonsmokers . The risk is even higher among children who live in homes where both parents smoke.

Read the passage once. Then read the statement, Check whether they are true(T) or false (F).

1. Secondhand smoke is the smoke from other people's cigarettes.

2. People do not die from secondhand smoke.

3. Children of smokers are sick more often than children of nonsmokers are.

\* Answer the questions

1. What is secondhand smoke ? Why might it harm nonsmokers ?

2. Why is it harder for children to avoid secondhand smoke than it is for adults.

3. What are some effects of second hand smoke on children ?

### **Dạng 3 : Sắp xếp các câu thành một đoạn văn hợp lý.**

1. (1) They are expecting her to arrive soon (2) The Mayor's secretary is telling him about the plans for the day. (3) The platform of portsbridge station is full of people. (4) She's going to open a new secondary school - Portsbridge Comprehensive. (5) They are waiting for an important visitor - The Queen. (6) And we will wait until we see the train. (7) She will be there soon.

2. (1) Some countries did not want to expect letters with stamps from another countries. (2) each country in the UPS agrees to accept letters with repaid postage from the other members. (3) There were still problems with international mail. (4) Finally, in 1874 a German organized the Universal Postal System. (5) Today the offices of the UPS are in Switzerland. (6) It takes care of any



international mail problems. (7) Almost every country in the world is a member of this organization.

3. (1) If a soldier lost his weapons in a battle, he needed to fight with his body. (2) Thai boxing began over 500 years ago. (3) In 1560, the Burmese army captured Naresuen, the King of Thailand, in war. (4) When he returned to Thailand, his people were very proud of him. (5) The soldiers learned how to use all the parts of their body. (6) King Naresuen was a very good boxer. (7) Thai boxing became a popular sport. (8) He won his freedom from Burma by defeating all the best Burmese fighters.

4. (1) Oscar Wilde was born on October 16th, 1854 in Dublin. (2) His tour was triumphantly successful. (3) In 1882 Wilde toured America to give lectures on English Alsthetic Movement. (4) In 1884 he got married and had two sons. (5) While in prison he wrote a very sincere and famous poem "The Ballad of Reading Goal". (6) In 1895 While was sentenced to 2 years' imprisonment for misconduct. (7) Wilde died in Paris in 1900.

5. (1) The Second World War proved more catastrophic than the First World War. (2) London was bombed, in a single air raid 1436 persons were killed. (3) National economic system and financial resources were badly affected. (4) World War II broke out in 1939. (5) By the end of the war in September 1945, England has suffered not only the loss of hundred thousands of man but the devastation of wide areas in London.

6. (1) He was born in 1865 in Bombay India. (2) At six he was taken to England and educated at an English college in North Deven. (3) Rudyard Kipling is one of the famous English writers. (4) His childhood was spent in Lochora among his Hindoo servants from whom he learned the tales and songs of Indian Folklore and Hindoo language. (5) When at school Rudyard proved to be brilliant in his story. (6) On his return to India in 1885 he brought with him the gold medal of the college for his prize story essay. (7) In 1907 he was awarded the Nobel prize for literature.

7. (1) His mother was a talented singer. (2) George Bernard Shaw was born into a middle – class family in Dublin. (3) She also taught George singing. (4) She taught music and supported the family. (5) This voice culture helped him much in his public speaking later. (6) At school, George educated himself by reading and learning foreign languages. (7) At ten he entered school and did much better than other boys.

8. (1) Lots of things such as clothes, food, planes, and cars are made in, and around London. (2) Birmingham is also an important industrial area near the centre of England. (3) London, the capital, is one of many important industrial centres. (4) Machines, cars and lorries are made in this area. (5) Manchester in the North-West of England is the centre of the cotton textile industry. (6) Birmingham is the biggest town. (7) One of Britain's most important producers of computers and electronic equipment is Manchester, too.

9. (1) Being unemployed certainly has disadvantages, but there are good things about it too. (2) You can stay in bed as long as you like. (3) Most people are much more frightened of being unemployed than they need to be. (4) And further more there is plenty of time to read the newspaper and have a leisurely breakfast. (5) To begin with, one advantage of not having a job is that you don't have to get up early and go to work in the rush hour. (6) But the best thing is that you are your own boss. (7) There's no one to tell you what to do and when to do it.

10. (1) There are not many people there. (2) The houses have no modern conveniences (3) There is a lot of fish and crabs in the sea (4) The population of the island of Iona is not large. (5) There's no electricity for electric lights and no running water (6) In the winter they have oil lamps or candles in the cottage. (7) Life on the island is very different from life in town : there are no big shops or blocks of flats or busy roads. (8) So in the summer, people are up with the sun and bed with the sun, too.

11.(1) They consist of two large islands : Great Britain and Ireland, and many small ones. (2) Great Britain is the largest island in Europe. (3) The British Isles lie in the north - west of Europe. (4) It is separated from Ireland by the Irish sea, and from the Continent by the English Channel and the Straits of Dover. (5) It includes England, Scotland and Wales. (6) Great Britain and Northern Ireland form the United Kingdom (The U.K).

12.(1) I told him to go on holidays. (2) It was a very small fishing village on the northcoast of Cornway. (3) It was a long journey, and Rob arrived late on Friday evening. (4) A friend of mine, Rob Jenkins, almost had a nervous breakdown last year. (5) He decided to go to Penquay the next weekend. (6) There were no trains or buses to Penquay, so he had to drive. (7) Mrs Doone, the landlady of the guesthouse, answered the door and showed him to his room. (8) He was very tired and slept very well. (9) He didn't wake up until 9 o'clock the next morning.

13. (1) She was carrying her handbag in one hand and a plastic carrierbag in the other. (2) They were standing in a dark shop doorway (3) The other was short and fat with a beard and moustache. (4) One night, Mrs Riley, an elderly widow was walking along a dark, London Street. (5) There was nobody else in the street except two youths. (6) One of them was very tall with fair hair.

14. (1) In Summer of 1953 Elvis paid \$4 and recorded two songs for his mother's birthday at Sam Philips' Sun Records studio. (2) His parents were very poor and Elvis never had music lessons, but he was surrounded by music from an early age. (3) Sam Philips heard Elvis and asked him to record "That's All Right" in July 1954. (4) His parents were very religious, and Elvis regularly sang at church services when he was a child. (5) Elvis Presley was born on January 8th, 1935 in Tupelo, Mississippi (6) In 1953, he left school and got a job as a truckdriver. (7) 20,000 copies were sold.

15.(1) He wanted to be an ordinary soldier (2) She became his wife 8 years later on (3) In March, 1958, Elvis had to join the army (4) In 1960 he left the army and went to Hollywood (5) He spent

the next two years in Germany, where he met Priscilla Beaulieu.  
(6) He made several films during the next few years there.

16.(1) He was very famous because he was wise and kind (2) As Abdul was walking through the market, he suddenly felt very cold. (3) He turned round and saw a tall man, dressed in black. (4) Once upon a time, there was a rich Caliph in Baghdad. (5) One morning the Caliph sent his servant, Abdul, to the market to buy some fruit. (6) The man was staring at Abdul. (7) Abdul knew that somebody was behind him.

17.(1) One drawback of being unemployed is, of course, that you haven't got much money coming in - having a job at least enables you to save a bit of money to go on holidays. (2) In fact the main trouble with being unemployed is that you have to spend so much of your time for a job. (3) Most of people are much more frightened of being unemployed because being unemployed certainly has disadvantages. (4) On the otherhand, when you are unemployed you don't need to go on holiday, because you are on holiday already.

18.(1) You can travel by lots of means of transport but planes and trains seem to be more popular than the other. (2) Travelling by plane is more comfortable, more convenient and much quicker than any other method. (3) Trains are good enough for them (4) But not everybody likes it (5) When you are on holiday and intend to go to the seaside or travel abroad as a tourist, you should first of all decide on the means of travelling (6) They enjoy the movement and excitement of railway stations, the shout of porters pulling and pushing luggage along the platforms and the sight of trains ready to start (7) Some people say they do not see very much of the country they go to.

19. (1) Prices are going up, and that makes the cost of living go up (2) Populations are going up, too (3) Everything seems to be going up these days (4) Those people whose wages and salaries go up are fortunate, they can manage, perhaps, to keep up with rising costs (5) And if the world becomes overcrowded, there may be more



wars (6) Then, when the atomic bombs drop, everything will go up in smoke and dust and it will be all up with civilization.

20.(1) In the past, teacher made children sit still for hours. (2) In other words, the children had to go on repeating things until they knew them "by heart" (3) They say they can only help children (4) Children's education is changing very rapidly today (5) Today, many teachers wonder if it is possible to make children learn at all. (6) They made them memorise all sorts of things (7) They say you must let children learn and discover things for themselves.

21.(1) Until children reach the age of 11, they have more or less the same sort of education at primary school (2) At the infant school, which the children enter at 5, reading, writing and arithmetic are taught. (3). Primary education consists of the infant school for children aged 5-7 and junior school providing for the need of children about 8-11. (4). The educational system in England is divided into three chief areas : primary, secondary and higher (5) At the junior children have the following subjects : English, Arithmetic, History, Geography, Nature study, Art and Music. (6) As the rule, children are transferred to a secondary school according to the head master's "profile" of the pupil's abilities and attitudes. (7). The junior school children are streamed, according to their abilities to learn, in to the A-B and C-streams. (8) The brightest go in to the A-stream, the less gifted are, put into the C-stream.

22.(1). Grammar schools are meeting the needs of the academically minded children. (2). Technical schools develop along special lines with a technical professional bias. (3). Under the Education Act of 1944, the following three main types of secondary schools were developed : Grammar schools, Technical schools and modern schools. (4). Their graduates have a good chance of being admitted to technical college. (5). Only 20... of all English children are allowed to go to grammar schools. (6). More science and mathematics are taught in technical schools. (7). The rest go to modern schools, which provide for their pupils an all-round

education and are supposed to enable them to develop their abilities.

23.(1) Computer's advantages can hardly be undeniable in industrial production aspect (2) Furthermore, they save time and labour (3) At first, they could be possible to make better quality and productivity than the other manual workers. (4) In summary computers help industry develop highly and very fast so the people's living standard will be better with high quality products and inexpensive price. (5) One computer can replace hundreds of workers in the same job.

24.(1) The first serious problem is unemployment. (2) It becomes a burden on the government. (3) The second difficulty is electric power. (4) Thousands of employees are out of work which is very hard to find another job (5) The last problem is related to documents. (6) Production may be halted if electric supply is cut. (7) Confidential documents can be selected by mistake or stolen or machine failure (8) Producing industrial products by using computers leads to some problems.

25.(1) The canning process, however, keeps the food last longer (2) He corked food lightly in wide-necked glass bottle and immersed them in a bath of hot water to drive out the air, then he hammered the corks down to seal the jars. (3). The principle of canning process was discovered in 1809 by a French man called Nicolas Appert. (4). By 1814 an English manufacturer had replaced Appert's glass jar with metal containers and was supplying tinned vegetable soup and meat to the British navy. (5). Appert's discovery was rewarded by the French government because better food supplies were needed for Napoleon's troops on distant Campaigns (6) Food which is kept too long decays because it is attacked by moulds and bacteria. (7) today vegetables, fish, fruit, meat and beer are canned in enormous quantities.

26.(1) They were organized for more than 600 years. (2). The modern Olympic Games began again in 1896. (3) The first Olympic Games took in Greece more than two thousands and seven hundred

years ago. (4) Then, for one thousand and five hundred years, nothing more was heard of them. (5) It was a festival of sport and of friendship. (6) For the first time in history the Olympic Games were held in a socialist country. (7) The 22nd Olympic Games of 1980 were held in Moscow.

27.(1) There were often not so many accidents on the road because everything went much slower. (2) They had to stay where they were, and if the cold was very great they probably died. (3) Even the old days travelling was not without its danger. (4) Then, if you were far from any houses, you might have to walk a long distance to get help. (5) If snow continued to fall, neither houses nor men could go any further. (6) But sometimes as the roads were so bad, a horse would fall and get hurt and the wheel of a carriage might break. (7) Furthermore in winter, there was always the danger of deep snow.

28.(1) After a month she died and Mr. Yates was alone. (2) His new wife was much younger than he was, and she liked travelling to foreign countries, so they began to go to Africa every year, in winter. (3) Mr and Mrs Yates lived together for 52 years and then she became very ill. (4) Mrs Yates had a younger daughter and she usually went with them too. (5) It was difficult for him to live in a big house without anybody else, so he married again. (6) Everybody thought, those girls are that old man's daughters.

29.(1) The girl did not like being wet, so she did not feel happy. (2) "Do you know" the lady said, "that star's much bigger than our world". (3) A lady and a small girl were getting very wet, because they were walking in the country and they were not wearing coats or carrying umbrellas. (4) The small girl thought about that for a few seconds and then she asked the lady : "Well, why does it keep the rain off us then ?". (5) Then they saw a star between 2 clouds.

30.(1) They dined wonderfully and had numerous drinks ; they danced until midnight, and there was a polished musical entertainment. (2) Then the waiter brought the bill at the end of



the evening. (3) A young man had a new girl - friend, whom he wanted to impress so he invited her to go to a world - famous restaurant with him one evening. (4) When the young man saw how much he had to pay, he was so shocked by the total that he went as white as a sheet. (5) The girl enjoyed the entire evening, and was suitably impressed by everything she saw, including several film stars (6) Then he took the bill back and added to it : "Iced water : 50p" (7) The helpful waiter, who was watching his face, thought he might be going to faint, so he quickly poured out a glass of ice-cold water and emptied it over the youngman's head.

31.(1) An hour before the time of this speech, he stopped a taxi in the street and asked the driver to take him to the BBC (2) "All right, get in" said the driver happily, opening the door of the taxi. (3) But the taxi driver, who did not recognize him, said he could not take him anywhere just then, because he wanted to go back to his home at the other end of London to hear Churchill make a speech on the radio (4) "I'll take you, and to hell with Churchill and his speech" (5) During the Second World War, Winston Churchill was the British Prime Minister (6) Churchill was so pleased to hear this answer that he gave the man a pound, which was worth quite a lot in those days. (7) One day he had to go to the British Broadcasting Corporation (the BBC) to make an important speech to the nation.

32.(1) One day he stole a battery radio set (2) It went on and on, so the man hit it with a hammer (3) She called her husband and said, "They're having the funeral of that politician you killed last night" (4) There was a robber who lived in a distant area (5) It stopped and they went to bed (6) He and his wife had never seen one before and were surprised to hear a political speech in their own language. (7) In the morning, the wife heard religious song coming from the radio, which was not badly damaged

33.(1) One of the villagers thought he would be very clever. (2) The night of the feast arrived. (3) The tap on the barrel was opened but what came out was pure water (4) Some villagers were going

to celebrate an important wine festival in a few days time, so they borrowed a huge barrel from the nearest town, put it in the village square, and determined that each of them should empty a bottle of the best wine he had into it, so that there should be plenty at the feast. (5) If I pour a bottle of water in, instead of wine, no one will notice it because there was so much excellent wine in the barrel, that the water will be lost in it". He said to himself (6) Every one in the village had had the same idea (7) Everybody gathered in the village square with their jugs and their glasses for the wine.

34.(1). So one evening, she was giving her small daughter her small tea before putting her to bed. (2). She asked for some jam on her bread as well. (3). the young mother believed that it was very wrong to waste any food when there were so many hungry people in the world. (4) First she gave a slice of fresh brown bread and butter but the child said that she did not want it like that. (5). Then she said to her mother kindly "Aren't you pleased that you've come to live with us now". (6) Her mother looked at her for a few seconds and then said, "When I was a small girl like you, Lucy, I was always given either bread and butter, or bread and jam, but never bread with butter and jam." (7). Lucy looked at her mother for a few moments with pity in her eyes.

35.(1) He did not know what he would like to do, but one of his uncles had worked for the government for thirty years, and he advised George to try to get a job of the same kind. (2) When George had been working there for a few weeks his uncle came to visit the family one Saturday evening. (3). One of his questions was, "And how many people work in your department, George". (4). He found his uncle's advice very interesting so he went for examination one day. (5). When George finished his studies at the University, he began to look around for a job.

(6) He was delighted that his nephew had managed to get a job working for the government, and he asked him a lot of questions about it. (7). The young man thought for a moment and then

answered, "About half of them, Uncle Tim." (8). He was successful and his first job was in a large government office in London.

36.(1). The owner of the company which sold the air-conditioning came to see him, and he saw Mr Hodge's house, he thought that he might be able to persuade him to buy some air-conditioning for that too. (2). But Mr Hodge was not interested. (3). Mr Hodge was a chicken farmer. (4) So he decided to put air-conditioning into his chicken-house so that the hens would lay well all through the year and he could get more eggs and in that way earn more money. (5). "Your wife would be much happier and more comfortable then", he said to Mr Hodge. (6) He had hundreds of chickens, and sold the eggs and the meat and got quite a lot of money for them, but he lived in a very hot part of the country. (7). "My wife doesn't lay eggs" he said. (8) He found that his hens laid hardly any eggs in the summer.

37.(1) One night one of the prisoners was invited to have a meal and a drink with the family of the farmer he was working for, so he came back to the prison very late. (2). There is a prison in Iceland which allows its prisoners to go out without any guards to work everyday. (3). If they do not promise this, they are not let out. (4). He had to knock at the gate several times before the guard came to let him in. (5). Before they are allowed to go out like this, they have to promise to come back every evening. (6). The guard did not like being disturbed at this time, so he said to the prisoner angrily, "If you come back so late again. I won't let you in". (7) They work on a farm near the prison during the day, and come back to have their evening meal and to sleep every evening.

38.(1) She liked drinking tea so Mary ordered an electric machine which made the tea and then woke her up in the morning. (2) Then her mother opened the package. (3) After a few days, Mary's mother rang up and said : "Perhaps I'm being rather silly, but there's one thing I'm confused about : Why do I have to go to bed to make the tea ?". (4) Mary's mother was nearly seventy, and

Mary and her husband wanted to give the old lady a nice birthday present. (5) She wrapped it up in pretty paper and brought it to her mother on her birthday. (6) Mary showed her how to use it. (7) "Before you go to bed, put the tea in the pot and the water in the kettle and don't forget to switch the electricity on. Then, when you wake up in the morning, your tea will be ready ?".

39.(1) When he was still very young, his family moved to the naval port of Chatham and here Charles and his eldest sister first went to school. (2) His mother, sister and brother all went there to live with his father in prison. (3) He is said to have been "a terrible boy to read". (4) In 1822, things went from bad to worse : his father was arrested for debt and consigned to the prison. (5) But Charles left school and worked in a blacking warehouse where he was employed to stick labels on bottles of shoe polish. (6) Charles Dickens is one of the greatest writers in English literature but he had a hard childhood. (7) He read the novels of Defoe, Fielding, Smollet, etc and the translations of some European and other authors with eagerness. (8) He was born at Portsea from a lower middle class family in 1812.

40.(1) His father was a well - to do English official in Calcutta, India. (2) While a student Thackeray took a great fancy to drawing and writing verses and spent much time for these activities. (3) In Germany he became acquainted with Goethe, and this meeting left a deep impression on him. (4) He was born in a prosperous middle class family. (5) William Makepeace Thackeray is one of the greatest representatives of Critical in English literature of the 19th century (6) After graduating from the Chasterhouse school, he entered Cambridge University. (7) As he intended to become an artist he left University without graduating and went to Germany, Italy and France to study art. (8) When the boy was six years old, he was taken to England to be educated at Chasterhouse school.

41.(1) They were on their way to Pucallpa, another town in Perle (2) Forty-five minutes later, the plane broke up in a storm



and Juliana felt 3,000 metres strapped in her seat. (3) They went there to spent Christmas with Juliana's father. (4) She wasn't killed when the seat hit the ground (perhaps because trees broke her fall), but she lay all night unconscious. (5) The next morning Julliana looked for pieces of the plane and called for her mother. (6) On Christmas Eve 1971, Juliana Koepke, a 17-year old German girl left Lima by air with her mother. (7) Nobody answered and she found nothing except a small plastic bag of sweets.

42.(1) Stories are told of his absence of mind. (2) His friends waited for a long time, but neither the host nor the wine appeared. (3) Newton's was usually so full of ideas and problems that he was often quite lost in thought. (4) He forgot the wine, the dinner and his guests. (5) Once, when he was entertaining some guests at dinner, he went out of the room to fetch some more wine. (6) At last they went to look for him. (7) And they found him working in his study.

43.(1) They ordered their lunch, and asked for 2 bottles of a well-known soft drink while they were waiting. (2) They were chattering away and drinking and one of them finished the first glass and poured another. (3) She tried to get it out and finally succeeded. (4) Two old ladies stopped at a restaurant to have lunch. (5) The bottles were made of green glass and they each poured themselves a glass. (6) She noticed something in the bottom of the bottle, but couldn't make out what it was. (7) They away fainted and had to be revived. (8) It was a decomposed mouse.

44.(1) Initially, some languages that started from the same parents develop their own uniqueness after groups of speakers drifted away from one another to establish isolated independent communities. (2) All languages change as the experience of their speakers changes. (3) Another major cause of language change is the influence of, and interaction with other cultures, often as a result of military conquest. (4) There are many reasons why languages change but three main causes help illustrate the concept (5) A last cause for change is rapidly expanding technology and

new system of communication. (6) They bring all cultures and languages into closer contact with borrowings between languages, a common phenomenon in the contemporary world.

45.(1) They came because of economic and political problems in their countries in 1800s (2) The blacks had no freedom, they were slaves. (3) They came to live in North America because they wanted religious freedom (4) In 1700s and early 1800s there was one group who were forced to come to the United States, where they worked on the large farms in the South (5) The first immigrants came to North America in the 1600s, from Northern European countries such as England and Holland. (6) They were black Africans (7) In the 1800s many Chinese and Irish immigrants came to the United States.

46.(1) Ethnic restaurants and supermarkets are common places in the USA (2) Health food gained popularity when people began to think more seriously about their physical well-being (3) Fastfood restaurants are now expanding rapidly all over the country because in the US, speed is a very important factor. (4) Any large American city is filled with restaurants serving international cooking (5) Now American people have many different alternatives to choose from : various ethnic food, health food and fast food (6) Healthfood is fresh, natural, unprocessed food (7) Fastfood restaurants are places which take care of hundreds of people in a short time.

47.(1) Some may have an image of an American product such as a big car or a hamburger (2) And in the United States, people are proud of the beautiful scene (3) When people from other countries think about the US, they probably have many different ideas. (4) Other may think of American institutions such as universities. (5) They are also proud of the political freedom they have in this country, but some are concerned about American involvement in other countries.

## KEY

EX1. 3 5 1 4 2 7 6	EX2. 3 1 4 2 5 7 6
EX3. 2 1 5 3 6 8 4 7	EX4. 1 3 2 4 6 5 7
EX5. 4 1 2 5 3	EX6. 3 1 4 2 5 6 7
EX7. 2 1 4 3 5 7 6	EX8. 3 1 6 2 4 5 7
EX9. 3 1 5 2 4 6 7	EX10. 4 1 7 3 2 5 8 6
EX11. 3 1 2 5 4 6	EX12. 4 1 5 2 6 3 7 8 9
EX13. 4 1 5 2 6 3	EX14. 5 2 4 6 1 3 7
EX15. 3 1 5 2 4 6	EX16. 4 1 5 2 7 3 6
EX17. 3 1 4 2	EX18. 5 1 2 4 7 3 6
EX19. 3 1 4 2 5 6	EX20. 4 1 6 2 5 3 7
EX21. 4 1 3 2 5 7 8 6	EX22. 3 1 5 2 6 4 7
EX23. 1 3 2 5 4	EX24. 8 1 4 2 3 6 5 7
EX25. 6 1 3 2 5 4 7	EX26. 3 1 4 2 7 6 5
EX27. 3 1 6 4 7 5 2	EX28. 3 1 5 2 4 6
EX29. 3 1 5 2 4	EX30. 3 1 5 2 4 7 6
EX31. 5 7 1 3 6 2 4	EX32. 4 1 6 2 5 7 3
EX33. 4 1 5 2 7 3 6	EX34. 3 1 4 2 6 7 5
EX35. 5 1 4 8 2 6 3 7	EX36. 3 6 8 4 15 27
EX37. 2 7 5 3 14 6	EX38. 4 1 5 2 6 7 3
EX39. 6 8 1 3 7 4 2 5	EX40. 5 4 1 8 6 2 7 3
EX41. 6 1 3 2 4 5 7	EX42. 3 1 5 2 6 7 4
EX43. 4 1 5 2 6 3 8 7	EX44. 4 1 3 5 6 2
EX45. 5 3 4 6 2 7 1	EX46. 5 1 4 2 6 3 7
EX47. 3 1 4 2 5	



**Dạng 4 : Sắp xếp lại các câu trong bài hội thoại sao cho bài hội thoại có ý nghĩa.**

1. a. Yes ?

b. What's the time ?

c. Anna.

d. Thank you. Does your watch keep good time ?

e. It's one o'clock. Look !

f. Of course, it does. I check it every day.

g. OK. Let's go.

2. a. All right.

b. Would you tell her to call back ?

c. Hello. David Black speaking. May I have a word with Jane ?

d. Certainly.

e. Hang on a minute.

f. 15014.

g. I think she's going shopping.

3. a. There's been an increase in prices. The price of everything has gone up.

b. I've given you enough .

c. One, please.

d. But it only cost six pence yesterday.

e. An ice cream costs eight pence.

f. Sorry. You haven't given me enough money.

4. a. But you get a lot of rain there, don't you ?

b. Have you lived in Edinburgh all your life ?

c. No, we usually go abroad for our holiday – either to Spain or Italy.

- d. Not so much as people think. We have more hour of sunshine in the summer than many other places in Britain.
  - e. No, I was born in Highlands, not far from Aberden. Have you ever been to the Highlands ?
  - f. There are many beautiful parts of Britain that you should see when you have a holiday there.
- 5.
- a. Yes, it looks very nice indeed.
  - b. Because I'm happy. You're helping your father.
  - c. But how are you going to get out of the room ?
  - d. Do you want a cup of tea ?
  - e. Why are you smiling, mother ?
  - f. We're going to paint this room very quickly.
  - g. Yes, please, but I can't hold it. I've got a brush in one hand and a can of paint in the other.
  - h. What do you mean ? Oh, dear, yes. The paint is still wet. I can't get out.
- 6.
- a. I've got an idea. Take off your shirt.
  - b. Watch. We can use our shirts instead of sails.
  - c. The wind blows the sails down.
  - d. Now we can reach the shore.
  - e. This storm is very bad.
  - f. What a good idea ! I'll put my shirt up, too.
  - g. Yes, the sky was blue a few minutes ago.
  - h. Oh, dear. It's sweeping us away from the shore. What can we do ?
  - i. What are you going to do ?

7. a. Yes, I'd love to. And we shall go to the General Store. They usually have good materials.  
b. Oh, much better, thanks.  
c. Oh, good, I'm glad. Look ! Would you like to come out with me this morning and buy some curtain materials?  
d. How do you feel now ? How is your cold ?  
e. Oh ! Hello, Joan. Come in. No, I am not busy.
8. a. I'm a teacher.  
b. And do your students find the programmes very interesting ?  
c. Well, the class and I watch the programme first and then we discuss it.  
d. What do you do ?  
e. Yes, I think so. I mean I think they like them very much.  
f. I'm a teacher.  
g. Do you ? How ?  
h. English as a foreign language and Business Studies.  
I use your programmes a lot.  
i. Which subject do you teach ?
9. a. Eight. Hurry up or you'll be late.  
b. What ? Yes, what's the time ?  
c. Tracy, are you up yet ?  
d. Quarter past what ?  
e. All right.  
f. Quarter past
10. a. I'm fine.  
b. Hello, John.  
c. How are you ?  
d. Well, here's my bus. Bye, Mary.

- e. Hello, Mary.
  - f. Fine, thanks. And you ?
  - g. Goodbye, John. See you.
1. a. Please
- b. Uhm... just a tonic water.
  - c. Ice and lemon.
  - d. Would you like another drink ?
  - e. Yes, please.
  - f. What would you like ?
2. a. Oh, yes, I have written two pages already.
- b. Hello, Charles. I haven't seen you all day. What have you been doing ?
  - c. Only two ?
  - d. Actually, I have been working on my first novel.
  - e. Well yes - I quite haven't decided yet what will happen next.
  - f. Oh yes, how far have you got with it ?
  - g. Have you started writing it yet ?
  - h. Well, I have thought of a good title, and I have made a list of characters, and I have designed the front cover.
3. a. Well, there were too many people and there was too much noise.
- b. Did you like it ?
  - c. Are you ? Oh ! I lived in London five years ago.
  - d. Hi ! I've got a new job. I'm going to live in London.
  - e. Not very much.
  - f. Why not ?
4. a. Look, Toby's bringing back the shoe.
- b. What Toby. He's very clever.
  - c. Oh dear, this is a new shoe.

- d. It's his shoe.
  - e. He's a silly dog.
  - f. What are you doing with that old shoe ?
  - g. And look at that man. Why is he angry with us ?
  - h. No, he isn't. Watch him.
15. a. Excuse me !
- b. That's right. The post office is at the side of the shops.  
There's a big market on the other side of it.
  - c. Where is the post office, please ?
  - d. Yes ?
  - e. Are the same shops near the gardens ?
  - f. It's in Fir Avenue - near the flower gardens.
16. a. Would you like something in the front Stalls ?
- b. Can I help you ?
  - c. What a pity !
  - d. No, I'm afraid that's all there is.
  - e. I'd like to book two seats for tonight.
  - f. I suppose there's not anything cheaper, is there ?
17. a. Me too.
- b. Did you have a good journey ?
  - c. Hello, nice to see you again.
  - d. Oh, no. I went alone.
  - e. Thank you. I've got wonderful days in the beach.
  - f. Was your husband with you ?
18. a. Yes, we are looking for a watch. It's for me.
- b. Oh, I think it's too big for me.
  - c. I see, what price are you interested in ?
  - d. Can I help you, Madam ?

- e. The price doesn't matter. But it must be a gold watch.
- f. Here I've one. Is it very nice ?
19. a. Simon, have you already packed yet ? The taxi will be here in 20 minutes.
- b. Passport and ticket ?
- c. I think so. I can't think of anything else.
- d. They're in my pocket. There's nothing else but my toilet bag. I'll use that after I have a shower.
- e. No, no. I've packed those.
- f. But you might to forget something : ties, socks, etc.
20. a. I suppose it's just a cold.
- b. fine, thanks, and you ?
- c. I'm sorry to hear that. What's the matter ?
- d. Not very well, I'm afraid.
- e. Well, I hope you'll soon get rid of it.
- g. How are you today ?
21. a. Take the RR to 34<sup>th</sup> Street, then change the D train go to Rockefeller Centre.
- b. Can I help you ?
- c. Go down the stairs over there ?
- d. Thank you.
- e. What platform is it on ?
- g. How do I get Rockefeller Centre ?
22. a. Yes, we're catching the 8.30 train.
- b. Thanks. Same to you.
- c. Thanks. I'll send you a card the moment we arrive there .
- d. So you are off to Weymouth on Sunday ?
- e. I hope you'll have a nice holiday and a good rest.
- g. Well, all the best if I don't see you before you leave.

23. a. Let me see what's available.  
b. That's fine. What time do I have to be at the airport ?  
c. I want to fly to Chicago on Thursday.  
d. I want to go by coach, I prefer the morning flight..  
e. Check in the time is 8.45.  
g. United's flight 102 leave at 9.20.
24. a. Could I have one for tomorrow morning ?  
b. \$ 19 a day \$ 102 a week, unlimited mileage.  
c. Good. Now just complete this form.  
d. How much is it to rent an economical car ?  
e. Sure. Here it is.  
g. Do you have your driver's licence ?
25. a. TWA has a flight leaving at 9.25.  
b. I'd like to book a reservation to Los Angeles for next week  
c. You have to be there half an hour before departure time.  
d. I guess it's O.K. What time should I check in ?  
e. I'll need an economy with an open return.  
g. Just a second and I'll check the schedule.
26. a. Oh, how long have you been here ?  
b. Why haven't I seen you ?  
c. Are you a new student ?  
d. As long as you.  
e. I've been ill.  
g. No, I'm not.
27. a. Do you want me to check the tires ?  
b. \$10.  
c. Thank you.  
d. No, that's all for now. What does it come to ?



- e. Fill it up with regular, please.
  - g. You want to fill gasoline ?
- 8.
- a. I'd like to travel first class.
  - b. Please be there at 9.00 at the latest.
  - c. We have a nonstop leaving at 9.25
  - d. One moment, please. I'll find what's available.
  - e. What flight do you have from New York to London ?
  - g. When should I get to the airport ?
- 9.
- a. What's the rate for a station wagon ?
  - b. Can I see your licence, please ?
  - c. That's fine. Fill out this form and let me see your credit card please.
  - d. Good. I'll take it right now if possible.
  - e. Of course. I have my own licence and an international licence.
  - g. The daily rate is \$ 3200 plus \$39 per mile.
- 10.
- a. You needn't shout. I'm not deaf.
  - b. Pardon ?
  - c. That's all right. I just didn't understand. What does foreigner mean ?
  - d. Are you a foreigner ?
  - e. Are you a foreigner ?
  - g. Oh, I'm sorry.
- 11.
- a. Let's see. That would be \$ 40 000 plus 38 per mile.
  - b. Do you have valid licence ?
  - c. If I wanted to rent a van, how much would it take ?
  - d. Fine, now complete this form.
  - e. That's sound O.K. I need it from 10th to 14 th.
  - g. Yes, here.

32. a. I'm living in California now. I'm here on holiday.  
b. Good heaven. It's you, Nick Jenkins, isn't it ?  
c. Oh, for about 2 years.  
d. Steward, I haven't seen you since we left school.  
e. Well, well, well...  
g. Oh, California ? How long have you been living there ?
33. a. It's really different from what I expected.  
b. I'm very glad to meet you.  
c. Don't worry. You'll get used to it in no time.  
d. Mary. This's Joe's brother, David.  
e. How do you live in Texas so far ?  
g. It's a pleasure to meet you.
34. a. I can give you one \$ 20,000 a day, 158,000 a week.  
b. May I see your driver's licence ?  
c. Please reserve one for next Tuesday.  
d. How much is it to rent a mid-size car?  
e. O.K. You have to use a credit card or leave a deposit.  
g. Yes, It's right here.
35. a. Hm, yes, thanks, Tracy. And you ? What have you beer doing ?  
b. All afternoon.  
c. Hello, Adam... did you have a good day ?  
d. I have been writing Christmas cards.  
e. All afternoon ? How many have you written ?  
g. You look tired. How long have you been doing that ?  
h. About 200 and I haven't finished yet.
36. a. How do you do, Pierre Dubois ?  
b. What's your personal impression of the United States ?

- c. Hello.
  - d. Well, I can't get over how different the weather is here.
  - e. Mrs Smith, I'd like to introduce a friend of mine, Pierre Dubois.
  - g. Oh, you'll get used to it soon.
37. a. What do you find of Dallas ?
- b. Hi, Sam.
  - c. Well, I'm still feeling a little homesick and so many things seem strange to me.
  - d. How do you do ?
  - e. You are bound to feel that way first, I guess.
  - g. Wendy, I'd like to introduce my brother Sam.
38. a. She is a nurse, isn't she ?
- b. What's her nationality ?
  - c. Oh, yes. We went to school together.
  - d. Well, she was born in France. But now she's an American.
  - e. Do you know Roni Duval ?
  - g. No, she's a doctor.
39. a. I'm calling to say good bye.
- b. I'm catching the 1 o'clock train.
  - c. Allo, I'm hearing.
  - d. Good bye. Thanks again for everything.
  - e. Take care of yourself and don't forget to keep in touch.
  - g. When do you leave ?
40. a. So soon ? Why don't you stay any longer ?
- b. Thank you for a wonderful meal.
  - c. Oh, it's a shame that you have to leave now.
  - d. I really must be going now.

- e. I'm glad you enjoy it.
  - g. I wish I could but it's already late.
41. a. What ? Already ? I want you to have more coffee.
- b. I'm sorry, I wish you could stay here.
  - c. I think it's about time I had to go.
  - d. Thank you for a very nice party.
  - e. I'd love to have it, but I have to get up early tomorrow.
  - g. I hope you can come again soon.
42. a. But you just got here. Can you stay any longer ?
- b. Thanks very much. It was a great party.
  - c. I really should be on my way.
  - d. That's very nice of you but I have to leave now.
  - e. Well, I'm sorry you have to leave so early.
  - g. It was a pleasure.
43. a. Take care of yourself and give my best to your parents.
- b. What time are you going to leave ?
  - c. Goodbye. Hope to see you again next year.
  - d. I just drop in to say goodbye.
  - e. By the way, don't forget to keep in touch with me.
  - g. I'm going to travel by 10.00.
44. a. The theatre ! Do you often go there ?
- b. Well, I don't often have time. I'm afraid. However, I'm sure Janet would like to go.
  - c. Yes, every fortnight. What about you ?
  - d. Oh, hello, Mike. I've got to meet Mary. We are off to the theatre.
  - e. Look. There is a good comedy next week. Shall I book seats for you next Saturday ?
  - g. Hello, Jack. What's the rush ?

h. That's a good idea. I'll ask Janet and ring you tomorrow.

i. Fine. I must fly now. Bye.

j. Bye.

45. a. You look happy !

b. Oh, doesn't it ? May be you are right. But it's so difficult.

c. I'm not really sure. I'd like the Metro but I like the Fiesta, too. Which do you think I should buy ?

d. I am. I have just decided to buy a new car.

e. Why ?

g. Oh, If I were you, I would get the Fiesta.

h. Oh, that is fantastic. My congratulation ! What kind of car are you thinking of buying ?

i. Well, that's the problem. I was going to buy a Metro.

j. Well, it's cheaper than the Metro and anyway, it has got a nice name. Fiesta means party in Spain.

k. What's wrong with that ?

46. a. I've already cleaned it.

b. I'm bored.

c. What, for example ?

d. I've already brushed them.

e. Why don't you clean your room ?

g. Well, perfect your English !

h. Hwmm.

i. Wash your hair.

j. Well, do something.

k. Brush your shoes.

l. I've already washed it.

17. a. That's all right. What was wrong with you ?

b. You had had to set the alarm clock, hadn't you ?

- c. Thanks. I need it this morning.
  - d. Oh, I stayed up late again.
  - e. Good morning, Ben. Sorry I'm late.
  - g. Yes. I ran to the station, but when I got there, the train had already left
48. a. What did you have then ?
- b. Because you have egg on your chin.
  - c. Egg.
  - d. I know what you had for breakfast this morning.
  - e. Well you are wrong. I had egg yesterday.
  - g. How do you know ?
49. a. Oh, it's all right really. I knew something must have happened. I couldn't ring you.
- b. Don't be silly. Of course I wasn't put out. Still I hope you have got a good excuse for leaving me standing outside the cinema.
  - c. Oh, I'm very sorry Anna. But I got trouble last night.
  - d. Hospital.
  - e. The car broken down ? Then an accident ? Where are you ringing from now ?
  - g. You must have been very angry then.
  - h. Which hospital ? I'll come to see you right now !
  - i. Hello, John, I'm glad you've rung. I've been worried about you. You didn't turn up last night. What happened ?
  - j. My car broken down and then I got an accident.
50. a. Thanks. Lovely day. Pity I'm on duty.
- b. Cigarette, Tony ?
  - c. Of course, I am. Take Jill up the mountains, or some thing.

- d. Go on. Go off and have a good time . Here, you can have the Mini if you like.
  - e. Sorry here.
  - g. But... are you sure, Henry ?
  - h. Oh...er... thanks, Henry...Mm, do you have a light ?
  - i. I'll stand in for you if you like. I've got nothing else to do.
  - j. Not a word. Bye, Tony, enjoy yourself.
  - k. That's ever so good of you, Henry. Oh, you...er...you won't tell anyone, will you ... ? I mean, I am on duty.
  - l. Oh, no, I couldn't possibly...
51. a. Oh, where's that ?
- b. I come from Wimslow.
  - c. It's a small town near Manchester.
  - d. Where do you come from, Susan ?
  - e. Hello, my name's Tom Wrigley. I'm from Sydney Australia.
  - g. Please to meet you, Tom. I'm Susan Kenedy.
52. a. Oh, yes. We enjoyed ourselves very much.
- b. Oh ! We've just got back from holiday.
  - c. Hello,Julie. You look very brave. Where have you been ?
  - d. Yes, we've gone to Kenya.
  - e. Come and have a drink and tell me all about it.
  - g. Kenya ? Do you like it ?
  - h. Where have you gone ? Somewhere nice ?
53. a. No, I'm a business man
- b. Is this your first visit to England ?
  - c. I'm working for an oil company. I'm an engineer.
  - d. You are here on holiday, John ?
  - e. No, It isn't. I've been here before. I was in London last year.



- g. On business ? What do you do ?
54. a. Well, I've been there before !
- b. On the train ?
- c. What kind of feeling ?
- d. Good morning, Glen. You don't look very well. What's wrong ?
- e. Been there before ?
- g. Yes, I was reading the paper when I suddenly got a strange feeling.
- h. On that train. In the same seat, at the same time, with the same people.
- i. Oh. I'm O.K. I had a strange experience on the train this morning.
55. a. Of course. I'd love to.
- b. I don't know. I don't want to stay in tonight. I'm tired of staying in.
- c. Shall we go ?
- d. Oh, I may go to the cinema, I may go to the disco. I have not decided yet.
- e. What are you doing tonight, Pamela ?
- g. There is a new James Bond's film in town, John.
56. a. What did you do there ?
- b. No, I've gone up the North for a month.
- c. Glasgow, I came back the day before yesterday.
- d. Where were you ?
- e. We haven't seen you for ages. Have you been ill ?
- g. I went to visit my aunt.
57. a. Sorry, but he was fully booked till eleven.
- b. Hello, Mr Black's secretary listening !

- c. Would ten to one be convenient ?
  - d. Thank you.
  - e. Will Mr. Black be able to see me at about 9.15 tomorrow ?
  - g. Yes, It would be then.
58. a. Can I see it please ?
- b. Yes, but only on the top floor.
  - c. \$4.50 with service and T.V
  - d. Certainly. Would you like to follow me ?
  - e. How much is it ?
  - g. I wonder if you have a vacant room for two nights.
59. a. Oh, here's your key. Room 16.
- b. Oh, where are the stairs ?
  - c. Four floors up.
  - d. On the right.
  - e. A lift, no, there isn't.
  - g. How long are you staying ? How many nights ?
  - h. Oh, where is it ?
  - i. Oh... one night. I'm staying one night.
  - j. Is there a lift ?
60. a. Yes, it is. Where's the porter ?
- b. I'm going to the taxi now.
  - c. Thank you.
  - d. Porter !
  - e. Mr. King ! Your taxi is there, outside the hotel.
  - g. Yes, sir. The porter is coming.
  - h. Is that your suitcase ?
61. a. Yes?
- b. Yes, I am. For the New York plane.

- c. No, I haven't. But I'm not going to New York. I'm waiting for the plane from New York. A friend is coming on it.
  - d. Are you waiting for a plane ?
  - e. Well, have you got a ticket ? Have you got a passport ?
  - g. Excuse me !
62. a. For that letter ?
- b. Yes.
  - c. Good morning, Miss Snow.
  - d. Where is the letter going ?
  - e. 11p, please.
  - g. Good morning, can I buy a stamp here ?
  - h. To New York.
63. a. Can you tell me about it, please ? I mean, what's in the room ?
- b. And how much is the rent ?
  - c. Hello, I'm phoning about the bedsitter.
  - d. Sixty-four Marston Street. We're very near Camden High Street.
  - e. Well, there's a bed in it, of course. And there are two chairs and... Wh... and there's a table in it and ...
  - g. The rent ? Fifteen pounds a week.
  - h. Oh, yes.
  - i. And where is it ? What's your address, I mean.
64. a. I know her.
- b. Excuse me. Do you live here ?
  - c. Janet Snow lives here, do you know her ?
  - d. Yes, she is ! She lives under me. She lives in the flat on the second floor.
  - e. Do you ? Well, is she American ?

- g. Oh, thanks, I've got a letter for her but I can't see her name on the post box.
- h. Yes, I do. I live on the third floor.
65. a. She leaves at nine.
- b. Hmm. When does she have lunch ?
- c. Usually at one.
- d. All right, Lucky. You watch this girl everyday. When does she leave her flat in the morning ?
- e. Every morning ?
- g. No, sometimes she doesn't have lunch at all.
- h. No. Not on Saturday or Sunday.
- i. Usually ? Not always ?
66. a. In which flat ? In your flat ?
- b. No, you don't understand ! I can't see Mr. Sutton ! I can see a man in his flat. I can't see him through the window.
- c. Who ? Mr. Sutton ?
- d. And the man isn't Mr. Sutton ?
- e. No ! I don't live in the flat. I mean, there isn't a burglar in my flat but in Mr. Sutton's flat. I can see him now.
- g. No, he isn't.
- h. There's a burglar in the flat.
67. a. All right. What do you want to see ?
- b. Well, " The Last Bridge" is on at the Odean here in Camden Town.
- c. Let's go to the cinema this evening.
- d. I don't know, what about you ?
- e. That's right.
- g. I don't like war films. I never go to them.
- h. It's a war film, isn't it ?

68. a. Yes, what do you want to know ?  
 b. When do you want to go ?  
 c. I see. Well, in May and June the fare is 235. But it's less in March and April. It's only 220.  
 d. Well, first of all, we want to know the fare. The air fare, of course.  
 e. I don't really know. In July, or perhaps in June.  
 g. I'd like some information, please. We want to go to Los Angeles.  
 h. And what about July ?
69. a. Where did you go to school, Frank ?  
 b. Well, you know, I was ... alright. Not good. Not bad.  
 c. Were you good at them ?  
 d. Which subject ?  
 e. In Manchester. I was born there.  
 g. Yes, did you study maths ? Any foreign languages ? What ?  
 h. of couse not  
 i. Which subjects did you study ?  
 j. Do you mind if I ask you some questions ?  
 k. Yes, I studied maths and French.
70. a. Worried about Janet ? Why ? What's the matter with her ?  
 b. Well, you see, we had a date last night. I mean, we wanted to see a film. But she didn't come. And I couldn't phone her.  
 c. Oh, hello Terry. How are things ?  
 d. I don't know.  
 e. I'm alright, but I'm worried about Janet.  
 g. I'm sorry, Terry. I don't understand. What... What do you mean ?  
 h. Hello, Anna. This is Terry.

71. a. Yes, madam. Which train ? Where are you going ?  
b. Yes, that's right. When's the next train to Bournemouth, please ?  
c. Yes, madam. There's a buffet car on the train.  
d. Good afternoon. I'd like some information about the train, please.  
e. So your question is " When's the next train to Bournemouth", is that right ?  
g. At half past four. That's in about a minute.  
h. To Bournemouth. You see, I have a sister there and...  
i. Thank you very much. Oh ! Can I get something to eat on the train ? I find that a cup of tea and sandwich always help my nerves.
72. a. What ? You mean, sell my sports car ? Never !  
b. Don't you remember ? You had some troubles last week just before we got married and it was in garage for a whole week !  
c. That was only because it was so cold ! It's a wonderful engine. Just listen to it when I start it now !  
d. Jan... Why don't we get a small family car ?  
e. It's a very good car, and I never have any trouble with it !  
g. This is a wonderful car ! It always starts first time !  
h. But it's expensive to run and it's old. You bought it long before I met you. When did you get it ?  
i. It didn't start first time yesterday morning !
73. a. Er... that reminds me... did I tell you about the party, darling ?  
b. Yes, I'm afraid so. So we need some beer and wine and cheese for tomorrow evening.

- c. Well ... er ... you see, there's a tradition at the College. When a teacher buys a house, he has to ... you know, so do I !
  - d. Well ... I suppose I forgot. I'm terribly sorry. I really am.
  - e. We spent \$12 last week. \$12 ! That's too much !
  - g. What ? Tomorrow evening ! Why didn't you tell me this before ?
  - h. Party ? What party ?
  - i. Has to give a party ? Is that what you are going to say ?
74. a. Certainly. Er ... I can't find my pen and there isn't one on the desk.
- b. Good evening. My name's Tigers. I believe you have a room reserved for me.
  - c. Of course. Here you are. How long do you intend to stay, Mr. Tigers ?
  - d. I'm not sure. It all depends. But I'm probably going to leave on Thursday.
  - e. Just a moment, Mr. Tigers. Let's see ... Tigers ... yes, Mr Tigers, room 204. Would you fill in this form, please ?
75. a. I'm afraid I have a complaint. It's this pullover. I've only had it for two months and it's already worn out.
- b. For only two months. Since Christmas, in fact. Look, here's the receipt.
  - c. Well, I'm sorry. I'm sure it isn't my fault it's already worn out.
  - d. Worn out ? May I see it ?
  - e. Can I help you, Madam ?
  - g. And how long do you say you've had it ?
  - h. Thank you. This is very strange. we've been selling this particular make for years and we haven't had any complaints in all that time.



- i. Yes, here you are. Look at the sleeves. They're the worst part. Do you see ? They've worn out very badly.
76. a. What ? You mean you're going to be late again ?
- b. Don't worry. You won't have to wait long. I'll be there at 8.
- c. I know... and it starts at 8.30. We'll just have to miss it this evening, that's all. We'll be able to see it some other time.
- d. Allo, is that you, Jim ? This is Julia. Look ... I'm afraid I won't be able to meet you at seven this evening. I'll have to come later.
- e. Now, listen, Jim, please. It isn't my fault. I'll have to work late this evening and then I'll have to go home. I can't possibly go to the restaurant straight from work !
- g. At 8 ? But we're going to see a film after dinner. Remember ?
- h. Oh. No, we won't ! Tonight's the last night !
- i. It's always something, isn't it ? When will you be able to come, then ?
77. a. I'm afraid there's something wrong with the car. I've just noticed that it's been using a lot of petrol lately ; far more than usual.
- b. I certainly hope not. I want to use the car this evening. Do you think I'll be able to ? I mean, will it be ready by then ?
- c. Around 5 ? Alright.
- d. I suppose I'll have to. Do you think it might be something serious ?
- e. Good morning, Mrs. Jagers. What can we do for you ?
- g. It might be. It all depends on what the trouble is. Do you think you could give us a ring a round 5 ? We'll know by then.
- h. Oh, well, we'd better have a look at it, then, hadn't we ? Can you leave the car with us now ?

- i. I shouldn't think so. You never know, of course. It might be the engine.
78. a. Oh, good. Would you look at my watch ? It's stopped.  
b. Good. When will it be ready ?  
c. Excuse me. Do you do watch-repair ?  
d. Only yesterday. Can you do anything about it ?  
e. This time next week. No, you'll need a receipt.  
g. Yes, we do, madam.  
h. Certainly. Hmm ... when did it stop ?  
i. I think so. Just leave it with me.
79. a. Yes, I know I have. I'm very sorry. You see, I have these terrible headaches and ...  
b. Yes. I'm very sorry about that. You see, my alarm clock didn't go off and ...  
c. Er ... Well ... I have headaches and trouble ;with my stomach you see. That's why I've been absent so often.  
d. You've already missed far too many lessons this term, Miss Grey.  
e. Your alarm clock ? But you told me yesterday that the bus had broken down !  
g. Headache ? Only last week you said you had with your stomach !  
h. And you often come to college late as well. Yesterday for instance, you ...  
i. Oh, did I ? Well ... er ... I suppose I just forgot to say that my alarm clock didn't go off.
80. a. How long have you had it ?  
b. Good afternoon. Can I help you ?  
c. Well, try these tablets. Take two with water every hour.  
d. Yes, I've got a terrible headache.

- e. Thank you very much.
  - g. Good afternoon.
  - h. Only about two or three hours.
31. a. Is that all, sir ?
- b. Please.
  - c. Could I have a tube of toothpaste, please ?
  - d. With fluoride, please.
  - e. Shall I put it in a bag ?
  - g. Good afternoon.
  - h. With fluoride or without fluoride ?
32. a. How long will it take ?
- b. Shall I pay now or later ?
  - c. Good evening.
  - d. Oh, I'll come back later.
  - e. Certainly. Would you like to wait ?
  - g. It will be ready in twenty minutes.
  - h. Alright, sir.
  - i. Good evening. Can you make up this prescription, please ?
  - j. Later'll be all right.
33. a. And the wine ... it tastes sweet, and I asked for dry !
- b. But they are fresh, sir.
  - c. Waiter ! These vegetables aren't fresh !
  - d. I'm sorry, sir .... but ...
  - e. I'll get the manager, sir.
  - g. Well, they don't taste fresh for me.
34. a. Really ? it wasn't expensive ... it was second hand.
- b. Do you ?

- c. Wasn't it ? it doesn't look second-hand, it looks brand-new.
  - d. Yes, it looks very expensive.
  - e. I like your fur coat, Helen.
  - g. Oh, doesn't it ! I'm really suprised to know that.
85. a. There ! Is it cool enough for you to drink now ?
- b. I can't finish it. It's much too hot for me to drink.
  - c. I don't like white coffee
  - d. Come on, Susan ! Hurry up ! Drink your coffee ! The train's leaving in a minute. We'll be there !
  - e. Yes, but it tastes awful !
  - g. Why don't you put some milk in ?
86. a. Basil Caraway.
- b. Oh, which sister ? Andrea ?
  - c. Married ! But she isn't old enough to get married. She's only seventeen ! Who's she going to marry ?
  - d. I know ... but she loves him.
  - e. Oh, Michael, ...I didn't tell you. My sister phoned yesterday.
  - g. Yes, she wants to get married.
  - h. Basil Caraway ! I don't believe it ! He's much too old for her. He's over sixty.
87. a. Well, I haven't got my passport , but I've got my driving licence. Will that be alright ?
- b. Yes, My name's Davies. I'm expecting some money from my bank in Tokyo.
  - c. Let me see. Ah, yes, Davies. 200 dollars from the Royal Bank of Japan, Tokyo. Have you got any identification, sir ?
  - d. Good morning. Can I help you ?
  - e. By telex.
  - g. Yes, sir. That'll be all right.
  - h. By post, cable, or telex, sir ?

8. a. Good. How much is that ?  
b. What's the exchange rate ?  
c. I'd like to buy this ... but I haven't got enough cash with me.  
Do you take travellers cheques ?  
d. I'm not sure, sir ... I'll go and check.  
e. It's 30  
g. Certainly, sir.
9. a. Flight 179 to New York ... are you going there ?  
b. Excuse me...  
c. Yes ?  
d. Yes.  
e. So am I ... Gate 4's this way ... follow me !  
g. I didn't hear that announcement. Which flight did they call ?
10. a. Yes, sir. May I see your ticket, and your passport ?  
b. 23 kilos. I'm sorry, but you have to pay an excess baggage charge.  
c. Here you are.  
d. Yes, sir ... that's 6 dollars thank you. Would you go through to departure lounge ?  
e. That's fine. Can you put your suitcase on the scale, please ?  
g. Oh ! It's only three kilos overweight.  
h. Of course. How much does it weigh ?  
i. Can I check in here for the British Airway flight to New York?
1. a. Oh, that's all right, Mrs Green.  
b. Did you enjoy yourselves ?  
c. Sorry, I'm late ...  
d. Oh, congratulation !

- e. Oh, yes, we had a very good time. We had two bottles of champagne.
  - g. Thank you. It was our first wedding anniversary. We went to that new restaurant in the High Street
92. a. "The Godfather". It's about the Mafia in America. John told me to read it.
- b. How many pages have you read ?
  - c. Neither do I.
  - d. It's a very long book.
  - e. What are you reading ?
  - g. About 400. I don't like long books.
  - h. I knew. I've been reading for a month, and I haven't finished it yet !
93. a. Ah, how much have you saved ?
- b. What can I do for you, Mr. Carson ?
  - c. What for ?
  - d. Thank you.
  - e. I've saved about a thousand pounds.
  - g. Come in. You are Mr. Carson, aren't you ? Please sit down
  - h. I want to buy a car. I have been saving for two years.
  - i. Well, I want to borrow some money.
94. a. Please ... fill it up.
- b. Four stars. It's nearly empty. I've been driving all day.
  - c. About 400 miles. I've driven from Scotland.
  - d. Please.
  - e. Which grades ?
  - g. Oh, how far have you driven ?
  - h. Oh, that's long way. Shall I check the oil and water ?
  - i. Petrol, sir ?

95. a. Yes, sir. There are a few seats left.  
b. Shall I pay you now ?  
c. That's right.  
d. Approximately ten hours, sir.  
e. Is that the one that goes to Oxford as well ?  
g. If you don't mind, sir.  
h. Have you got any seats left for the Straford excursion ?  
i. How long does the whole excursion take ?
96. a. Thank you.  
b. Yes, I've got an appointment with Mrs. Truman, the Sale Manager.  
c. Right. Go up those stairs to the first floor. Take the corridor on the left. Mr. Truman's office is on the third floor on the right. You can't miss it.  
d. Good morning. Can I help you ?  
e. Oh, sir, don't bother to knock. Go straight in . She's expecting you.  
g. Half past eleven.  
h. What time is your appointment, sir ?
97. a. No, I'm afraid it isn't. You're going the wrong way. This is the Portsmouth Road.  
b. The A 272 ?  
c. Oh, dear. Can you tell me the way to Brighton ?  
d. Excuse me !  
e. Yes, turn round and go back to the roundabout. Take the third exit ... that's A 272.  
g. Yes?  
h. That's right. You'll see signposts to Brighton from there.  
i. I'm lost ! Is this the way to Brighton ?



98. a. Oh, Can you show me the garage ?  
b. You can pay me now.  
c. That's not necessary. I've got a spare can of petrol in my truck.  
d. Yes, that's O.K.  
e. Hold on ... I can't find my cheque book !  
g. Shall I pay you now, or shall I come to the garage ?  
h. Will you take a cheque ? I've run out of cash, too.  
i. It's nothing serious, sir. You've run out of petrol.

99. a. Where ?  
b. Which factory, sir ?  
c. Police, here.  
d. Just outside the factory gates.  
e. Energy. Which service, please ?  
g. Police.  
h. Croxeley Engineering ... in Brook Lane ...  
i. I've just seen two cars crash into a security van. I think it's a robbery.

100. a. May I suggest something ?  
b. English wine ?  
c. Yes ... we'd like a bottle of dry wine.  
d. Of course.  
e. Yes, it isn't very well-known, but it's being produced in the south of England now. You'll be surprised it's very good.  
g. Would you like to see the wine list ?  
h. Why don't you try a bottle of English wine ?

# KEY

- |                           |                            |                          |
|---------------------------|----------------------------|--------------------------|
| . c a b e d f g.          | 2. f c e a g b d.          | 3. c f b e d a.          |
| . b e c f a d.            | 5. e b f a d g c h.        | 6. e g c h a i b f d.    |
| . e d b c a.              | 8. d a i h g c b e.        | 9. c b f d a e.          |
| 0. b e c f a d g.         | 11. d a f b c e.           | 12. b d f h g a c e.     |
| 3. d c b e f a.           | 14 b e h f a c g d.        | 15. a d c f e b.         |
| 6. b e a f d c.           | 17. c a b e f d.           | 18. d a c e f b.         |
| 9. a c f e b d.           | 20. g b d c a e.           | 21. b g a e c d.         |
| 2. d a e c g b.           | 23. c a d g b e.           | 24. b d a g e c.         |
| 5. b g e a d c.           | 26. c g a d b e.           | 27. g e a d b c.         |
| 8. e d a c g b.           | 29. a g d b e c.           | 30. e b d a g c.         |
| 1. c a e b g d.           | 32. b d a g c e.           | 33. d b g e a c.         |
| 4. d a c b g e.           | 35. c a d g b e h.         | 36. e a c b d g.         |
| 7. g b d c a e            | 38. e c b d a g.           | 39. c a g b e d.         |
| 0. d a g c b e.           | 41. c a e b d g.           | 42. c a d e b g.         |
| 3. d b g a c e.           | 44. g d a c b e h i j.     | 45. a d h c g e j b k i. |
| 6. b j c i l k d e a g h. | 47. e a d b g c.           | 48. d a c g b e.         |
| 9. i c a g b j e d h.     | 50. b h e a i l d g c k j. | 51. e g d b a c.         |
| 2. c b h d g a e          | 53. d a g c b e.           | 54. d i b g c a e h.     |
| 5. e b d g c a.           | 56. e b d c a g.           | 57. b e a c g d.         |
| 8. g b e c a d.           | 59. g i a h c j e b d.     | 60. e c h a d b g.       |
| 1. g a d b e c.           | 62. c g a b d h e.         | 63. c h a e i d b g.     |
| 4 b h c a e d g.          |                            | 65. d a e h b c i g.     |
| 6. h a e c b d g.         | 67. c a d b h e g.         | 68. h a d b e c i g.     |
| 9. j h a e i d g k c b.   | 70. h c e a d g b.         | 71. d a h e b g c.       |
| 2. d a h e b g i c.       | 73. e a h c i o g d.       | 74. b e a c d            |

- |                      |                        |                      |
|----------------------|------------------------|----------------------|
| 75. e a d i g b h c  | 76. d a e i b g c h.   | 77. e a h d i b g c. |
| 78 c g a h d i b e.  | 79. d a g c h b e i.   | 80. g b d a h c e.   |
| 81. g c h d e b a.   | 82. c i e a g h b j d. | 83. c b g d a e.     |
| 84. e b b d a c g.   | 85. d b g c a e.       | 86. e b g c a h d.   |
| 87. d b h e c a g.   | 88. c g a e b d        | 89. b c g a d e      |
| 90. i a c c h b g d  | 91. c a d g b e        | 92. e a d h b g c    |
| 93. g d b i c h a e  | 94. i a e b g c h d    | 95. h a e c i d b g. |
| 96. d b h g c a e.   | 97. d g i a c e b h.   | 98. i a c g b h d e  |
| 99. e g c i a d b h. | 100. g c a d h b e.    |                      |

## Dạng 5 :Đọc và dịch đoạn văn sang tiếng Việt

### Exercise 1.

Read the story and translate "from along time ago..." to "...him try " into Vietnamese.

### The boy with the best idea

A long, long time ago a man with an elephant came to a village. This was the first time the people of the village had seen an elephant, and they wanted to know the weight of the elephant. But everybody had different ideas about it. Each of them said that he was right and the others were wrong.

They tried to think of a plan by which they could know how much the elephant weighed. But they could not find any.

Then a boy said, "I have a plan and I can tell you how much the elephant weighs" ; please let me try it.

The people of the village did not want to listen to the boy." How can he find a plan when we, old people, can not ?" they said. But they decided to let him try.

The boy first told them to put the elephant in a big boat. The boy then made a mark on the side of the boat where the water reached. Then he told them to take the elephant out of the boat, and the boat rose in the water.

After that, he collected some large stones and told the people to put them in the boat. The boat began to go down again till at last the water came up to the mark on the side. This showed that the stones in the boat were of the same weight as the elephant.

It was then very easy to weigh the stones. So the people knew how much the elephant weighed.

### *Exercise 2.*

*Read the passage and translate it into Vietnamese*

Over the past few years relations between Vietnam and member countries of the Association of Southeast Asian Nations (ASEAN) have improved notably. (ASEAN members are Brunei, Indonesia, the Philippines, Singapore and Thailand.) The Vietnamese Prime Minister, Vo Van Kiet, has visited all six countries, and the General Secretary, Do Muoi, has visited Singapore and Thailand. In the past few months a number of heads of governments from ASEAN have reciprocated, arriving in Vietnam on goodwill visits, and to discuss government business and the signing of a number of important agreements, including some major joint-venture contracts.

The ASEAN Secretary-General, Ajit Singh, arrived in Hanoi in late February for talks with Vietnam's Foreign Minister, Nguyen Manh Cam, to determine the appropriate timetable for Vietnam to become a full member of ASEAN. Vietnam now has observer status in ASEAN, which has allowed it to be present at ASEAN ministerial meetings over the past two years. ASEAN ministers will probably consider Vietnam's membership when they meet later in July to discuss regional security.

### *Exercise 3.*

*Read the passage and translate from "In the past..." to "area farmers" into Vietnamese.*

In the past few years, the International Centre For Tropical Agriculture in the Coli Colombia has been working to help small farmers. The centre known as CIAS has trained 58 people to help in development of local seed industry in Central America and South America. Ario Garai is head of the Seed Unit at CIAS. He said that scientists have developed improved crops that fit people in developing countries. But he said the small village farmers can not get the seed. Large Seed Company can not earn enough money supplying seed for village farmers, so these farmers have to plant the same seed their fathers and grandfathers planted, or they buy whatever they can find at the local market. They are often not sure what kind of seed they are getting there. Researchers decided they will train the farmers to provide their own seed. The program has a cooperative effort. It involves farmers, NGOs, and National Groups. They test, choose, and market their seed, they take the best seed from their own crops and supply them to other farmers in immediate areas. For example, 8 years ago, 23 farmers joined together in South Colombia. In the first year, they produced 8,000 kilograms of seed for area farmers. Now they supply more than 30,000 kilograms of seed each year. In Sutoludit Guatemala, farmers plant 36,000 kilograms of seed each year, the seed come from a group of 42 local farmers. These are not given way program, the cooperative farming groups sell their seed and they earn good prices because their seed produces good crops. Farmers in villages involved in the project no longer have to take chances when they buy seed. they can get best seed for local growing conditions. The seed comes from both local and imported plants. Farmers trained by the International Centre For Tropical Agriculture earn money and learn how to improve seed production. Because of the CIAS efforts, many other farmers in Central and South American now can get seed to produce much better crops.

#### Exercise 4.

*Read the passage and translate from "Lately..." to "for parties"*

### Halloween

Lately, I've been wishing I were back home. Today is October 31st. It's Halloween in the United States ! Halloween is my favourite holiday of the year. But, here I am ,three thousand miles away from New York City-my city.

My name is Mark, and I am an art student in Italy . I have been living and studying in Italy for almost a year. I usually enjoy being in Italy ,but today I have been feeling very homesick .I am missing all the fun back home in the United States.

On Halloween, people really have a good time .Children dress up in all different kinds of costumes. They go to neighbours houses and say," Trick or treat". The neighbours give them a "treat"-usually candy, apples, or pennies . A lot of adults enjoy wearing customs, too. They often put them on for parties .

In New York City, where I come from, there is a Halloween parade. This parade has been taking place every year since 1970 in New York City's Greenwich Village, an area, traditionally, many artists have lived and worked. People dress up in all sorts of wonderful, creative, funny costumes and join the parade. Sometimes, two or three people wear one costume together. One year, I saw several people dressed up as one huge, pink elephant !Many people spend a lot of time planning and making their costumes. I miss seeing all the people marching through the Greenwich Village streets and along Firth Avenue in their costumes. Traditionally , the most popular disguises on Halloween were no longer ,a long time ago, people believed that the spirits of the dead walked the earth on October 31st. Halloween was originally a religious holiday that began in Ireland and Scotland in the year 1,000 BC. First, it was a Celtic holiday, and later, a Christian one.

Nowadays, in the United States, Halloween no longer has a religious meaning for most people. Americans have been



celebrating Halloween for over one hundred years, ever since the Irish and Scottish settlers brought their traditions with them. The majority of Americans do not know much about the history of the holiday. For most people, Halloween is just a day to have a lot of fun and go a little bit crazy.

If I were back home in New York now, I'd put on a wild costume and go to Halloween parade. But the fact is that I am here in Florence, Italy. So I won't put on costume, but I will do a painting of Halloween in New York. In this way, I can share my favourite holiday with my Italian friends.

#### *Exercise 5.*

*Read the passage and translate from "Football..." to "...at university" into Vietnamese.*

Football is a very old game. The ancient Romans, Chinese and Mexicans all played games where men kicked a ball. For the Romans it was a war game, in which two teams of soldiers would use whatever force was necessary to get the ball across either of two defended lines. The Roman Empire has long since vanished, but the violent pastime of legionaries has continued – and can still be quite violent !

In the Middle Ages, some kind of football was popular in Italy, France, England and Scotland, but it was such a dangerous game that kings actually banned it, and for 300 years it suffered greatly from official disapproval. Nevertheless, in 1613, King James VI of Scotland and I of England permitted himself to be entertained in an English village with "music and football match", and, a few years later, the English dictator Oliver Cromwell played football when he was at university.

By the end of the 18th century, however, the game was in real danger of dying out in Western Europe. Curiously enough, it was the English "public" school that saved it from extinction. The rich young men at these schools (which were in fact private rather than public) had nowhere to hunt, fish, ride or otherwise use up their



energies ; all they could do outside school hours was kick a ball in the schools' open spaces. They played the game that kings had banned, and each school slowly began to evolve its own special style and rules.

In 1863, the Football Association approved a game that outlawed carrying and kept the ball at men's feet. The game still had a long way to go, however, before it would be the soccer watched by millions around the world on television during the World Cup. Whole teams would rush back and forward on the field with ball kept close at their feet ; there were no passes or long kicks, and some of the rules used in those days were still nearer rugby than soccer. By the early 1870s, however, the fast exciting and open game of modern Association football was beginning to appear. The goal became standard, with a hard crossbar instead of a long piece of tape, and the goal-keeper was given his own personal set of rules. In the process, soccer changed irrevocably from gentleman's weekend exercise to the greatest spectator sport in the history of the human race.

#### Exercise 6.

*Read the passage and translate it into Vietnamese.*

Recently the World Health Organization announced that the disease of smallpox has almost been wiped out in most parts of the world, thanks to widespread vaccination. Most people are vaccinated at least once in their lives and if they wish to travel from one country to another they must be able to show a certificate proving that they have had a recent vaccination. In this way the disease has been prevented from spreading and today one seldom hears of it at all.

This is mainly due to the remarkable discovery made by a country doctor, Edward Jenner, in about 1798 when he published an account of his experiments in a new method called "vaccination" (from Latin word "vacca" meaning a cow). Jenner discovered that

people who worked with cattle, like milkmaids and cowmen, were often infected with a harmless disease called cowpox which they caught from the cattle ; but these people never seemed to get smallpox. So he experimented by making a scratch on arms which became sore for a day or two, they soon healed and none of these people ever got smallpox.

Soon the news of the wonderful discovery spread abroad and people rushed to their doctors to be vaccinated. In America, at Gibraltar, in Spain, Egypt and China the simple scratch of the arms was performed on thousands of people, and the terrible smallpox began to disappear.

### *Exercise 7.*

*Read the passage and translate from "Two years..." to "... of the family" into Vietnamese.*

Two years ago, the Vietnamese papillar pig became a popular family pet in US. The pig was known to be tiny. Report said that a grown Vietnamese papillar pig will weigh no more than 2.7 kgs. The report also said the pig was very gentle and could live inside the house. Many people bought one. Today there are more than 20,000 pigs in the country. But the World Trip Journal Newspaper explains that is more than a story :

Aitomans lives in eastern state of Cansoveinia. Two years ago, she bought a pig from a company in Middle western state. Mrs Aitomans paid \$1,200 for it. When the pig arrived at her house, it weighed only a little more than 2 kilograms. The new owner named the tiny animal Amaly. She kept it in a bed, normally used for baby. But Amaly soon started to grow. In less than a year and a half she weighed more than 56 kilograms( ! ) and she was no more gentle. Aitomans said the pig began attacking her. When she intended to wash the pig, it moved so fast that Ms. Aitomans was fallen. Amaly now weighs 79 kilograms. Mrs Aitomans phoned the company that sold pigs to protest and she called for claim its public

about the pig. But she can not say goodbye to Amaly because the pig is like a member of the family.

Jim Reddy is a church leader in western Texas. He bought a papillar pig, too. But Mr. Reddy knew that he made a mistake soon after he bought it. The pig made a mess throughout the house. It damaged property and it made noise like a farm pig. Mr Reddy returned his new pet a few days later.

Jenny Winslow is met in California. Her one tiny pig Ketches now weighs 136 kgs. Ms Winslow said she tried reducing the amount of food she gave Ketches, but Ketches protested by running around the house, making a lot of noise so Ms Winslow said she again is giving Ketches what she likes to eat. The pig eats butter, icecream, and anything she wants.

#### *Exercise 8.*

*Read the passage and translate from "The Prime Minister ..." to "...have escalated " into Vietnamese.*

#### **Talks on Cambodian border disputes**

The Prime Minister, Vo Van Kiet, visited Cambodia's co-Prime Minister, Prince Norodom Ranariddh and Hun Sen, concerning bilateral problems. These talks followed a visit to Cambodia by Vietnam's Foreign Minister in February. At the heart of the border disputes between the two countries is a treaty signed in 1980 and valid for 20 years. The treaty outlines, for example, cooperation over borders and crossborder trade but since Vietnam withdrew from its occupation of Cambodia in 1989, almost a decade after the treaty was signed, border disagreements, as well as hostilities mounted against the Vietnamese living in Cambodia, have escalated.

The two countries agreed during the April talks to set up a technical committee to demarcate their common border, and may appoint a technical group to deal with the problem of Vietnamese immigrants in Cambodia. It is estimated that some 5,000 Vietnamese have taken refuge on the border and are waiting to

return to their houses around Tonle Sap Lake after fleeing from attacks by the Khmer Rouge in the run-up to the national elections in Cambodia in May 1993. But despite these advances, violence continues : in less than a week after the Vietnamese Prime Minister's visit to Cambodia, 12 ethnic Vietnamese were murdered and another 23 injured in a gun and grenade massacre south-east of Phnom Penh. The recent carnage is the worst in Cambodia since the series of bloody pogroms instigated by the Khmer Rouge last year, when more than 100 ethnic Vietnamese were killed in the run-up to the national elections. The recent build-up in the strength of the Khmer Rouge may bode ill for ethnic Vietnamese in Cambodia.

### *Exercise 9.*

*Read the passage and translate from "Any object..." to "...of money " into Vietnamese.*

Any object that is used as money may be called commodity money. But in order to understand a money object more clearly, we should ask, 'What was it used for ? If we answer this question, we will discover the function or purpose of the money object.

Nowadays the uses of money are mostly economic. There are four economic functions which are usually given in the beginnings of elementary textbooks on banking or commerce. But in the past the use of money was not limited to these four economic functions. There were other equally important functions which were social, religious, magical or simply decorative. Sometimes the economic function was specialised and restricted to buying slaves or paying the bride price. We should try to understand those people and their money objects as they were, and not from the point of view of modern economic functions of money.

In addition to the functions of money, we should look at its qualities. What were the various forms of money like ? Were they light ? heavy ? countable ? decorative ? beautiful ? useful ? portable ? hard to get ? Perhaps they combined some of these

qualities. But one thing is certain. They were fully acceptable as payment which could be used to make further payments, otherwise they could not be called money.

Finally, it is of interest to note the country of origin of the money and the extent of the area where it was acceptable. Was it special-purpose local money ? Or was it general-purpose regional money ?

### *Exercise 10.*

*Read the passage and translate from "The great..." to "...the world" into Vietnamese.*

## **Victory Day**

The Great Patriotic War ended in May, 1945. That spring day of May 9 went down in the history of our country as Victory Day. It is celebrated by meetings and marches. People bring flowers to the monuments where war heroes lie. War veterans tell young people how they fought during the war to defend their socialist country.

Victory was won at a high price. The Soviet people had to fight against the fascists from the White Sea in the north to the Black Sea in the south. They defended Moscow and Volgograd and thousands of other towns and villages. They helped the people of many other countries to become free from fascism. The heroic Soviet people not only defended their own country, but they saved the world.

But Victory Day is not only a day to remember those who did not come back from the war. It is a day to be proud of all progressive people who took an active part in winning the victory over the fascists and helped the Soviet Army.

At the same time, on Victory Day we not only remember the past. We must think about the future and defend peace. The Soviet peace programme calls all people of the world to fight actively against war.



### *Exercise 11.*

*Read the passage and translate from the beginning to "extravaganzas" into Vietnamese.*

For the first half of the 20th century the cinema dominated all other forms of popular entertainment in the world. During the heyday of the 'movie theatre' or the 'picture house' – as the Americans and British variously called their cinema halls – millions of people throughout the world developed the habit (almost the addiction) of going to see a film at least once a week. This was the golden age of Hollywood, film capital of both the United States and the world.

The first silent films (in black and white, of course) were shown during the 1890s as part of music-hall entertainment, taking turns along with various live acts such as singers, dancers, and magicians. Such films were simply to give the audience a thrill ; the vision of a huge locomotive racing towards you out of the screen usually produced the effect that both the promoter and the audience desired. Indeed, this thrill element continues to be very significant in movies, as is witnessed by the demand for more and more spectacular ' special effects' in various science-fiction extravaganzas.

A Frenchman, Georges Melies, created the first actual story-related movies around 1900 and the first American story film was *The Great Train Robbery* in 1903. From then until 1914, American and European film-makers were more or less equal, but after the outbreak of the First World War Europeans had other more pressing concerns, and far away in California, near the city of Los Angeles, the film-makers of the New World went ahead on their own, producing first the talkies and then technicolor. Many European countries (including France, Britain, Russia and Germany) have continued to make films, but they have never really managed to catch up with the lead that Hollywood established during and after the Great War.





### *Exercise 13.*

*Read the passage and translate it into Vietnamese.*

The weather is something no one can control ; It affects everyone, rich or poor, young or old in every part of the world. Maybe that is why there are so many expressions about the weather, especially about rain. Sometimes when you need rain, you do not get any. Other times you get rain when you do not want it. Take a baseball game for example, a sudden rain storm can halt an exciting game sending the players and the 20,000 persons watching the game running or cover. If the game does not continue, people who bought tickets are given rain checks. There are special tickets that will let them see a later game for free. Rain check now means a second chance of something. Often a rain check has nothing to do with rain. Stores may offer rain checks when they sell all of a product, a television set, for example, at a special low price. After all TV sets are gone, the store gives rain checks to people who wanted to buy one. The rain check allows a person to buy the TV set later at the same low price after the store receives more from the factory. Rain check is also used in social situations. It is a way of accepting an invitation but for a time. You may ask for a rain check if you are invited to a friend's house for dinner, but cannot be there. You say " I'd love to join you for dinner but I'm busy. Could I have a rain check ? " You are asking in other words if you could join your friend for dinner at another time.

### *Exercise 14.*

*Read the passage and translate from "An Indian ..." to "...and trains" into Vietnamese.*

#### **Food Transportation**

An Indian boy ran swiftly from a village in Mexico. In his hand he carried a basket of fish. Only a few moments before, they had been pulled from the cold water of the lake. Farther on, another runner was waiting to take the basket from the tired boy and race

on. And so from one swift runner to another, fresh fish were rushed from the lake to the dinner table of Montezuma, ruler of Aztecs.

Speed is important in transporting fish and many other fresh foods. Foods that spoil easily must reach the market and the dinner table as quickly as possible. But now fast trucks, trains, ships, and planes can replace runners.

Planes are the fastest way to carry food. They are especially useful in carrying food to people and animals that could not be reached otherwise. Suppose there were a flood or an earthquake and the people could not be reached by trains or trucks. Then packages of food could be dropped from planes to save them from starvation.

But air transportation is usually the most expensive way of carrying food. And so within a country most perishable foods—foods that spoil easily — are carried by trucks and trains.

Trucks have many advantages. A truck can start as soon as it is loaded, and it can deliver goods direct to the market. Many modern trucks have their own refrigeration systems. Today the tank truck that carries milk is a familiar sight on many country roads. The farmer no longer sets his milk cans by the side of the road to be taken to town by horse and wagon. Instead, a modern cooled tank truck drives up to the farm several times a week. The milk from the farmers cooling tank flows through a pipe into truck. There it keeps cool and sweet until it is delivered to stores and homes.

Trains cannot always carry food as quickly as trucks. Many cars must be loaded before a train can start on a trip. And when the train arrives in the city, the food must be unloaded from the cars onto trucks to be taken to the market. All of this takes time. When railroad companies wanted to move perishable foods faster, they developed a plan that works like this : refrigerated trailers are put in flat cars that run on the rails. When the train arrives at the

city, the trailers are unloaded and attached to trucks. Some companies now have truck and freight-car combinations.

**Exercise 15.**

*Read and translate the passage into Vietnamese.*

**Solar Energy Systems**

The basic purpose of any solar energy system is to collect solar radiation and convert it into useful thermal energy. System performance depends on several factors, including availability of solar energy, the ambient air temperature, the characteristics of the energy requirement, and especially the thermal characteristics of the solar system itself. Solar collection systems for heating or cooling are usually classified as passive or active. Passive systems collect and distribute solar energy without the use of an auxiliary energy source. They depend upon the building design and the thermal characteristics of the materials used.

Active systems, on the other hand, consist of components which are to a large extent independent of the building design and often require an auxiliary energy source for transporting the solar energy collected to its point of use. Active systems are more easily applied to existing buildings.

**Exercise 16.**

*Read the passage and translate from the beginning to " ...in an ecosystem ".*

**Ecosystem**

An ecosystem consists of a number of living organisms and their physical environment. The living organisms and their non-living environment are interrelated and interact with each other. There is a flow of energy from the non-living organisms to the living organisms. There are a number of materials cycles - that is exchanges of materials between living and non-living parts. When we study an ecosystem we can therefore analyse its components

(the structure of the ecosystem) and we can analyse its processes (the functions in the ecosystem).

There are six major components in an ecosystem.

1. Inorganic substances such as carbon, nitrogen, oxygen, water, carbon dioxide, etc.

2. Organic compounds such as proteins, carbonhydrates etc. The organic and inorganic substances in an ecosystem regulate the work of the whole system.

3. Climate and other physical factors. Temperature, wind, light and rain are important physical factors. They affect all the processes in an ecosystem.

4. Producers. Only green plants are able to manufacture food from simple inorganic substances. In the process known as photosynthesis, green plants in the light of the sun combine carbon dioxide and water and produce carbonhydrates.

5. Consumers. Consumers obtain their energy from green plants. Herbivores, such as cows and sheep, eat green plants but do not eat other animals. They are called primary consumers. Carnivores, such as dogs and cats, feed on other animals and are called secondary consumers.

6. Decomposers, such as bacteria and fungi. Decomposers break down the tissues and excretions of other organisms. Bacteria break down the flesh of dead animals. Fungi break down plant material. They enable chemical substances to return to the physical environment.

### *Exercise 17.*

*Read the text and translate from the beginning to "... in the world " into Vietnamese.*

### **English**

Today, when English is one of the major languages in the world, it requires an effort of the imagination to realize that this is a

relatively recent thing that in Shakespeare's time, for example, only a few million people spoke English, and the language was not thought to be very important by the other nations of Europe, and was unknown to the rest of the world.

English has become a world language because of its establishment as a mother tongue outside England, in all the continents of the world. This exporting of English began in the seventeenth century, with the first settlements in North America. Above all, it is the great growth of population in the United States, assisted by massive immigration in the nineteenth and twentieth centuries, that has given the English language its present standing in the world.

People who speak English fall into one of three groups : those who have learned it as their native language ; those who have learned it as a second language in a society that is mainly bilingual ; and those who are forced to use it for a practical purpose administrative, professional or educational. One person in seven of the world's entire population belongs to one of these three groups. Incredibly enough, 75% of the world's mail and 60% of the world's telephone calls are in English.

### *Exercise 18.*

*Read the passage and translate from "An ecosystem..." to "...in the forest" into Vietnamese.*

### **Development and Evolution**

An ecosystem exists in a state of equilibrium. It can support a certain number of plants and animals of different species. When the population of one animal increases, there will be a change in the ecosystem. There will not be enough food and water for all the animals. Consequently, some will die. The system will return to its state of equilibrium. The ecosystem regulates itself in the same way as a thermostat regulates the temperature in a heating system.

Ecosystems are not static - they change all the time. Plants and animals are able to adapt to changes in the physical environment



is possible to predict changes. For example, when fire destroys the vegetation in a region, there will be certain changes. First grass and some flowers will grow. Then insects will appear. The wind will blow the seeds of small trees. These trees will grow and birds will appear. As the trees grow, the grass will disappear and a dense forest will develop. Some trees cannot live in a dense forest and will die. Other trees will develop and a community of birds and animals will live in the forest.

During long periods of time ecosystems evolve. The evolution of an ecosystem is caused by factors inside and outside it. Consider the evolution of the atmosphere. When life began on earth, the atmosphere contained nitrogen, hydrogen and other gases but no oxygen. There was no ozone in the atmosphere. Consequently, the sun's rays prevented life from developing on land. The first living organisms developed under the sea. After the evolution of photosynthesis, the oxygen in the atmosphere increased and life expanded. Complex living organisms developed. As the oxygen in the atmosphere increased, a layer of ozone was formed. Life was then possible on the surface of the earth. Life on earth depends on the equilibrium of the atmosphere. There is now a danger that man-made pollution will destroy the equilibrium.

#### *Exercise 19.*

*Read and translate the passage into Vietnamese.*

### **London**

London is the British capital and one of the biggest cities in the world.

The oldest part of London is called the City. It is small, but it is very important. Two thousand years ago a town was built here. For hundred of years people lived and worked there, but now many of the old houses have gone. Thousands of people come here every morning to work in large offices.

To the east is the large area called the East End. This is London's poorest part, where people of all colours live. The very

large riverside docks in the East End make London one of the three largest ports in the world.

To the west are the fine shops and theatres of the area known as West End. This part is best known to rich tourists. Oxford Street with its great department stores is the favourite street for shopping. In the West End there are beautiful parks, too. The largest of all London's parks is Hyde Park.

The Houses of Parliament are along the bank of the Thames river and Parliament Square is one of many London squares. Some of them are small, others are large and busy, like Trafalgar Square.

#### *Exercise 20.*

*Read the passage and translate from "With 57 ..." to "...British society" into Vietnamese.*

Britain forms the greater part of the British Isles, which lie off the north-west coast of mainland Europe. Its area is 242,400 square km(93,600 sq miles), half the size of France. Its weather is changeable, but there are few extremes of temperature, Britain is a major world producer of oil, natural gas and coal. Since 1980 it has been self-sufficient in energy in net terms.

With 57 million people Britain ranks sixteenth in the world in term of population. England, Wales, Scotland and Northern Ireland, its four component lands, have separate traditions and cultures. Over the centuries immigrants and political refugees from Europe have added their own customs to these. More recently people from Caribbean and South Asian subcontinent, Cypriots, Chinese and others have contributed to the multiracial nature of British society.

Britain has for centuries lived by its people's enterprise and the advancement of its overseas trade. It was the world's first industrialised country. While manufacturing continues to play a vital role, recent decades have generally seen a faster growth in the services sector. Government policies seek to stimulate enterprise and encourage wealth creation and competition.



The national infrastructure benefits from a network of motorways, fast inter-city rail services and the recent expansion of airports. Revitalisation of inner cities and housing estates includes initiatives to encourage enterprise, employment and education. Reforms are in train to shape Britain's wide-ranging social welfare system for the 1990s.

**Exercise 21.**

*Read the passage and translate from "Protective..." to "...required" into Vietnamese.*

**Electric Protection Devices**

This term refers to a particular type of equipment applied to electric power systems to detect abnormal conditions and to initiate appropriate action to correct the abnormal condition. From time to time, disturbances in the normal operation of electric power systems occur. These may be caused by natural phenomena, such as lightning, wind, or snow ; by accidental means traceable to reckless drivers, in the system itself, such as switching surges, load swings, or equipment failure.

Protective devices must therefore be installed on a power system to ensure continuity of electric service, to prevent injury to personnel, and to limit damage to equipment when abnormal situations develop. Application of these devices varies widely since they are applied commensurately with the degree of protection required.

**Exercise 22.**

*Read the passage and translate from " Plants..." to "...soil " into Vietnamese.*

Plants and animals interact with each other. Animals depend on plants for their food. In the same way, plants depend on animals. All plants and animals must have four elements : carbon, nitrogen, hydrogen and oxygen. These elements are combined to form proteins, fats and carbonhydrates in the animal and plant. They are then used for building cells and tissues or as a source of

energy. Oxygen is obtained from air and water. Water is also a source of hydrogen for living things. Carbon and nitrogen come from the air, sea or soil.

The use of these four elements by plants and animals involves complex cycles demonstrate the dependence of animals and plants on each other.

In the nitrogen cycle, nitrates are absorbed from soil by plants. The nitrates are used to make proteins. Plants are eaten by animals. When plants and animals die, bacteria in the soil cause decomposition. As the dead plant or animal is decomposed, the tissues are converted to nitrates. In this way, the nitrates are returned to soil.

### *Exercise 23.*

*Read the passage and translate from "With..." to "...robots" into Vietnamese.*

With the price of a small home computer now as low as 50 pounds, experts predict that before long all schools and businesses and most families in the richer parts of the world will own a computer of some kind. Among the general public, computers arouse strong feelings—people either love them or hate them.

The computer-lovers talk about how useful computers can be in business, in education and in the home—apart from all the games, you can do your accounts on them, learn languages from them, write letters on them, use them to control your central heating, and in some places even do your shopping with them. Computers, they say, will also bring more leisure as more and more unpleasant jobs are taken over by computerised robots.

The haters, on the other hand, argue that computers bring not leisure but unemployment. They worry, too, that people who spend all their time talking to computers will forget how to talk to each other. And anyway, they ask, what's wrong with going shopping, using pens and paper and typewriters, and learning languages in

classrooms with real teachers ? But their biggest fear is that computers may eventually take over from human beings altogether.

And so the arguments continue. Have you decided which side you're on ?

#### *Exercise 24.*

*Read the passage and translate from "The original..." to Purpose" into Vietnamese.*

The original Ulysses was an ancient Greek hero, but Maclean's Ulysses is a ship.

The novel entitled HMS Ulysses is about men, ships and war in the awful conditions of the North Atlantic, and does not have a happy ending. If you like happy endings, this is just not the book for you. The action takes place during the Second World War and centres on the Ulysses, just one ship among the many ships that guarded the Allied supply lines in the North Atlantic. Its story suggests that war is pointless and wasteful, destroying good men and good ships to no purpose.

Maclean describes how the Ulysses and her sailors die in the ice, fire and water at the top of the world, attacked by both human and natural enemies during a terrible northern winter. At the end of the book, he describes how the warship went on through terrific seas, covered with ice and badly damaged, but still moving at great speed. Then her magazine blew up, blowing a great hole in her bows, so that the sea rushed in. She drove herself onward and downward into the rolling waters, to the black floor of the Arctic, her great engines still turning and took every man with her.

#### *Exercise 25.*

*Read and translate the passage into Vietnamese.*

**Abraham Lincoln**

**(1809 - 1865)**

Abraham Lincoln was born on a farm. His father was a poor farmer and the boy had to work much on their small farm. The

young Abe spent less than a year at school. But he read a lot."The things I want to know are in books ", he said.

One day Abraham bought a book about laws of England. He studied it every day, and his interest in law grew. He became a lawyer. His life became interesting and useful. He knew how he could help people, he tried to use the law to defend them.

In 1846 Lincoln was elected to Congress. There he said that he was against slavery. He said that the black slaves of America must be free. He thought of a free country for all people.

Lincoln became very popular. In 1860 he was elected President of the United States of America. His ideas about freedom for the black slaves were good for the rich people of the industrial North. The planters of South who exploited those slaves were against them. So war between the North and the South began. It was won by the North.

In 1864 Abraham Lincoln was elected President again. But his enemies, who wanted to exploit the black slaves as before, could not let Lincoln continue his good work. A year later he was killed in a theatre in Washington.

Abraham Lincoln's traditions live in the struggle of all progressive people in the USA.

#### *Exercise 26.*

*Read the passage and translate from "Probably..." to ".... of your kitchen " into Vietnamese.*

Over the last fifty years housework has been made considerably easier by the invention of an increasing number of labour-saving devices and appliances, mostly electrical, which have drastically cut down the amount of time and effort previously needed to do the everyday household chores. For many years now there have been vacuum cleaners, electric irons, washing machines and floor-polishers ; now we have electric potato-peelers and even electric carving knives. We can buy cookers that will switch

hemselves on and produce a meal that is ready to eat the minute we get back home. If we have one of those electric pop-up toasters, we can make toast at the breakfast table itself. Mashed potatoes can be quickly and effortlessly made with a mixer, which usually has a variety of attachments that enable you to make all sorts of other more exotic things like fresh orange juice or real mayonnaise. And a tumble-drier can save you from the frustration of hanging out the washing only to have to bring it in again ten minutes later when menacing storm-clouds loom over.

Probably the most important piece of electrical equipment to become widely used in the last twenty years is the dishwasher. Washing up by hand is not only a time-consuming task (it can take longer than eating the meal itself), but also an extremely boring one, particularly when you are on your own, and it also ruins your hands. Dishwashers come in a range of different sizes and models to suit your purse, the size of your family, and the layout of your kitchen. They can be stood on the floor or on a worktop, or they can be mounted on a wall. And their capacity ranges from six to twenty place-settings. If you buy one, it is worth having it plumbed into the mains water supply to save you having to connect rubber pipes to your taps each time you use it. All you have to do is load the dirty dishes, glasses and cutlery into racks inside the machine, pour in some special detergent powder, close the door and switch it on ; it does the rest by itself while you get on and do more interesting things. Of course, most dishwashers can't accommodate large saucepans and frying pans, and you do have to scrape all scraps of solid food from the dishes before you put them in to avoid blocking the filters, but the machine will wash almost everything else and get rid of even the most stubborn egg and lipstick stains. When the washing cycle is over, the machine dries the plates and glasses with its own heat, and indeed they can be left inside until they are needed for the next meal.



### *Exercise 27.*

*Read the passage and translate from "On the other..." to "both sides" into Vietnamese :*

A national political struggle is continuing over the issue of protection for the remnants of vast ancient forests that once covered the northwestern areas of the United States. These old forests, called "Old growth ", contain trees from 200 to 1200 years old. There are now about 6 million acres of virgin forest in Washington and Oregon, only about one-tenth of what existed before the 1800s. This old growth contains some of the most valuable timber in the nation, but its economic worth is also contained in its water, wildlife, scenery, and recreational facilities.

Conservationists want the majority of existing old growth protected from harvesting. They emphasize the vital relationship between old growth and the health of the forest's ecosystems. They cite studies which show that both downed and standing old trees store and release nutrients necessary to younger trees.

On the other hand, much of the Northwest's economy is developed around the logging industry. Trees are cut down to make wood products, and many mills are geared for old-growth industry. In recent years 500 acres of old growth have been logged, including trees up to 500 years old and eight feet in diameter. While the U.S. Forest service wrestles with the problem of how much of the forest to save, the harvesting of timber continues. The district office refuses to remove any of the old growth from timber production. The struggle is continuing at the national level with strong proponents on both sides.

### *Exercise 28.*

*Read the passage and translate from " Banking" to " home loans" into Vietnamese.*

### **Financial Services**

Banking, finance, insurance, business services and leasing account for 11 per cent of the British economy's total output. London has the world's largest insurance market, and its banks



are responsible for about a fifth of international bank lending. London is the world's principal trading centre for commodities as well as an increasingly important centre for financial future markets.

The bank of England oversees the soundness of the financial system as a whole executes monetary policy acts as banker to the government and provides banking facilities for the banking system. Retail banks provide financial services to individuals and companies particularly account and loan facilities. They also offer home loans.

Some 126 building societies take deposits from individuals (on which they pay interest) and arrange mortgages for house purchase. They also offer a wide range of banking and insurance services.

The International Stock Exchange is one of the world's largest markets for government and company securities. Its turnover of equities in 1989 accounted for some 10 per cent of equity trading worldwide. Also in London are various commodity markets, the bullion market, the Baltic Exchange for shipping and agricultural futures, and Lloyd's for insurance.

#### *Exercise 29.*

*Read and translate the passage into Vietnamese :*

#### **Cambridge**

Cambridge is the second oldest university city in Great Britain after Oxford. Cambridge is on the river Cam and takes its name from this river. There are twenty-nine colleges in Cambridge . A large part of the population of the city are teachers and students. All students have to live in Cambridge while they study there. In the streets of the Cambridge you can see many young men wearing dark blue or black clothes and black square caps. The tradition goes back to the old times when the students had to wear dark clothes. They could not play games or sing songs and dance in those days, they could not fish either.

Many great men have studied at Cambridge. Cromwell, Newton, Byron, Darwin and others. The great Russian scientist I.P. Pavlov came to Cambridge 1912 to receive the degree of Honorary Doctor of Cambridge. The students made him a present of a toy dog.

Cambridge is known all over the world. Many famous scientists have worked there : Rutherford, Kapitza and others.

### *Exercise 30.*

*Read the passage and translate it into Vietnamese :*

Of course, you know the name of William Shakespeare very well. he was one of the world's greatest writers. He was born in Straford-On-Avon, a small English town. The Straford school was a difficult place at that time. The pupils had to be at school at six in the morning in the warm seasons and an hour later in the winter. School-days were long, and only in the holidays could William Shakespeare have a real rest. He went to the woods and to the river Avon.

But the best thing of all in Will's life were groups of actors who visited Straford from time to time. He watched them and knew that he wanted to be an actor. When William was twenty-one, he went to London. He became an actor there and later he began to write plays. Shakespeare watched the new life and he showed how differently people understood it. Life itself was shown in his plays. Shakespeare's heroes are still on the stage. We go to the theatre or cinema to meet them again and again.

William Shakespeare's four hundredth birthday was celebrated in 1964 all over the world. A beautiful Soviet stamp of that year shows his portrait and scenes from Romeo and Juliet.

### Exercise 31.

*Read and translate the passage from "The priority..." to "...Christmas atmosphere"*

The priority of feast days has varied over the centuries, but Christmas, Easter and Midsummer have retained their position as main festivities of the year. Christmas, coinciding with the darkest part of the long Finnish winter, is a holiday which centres on the family and the home. At about midday on Christmas Eve, 'Christmas Peace' is declared over all Finland from the country's former capital, Turku. This ritual, based on Medieval laws, lost its legal import centuries ago, but lives on as a ceremonial  $\pm$ opening $\geq$  of the Christmas season. A Christmas sauna is an important feature of Christmas Eve celebration. At dusk, people light candles on their family graves. Families then gather together for main Christmas meal on Christmas Eve. The high point of the evening is the visit of Father Christmas, who brings the Christmas presents with him in person. Candles and the traditional Christmas decorations made from straw help to achieve the traditional Christmas atmosphere.

The urban Christmas is an entertaining mixture of children's plays, charity, commerce, worship, family holiday and peasant customs. Christian traditions have been interwoven with the secular aspect of Christmas. For instance, attending the Christmas service has become a tradition in many families, although more likely for nostalgic reasons than to hear the Christmas message.

### Exercise 32.

*Read the passage and translate from the beginning to "...in the box".*

An organisation in the Philippines has developed a new device to make chicken-raising faster and easier. The organisation is the Institute for Small-Scale Industries. It is a study and training centre, part of the University of the Philippines. The device it has

made is an incubator that keeps chicken eggs warm and safe while baby chickens are developing inside them.

The incubator is easy to make. It uses materials found in almost any village. Here's how to built it. First, find two boxes made of paper cardboard. One box should be about half a metre long, a little less than half a metre wide, and about thirty centimetres tall. The other box should have the same shape but be a little smaller in each direction. You should be able to put the smaller box inside the larger one and have a little extra space on all sides. Next, gather some old newspapers, crush the pieces of paper into balls and place the paper balls in the bottom of the big box about five centimetres deep. Now place the smaller box on top of the paper balls. So that it is in the centre of big box resting on the paper. Crush some other pieces of paper, and place these all around the outside of the smaller box. This paper separate the big box from the small box. You may want to use some pieces of wood to hold everything together. Then make a cardboard cover that fits tightly on the big box. Next you build a heat source. You need to put an electric light and a thermostat inside the smaller box. The thermostat measures the air temperature and it turns the light on and off to keep the air in the box at about thirty-two degrees centigrade. You make the floor of the incubator from a piece of chicken wire . It is raised from the bottom of the box high enough to put a pan of water under it. Water keeps the air in the box wet.

That's how to build the incubator. To use it, just take the eggs from the mother hen. Place them on the chicken wire inside the box. Be sure there is water in the pan under the eggs. Then turn on the light and the thermostat to keep the air at a steady temperature. Every few hours turn the eggs gently. Try to keep the more pointed ends of the eggs facing down.

In the Philippines, egg incubators take about eighteen days to produce chickens.

*Read the passage and translate into Vietnamese from "Shahriyar..." to "...have both "*

**Shahriyar, the King of Persia, did not like women.**

His first queen had deceived him badly, and he was consequently determined that no woman would ever deceive him again. To make sure of this, he took a new queen every evening – and had her executed in the morning.

The turn came of the beautiful Shahrezad, who did not however intend to die so easily. She was also determined to put an end to the king's savage practices. Consequently, she arranged for her younger sister to come to the palace early, to ask a favour from Shahriyar. The favour was simple enough : Shahrezad was a skilled teller of tales, and her sister would ask to hear one more story before the executioner did his work.

The king listened with amusement to Shahrezad's sister's request and then to the tale itself, which slowly, however, began to gain his attention. It was still unfinished when the time of execution arrived, and this made the king angry, because he wanted to hear the end of this intriguing tale and to watch the execution. He could not, however, have both.

Shahriyar chose to hear the end of the story, but the matter was not quite as simple as he expected. As soon as she finished her first story, Queen Shahrezad began a second tale that grew quite naturally out of the first. The king found this continuation just as interesting as the earlier story had been, and listened on and on. One story became another, one day became another, and the executioner remained without any work to do.



### Exercise 34.

*Read and translate the passage from "The hidden face..." to "...of weightlessness.*

The hidden face of the moon has so long been a mystery that the first successful attempt to reveal it will probably go down in history as one of the most important steps man has made to increase his knowledge of outer space.

What the voyage of Columbus was to the world in the fifteenth century, the journey of the rocket, Lunik III, might well be to the twentieth.

Lunik III was shaped like a top and weighed about 614 pounds. It travelled from the earth to the south side of the moon and continued its journey for some 4000 miles beyond the other side before the moon's attraction caused it to alter its path, making it turn round. When this occurred, the rocket was in a direct line between the sun and the moon and a great number of things happened. At the signal from the earth, the rocket stopped spinning and a cover opened at its nose. Two cameras appeared, one of which magnified the moon two and a half times more than the other. The film that was used to take the pictures has special markings on it so that the photographing of the moon's far side could be controlled from the earth. When the pictures had been taken, they were developed automatically by a special device designed to work under conditions of weightlessness. Now it was time for the rocket to move again, and another signal from the earth caused it to spin once more, for there was danger that if it remained still, its underside would freeze and its topside become too hot and so damage the delicate instruments within. The rocket then continued its journey round the moon, swung back to the earth and began to send the photographs that had been taken, by means of the special television-camera which translated the lines on the picture into radio signals. In this way, the hidden face of the moon became familiar to everybody. Those few who had expected to hear of strange beasts or lost civilization may have been disappointed by



or most people, the photographs solved an age-old mystery and provided the first really exciting glimpse of outer space.

*Exercise 35.*

*Read and translate the whole passage into Vietnamese*

Poachers have struck again at the Mountain Gorilla, one of the world's rarest animals. The gorillas - fewer than 250 - live in scattered family groups throughout the forest on the slopes of three extinct volcanoes. Each group is normally led by a dominant male who may weigh up to 130 kilos and is easily recognised by the stripe of silver fur which appears when he is fully mature. The poachers speared the male to death as he tried to defend his family and then made off with a baby gorilla whose mother is missing and also presumed dead.

With so few gorillas left, even one death is a serious blow, specially when a silverbacked male is lost. With no dominant to lead them, the rest of the group will probably split up and join other groups. Twenty-five years ago there were perhaps 500 gorillas in these high mountain forests. Today their numbers have been halved, not just by poaching but by human interference in all its forms. Illegal wood cutting, cattle-grazing and farming have reduced the park to a small strip.

The Government is now trying to protect the gorillas to ensure their survival. One of the most successful operations has been to habituate a group of wild gorillas to the presence of tourists, who are prepared to pay handsomely and to endure considerable hardship, crawling through dense undergrowth for a glimpse of these, our closest living relatives.

*Exercise 36.*

*Read and translate the whole passage into Vietnamese.*

**Computer systems history**

The early history of the development of computing machines is replete with impressive names. The French scientist Blaise Pascal

is credited with the invention of the first adding machine in 1642. His machine was mechanical in nature, using gears to store numbers.

The mechanical model was followed up in 1822 by Charles Babbage, professor of mathematics at Cambridge University in England. Babbage used gears and punched cards to produce the first general purpose digital computer, which he called the analytic engine, but it was never completed or put into use.

Census taking provided the incentive for Herman Hollerith to use punched cards in the first data processing operation. Their successful application to the 1890 U.S. National Census demonstrated the value to be realized from automatic data processing systems. The laborious, time-consuming task of sorting census data by hand was reduced in both time required and effort expended, because punched cards were put into the machine which automatically sorted them.

Howard Aiken of Harvard University combined the mechanical processes of Babbage with the punched-cards techniques of Hollerith to develop an electromechanical computer. The Harvard Mark I, as it was called, was capable of multiplying and dividing at rates significantly faster than previously possible. The electromechanical nature of the device, which used punched cards and punched tape for data and control, limited its speed and capability.

## KEY

### Exercise 1.

#### Cậu bé có ý kiến hay nhất

Rất lâu rồi, có một người đàn ông và một con voi đến một làng n. Đây là lần đầu tiên dân làng nhìn thấy voi, họ muốn biết trọng lượng của nó. Nhưng mỗi người một ý kiến khác nhau. Họ nói rằng ý kiến của họ đúng và của người khác là sai. Họ cố gắng nghĩ ra một phương pháp để có thể biết được con voi này nặng bao nhiêu. Nhưng họ không thể nghĩ ra một cách nào cả. Khi đó một cậu bé nói " cháu có một cách và cháu có thể nói cho các bác biết con voi nặng bao nhiêu, hãy để cháu thử xem". Dân làng không muốn nghe heo cậu bé, họ nói " Làm sao nó có thể làm được khi chúng tôi những người già còn không tìm được ra cách gì? Nhưng họ vẫn quyết định để cho cậu bé thử.

### Exercise 2.

Vài năm trở lại đây quan hệ giữa Việt Nam và các nước thành viên của Hiệp Hội các Quốc gia Đông nam châu Á (ASEAN) đã được cải thiện đáng kể (các thành viên của ASEAN là Brunei, Indonesia, Malaysia, Philipin, Singapore, và Thái Lan). Thủ tướng Võ Văn Kiệt đã đến thăm 6 nước này và Tổng bí thư Đỗ Mười cũng đã đi thăm Singapore và Thái Lan. Trong một vài tháng qua nguyên thủ của nhiều nước ASEAN đã nhận lời mời đến Việt Nam trong các cuộc viếng thăm thiện chí, để thảo luận về công việc của chính phủ và ký kết các hiệp định quan trọng, bao gồm một số hợp đồng liên doanh lớn. Ông Tổng thư ký ASEAN Ajit Singh đã đến Hà Nội vào cuối tháng 2 để bàn bạc với Bộ trưởng Ngoại giao Nguyễn Mạnh Cầm nhằm ấn định thời gian phù hợp cho Việt nam trở thành thành viên chính thức của ASEAN. Hiện nay Việt nam đóng vai trò là quan sát viên của ASEAN, vai trò này đã cho phép Việt nam có mặt tại các hội nghị Bộ trưởng khối ASEAN trong 2 năm qua. Các Bộ trưởng của khối ASEAN có thể sẽ xem xét việc kết nạp Việt Nam trong cuộc họp về an ninh khu vực vào tháng 7 tới.

### *Exercise 3.*

Vài năm qua, Trung tâm nông nghiệp nhiệt đới Quốc tế ở Cali Colombia đã nghiên cứu giúp đỡ các chủ điền trang nhỏ. Trung tâm này gọi tắt là CIAS đã đào tạo 58 người để góp phần phát triển ngành công nghiệp giống của địa phương ở vùng Trung và Nam Mỹ Ông Ario Garai là Giám đốc công ty giống thuộc CIAS. Ông cho biết các nhà khoa học đã tạo ra được các giống cải tiến phù hợp với nông dân ở các nước đang phát triển. Nhưng ông cũng nói những nông dân nghèo khó có thể kiếm được giống này. Những công ty giống lớn cũng không thể cung cấp giống cho họ, do vậy họ phải trồng những giống mà cha ông họ vẫn trồng hoặc họ phải mua bất cứ giống gì họ có thể mua được tại thị trường ở địa phương. Họ thường không chắc là sẽ mua được loại giống gì ở đó. Các nhà nghiên cứu quyết định rằng họ sẽ đào tạo nông dân để cung cấp giống cho chính họ. Chương trình đào tạo này cần có nỗ lực hợp tác. Nó liên quan đến các chủ trang trại, các tổ chức phi chính phủ, và các tập đoàn quốc gia. Họ kiểm tra, chọn lựa và đưa ra thị trường giống của họ.

Họ lấy những giống tốt nhất trong chính mùa vụ của họ và cung cấp cho nông dân ở các vùng lân cận.

Ví dụ, 8 năm trước đây, có 23 điền chủ đã cùng tập hợp lại ở vùng miền Nam Colombia. Năm đầu tiên họ sản xuất được 8.000 kg giống cung cấp cho nông dân trong vùng và bây giờ họ cung cấp hơn 30.000 kg giống một năm. Ở Sutoludít - Quattemala mỗi năm nông dân ở đây trồng 36.000 kg hạt giống và họ lấy giống của một nhóm sản xuất giống gồm 42 điền chủ ở địa phương.

### *Exercise 4.*

#### **Ngày lễ chơi khăm**

Gần đây tôi luôn ao ước là mình được ở nhà. Hôm nay là ngày 31/10 đó là ngày lễ chơi khăm ở Mỹ. Đây là ngày lễ tôi thích nhất trong năm, nhưng tôi lại phải nằm bẹp ở đây, cách thành phố New York của tôi 3 nghìn dặm. Tên tôi là Mark, tôi là sinh viên mỹ thuật ở Ý. Tôi đã sống và theo học ở đây gần một năm rồi. Tôi rất

hích ở Ý, nhưng hôm nay tôi cảm thấy rất nhớ nhà. Tôi rất nhớ hững trò nghịch ở nhà. Vào ngày lễ mọi người rất vui vẻ. Trẻ con thì mặc lễ phục khác nhau chúng kéo đến các nhà hàng xóm và chơi "chơi khăm hay là thết dãi", những người hàng xóm thường cho chúng kẹo, táo hay những đồng xu lẻ. Rất nhiều người lớn cũng rất thích mặc lễ phục. Họ thường mặc để đi dự tiệc.

#### Exercise 5.

Bóng đá là một trò chơi rất lâu đời. Người La Mã, Trung hoa, Mehico cổ đại đều chơi bóng đá. Đối với người La Mã thì đó là trò chơi chiến tranh mà hai đội lính có thể dùng bất kỳ sức mạnh nào để đá bóng về hai tuyến phòng vệ của nhau. Đế chế La Mã đã lâu không còn tồn tại nữa nhưng trò giải khuây thô bạo này của lính Rome dường như vẫn tiếp tục và có thể vẫn còn rất thô bạo. Thời Trung cổ, kiểu "bóng đá" này còn rất phổ biến ở Ý và Pháp, Anh và Scotland nhưng đó là trò nguy hiểm mà thậm chí các nhà vua đã phải cấm và hơn 300 năm nó không được chính thức công nhận. Nhưng năm 1613 vua James đệ lục của Scotland và đệ nhất của Anh đã tự cho phép mình thưởng thức trận đấu "Bóng đá và ca nhạc" ở một làng ở nước Anh và một vài năm sau, nhà độc tài người Anh Oliver Cromwell đã chơi bóng đá khi đang theo học ở một trường Đại học.

#### Exercise 6.

Gần đây tổ chức y tế Thế giới đã thông báo rằng bệnh đậu mùa hầu như đã được loại trừ ở hầu hết các nơi trên Thế giới, nhờ có tiêm phòng rộng rãi. Ai cũng được tiêm phòng ít nhất là một lần trong đời và nếu muốn đi từ nước này sang nước khác thì phải trình giấy chứng nhận đã tiêm phòng. Bằng cách này người ta đã ngăn chặn được sự lan truyền của bệnh, ngày nay chúng ta rất hiếm khi nghe đến bệnh này. Làm được điều này chủ yếu là do phát hiện lớn của Bác sĩ Edward Jenner - vào khoảng năm 1798 khi ông thực hiện một loạt thí nghiệm về phương pháp mới được gọi là "tiêm vaccin" (Vaccination) (Theo tiếng Latin "vacca" nghĩa là con bò). Ông Jenner phát hiện ra rằng những người làm việc với gia súc như người vắt sữa và người chăn bò thường bị nhiễm



một loại bệnh vô hại từ gia súc truyền sang nhưng họ không bao giờ bị bệnh đậu mùa. Do đó ông đã thí nghiệm bằng cách truyền đậu mùa của gia súc vào cánh tay qua những chỗ rạch của người khỏe mạnh, tay họ sẽ đau trong một, hai ngày vết rạch sẽ lành và không ai sẽ bị nhiễm bệnh nữa. Tin về sự phát hiện tuyệt vời này đã sớm lan truyền ra nước ngoài, mọi người đã đến bác sĩ để tiêm vacxin. Ở Mỹ, Gibraltar, Tây ban nha, Ai Cập và Trung quốc hàng ngàn người đã được tiêm chủng chỉ bằng một vết rạch đơn giản trên cánh tay và bệnh đậu mùa khủng khiếp đã bắt đầu biến mất.

### *Exercise 7.*

Hai năm trước, lợn cỏ Việt Nam đã trở thành vật cảnh nuôi trong gia đình rất phổ biến ở Mỹ. Loài lợn này rất nhỏ. Một báo cáo cho biết một con lợn cỏ trưởng thành nặng không quá 2,7 kg, nó rất hiền và có thể nuôi được trong nhà. Rất nhiều người đã mua. Hiện nay trên toàn nước Mỹ có khoảng 20.000 con. Nhưng tờ báo World Trip giải thích rằng đó không phải là điều đơn giản.

Bà Aitomans sống ở bang Cansoveinia miền đông nước Mỹ. Hai năm trước, bà mua một con lợn của một công ty ở một bang miền Tây với giá là 1.200 USD. Khi mang về nhà nó chỉ nặng hơn 2 kg một chút. Bà chủ mới đã đặt tên cho con vật bé nhỏ này cái tên Amaly. Bà đã thả nó vào một cái cũi thường sử dụng cho trẻ em. Nhưng Amaly bắt đầu lớn phổng lên. Trong vòng chưa đầy một năm rưỡi, nó đã nặng 55 kg và không còn hiền lành nữa. Nó còn dám tấn công bà khi bà định tắm cho nó.

Nó chạy nhanh đến nỗi đã làm cho bà Aitomans bị ngã. Bây giờ Amaly đã nặng 79 kg. Bà Aitomans đã gọi điện đến công ty đã bán lợn cho bà để phản đối. Bà cũng phàn nàn về sự phổ biến của loài lợn này nhưng bà Aitomans không thể chia tay với Amaly vì nó cũng giống như thành viên trong gia đình vậy.

### *Exercise 8.*

Thủ tướng Võ Văn Kiệt đã đi thăm Campuchia đầu tháng 4 để thảo luận với 2 đồng Thủ tướng - Hoàng thân Norodom Ranariddh



và ngài Hun-Sen về những vấn đề đôi bên cùng quan tâm. Những cuộc đàm phán này diễn ra sau chuyến viếng thăm Campuchia hồi tháng 2 của Bộ trưởng ngoại giao Việt nam. Trọng tâm của sự tranh chấp biên giới giữa hai nước là hiệp ước được ký kết năm 1980 và có giá trị trong vòng 20 năm. Hiệp ước này đề cập tới, ví dụ, sự hợp tác qua biên giới và mậu dịch quá cảnh, nhưng từ khi Việt nam rút quân đội đóng ở Campuchia về năm 1989, gần 10 năm sau khi hiệp ước này được ký, thì những bất đồng về biên giới cũng như sự thù địch chống Việt kiều ở Campuchia ngày càng gia tăng.

### *Exercise 9.*

Bất cứ vật gì được sử dụng như tiền có thể được gọi là vật trao đổi. Nhưng để hiểu rõ hơn về tiền ở dạng vật trao đổi này, chúng ta nên đặt câu hỏi "nó được sử dụng vào mục đích gì?". Nếu chúng ta trả lời được câu hỏi này chúng ta sẽ thấy được chức năng và mục đích của vật trao đổi. Ngày nay, việc sử dụng tiền chủ yếu nhằm mục đích kinh tế. Có 4 chức năng kinh tế thường được đề cập tới ngay ở đầu những cuốn sách giáo khoa cơ bản về ngân hàng hay thương mại. Nhưng trước kia việc sử dụng tiền không giới hạn trong bốn chức năng kinh tế này. Có những chức năng tương đương quan trọng khác như xã hội, tôn giáo, ma thuật hay đơn giản là chức năng trang trí. Đôi khi chức năng kinh tế này được cụ thể hoá và hạn chế trong việc mua bán nô lệ hoặc trả tiền mua cô dâu. Chúng ta nên nhìn nhận những người này và các vật trao đổi của họ theo thực tế, chứ không nên dựa trên quan niệm về các chức năng kinh tế hiện đại của đồng tiền.

### *Exercise 10.*

#### **Ngày chiến thắng**

Cuộc chiến tranh giữ nước vĩ đại đã kết thúc vào tháng 5 năm 1945. Ngày mồng 9 tháng 5 huy hoàng đó đã đi vào lịch sử của đất nước chúng tôi. Người ta kỷ niệm ngày này bằng các cuộc mít tinh và tuần hành, họ mang hoa đến các đài tưởng niệm nơi các anh hùng đã ngã xuống. Các cựu chiến binh thì kể cho các bạn trẻ về cuộc đấu tranh bảo vệ đất nước xã hội chủ nghĩa của họ.

Họ đã phải trả giá rất lớn mới đạt được thắng lợi này. Nhân dân Xô viết đã phải chiến đấu chống lại quân Phát xít từ Biển trắng ở miền Bắc đến Biển đen ở miền Nam. Họ đã bảo vệ Maxcova và Vôngagrát cũng như hàng ngàn các thành phố và làng mạc khác. Họ đã giúp nhân dân các nước thoát khỏi chủ nghĩa Phát xít. Dân tộc Xô viết anh hùng không những đã bảo vệ được tổ quốc của họ mà còn đã cứu cả Thế giới.

### *Exercise 11.*

Suốt nửa đầu của thế kỷ 20, điện ảnh đã vượt hẳn lên trên tất cả các hình thức giải trí phổ biến khác trên Thế giới. Trong những ngày hoàng kim của rạp chiếu bóng hay xinê - người Mỹ và người Anh gọi chúng bằng các tên khác là rạp chiếu phim - hàng triệu người trên thế giới có thói quen đi xem phim ít nhất là một lần trong tuần. Đây cũng là thời kỳ hoàng kim của Hollywood - kinh đô điện ảnh của nước Mỹ và của cả thế giới.

Những bộ phim câm đầu tiên (tất nhiên là phim đen trắng) được chiếu trong những năm 1890 góp phần giải trí trong phòng nhạc cùng với các hoạt động sống động khác như ca múa, ảo thuật. Những phim như vậy chỉ đơn giản là làm cho khán giả sờn gai ốc. Cảnh một đoàn tàu đổ sập lao thẳng về phía bạn trước màn ảnh thường gây được hiệu quả mà cả nhà sản xuất phim và khán giả đều mong đợi. Dĩ nhiên yếu tố giật gân còn tiếp tục rất có ý nghĩa trong phim ảnh và điều này được thấy rõ qua nhu cầu xem những cảnh "giật gân" trong nhiều phim khoa học viễn tưởng.

### *Exercise 12.*

## **Edinburgh**

Edinburgh là thủ đô của Scotland và là một trong những thành phố đẹp nhất của châu Âu. Nằm trên 7 quả đồi, Edinburgh thoai dân xuống biển. Ngọn đồi cao nhất là cao 300 mét so với mực nước biển. Từ đường phố trung tâm của thành phố bạn có thể thấy những con tàu đến Edinburgh từ các nước khác nhau trên thế giới. Trong những khu phố cổ, các đường phố chật hẹp. Những ngôi nhà cao với cửa sổ nhỏ có từ một nghìn năm trước được xây từ

chân đồi lên đến tận lâu đài Edinburgh. Phố mới nằm ở phía chân đồi. Phố xá ở đây thẳng tắp và được quy hoạch đẹp nên rất dễ đi dạo và ngắm cảnh trong thành phố Edinburgh. Người ta nói rằng chỉ có hai thành phố được quy hoạch đẹp nhất trên thế giới là Edinburgh và Leningrat.

### *Exercise 13.*

Thời tiết là cái gì đó mà không ai có thể điều khiển được. Nó ảnh hưởng đến mọi người, giàu hay nghèo, trẻ hay già ở khắp nơi trên Thế giới. Đó có thể là lý do tại sao có nhiều câu thành ngữ nói về thời tiết, đặc biệt là về mưa. Đôi khi bạn cần có mưa thì bạn chẳng có giọt nào cả. Khi khác bạn không mong mưa thì mưa lại đến. Lấy ví dụ một trận bóng chày, một trận mưa bão bất thành tình hình làm cho trận đấu đang diễn ra sôi nổi phải dừng lại, các cầu thủ và hơn 20.000 khán giả đang xem phải chạy trú mưa. Nếu trận đấu không tiếp tục thì những người đã mua vé vào xem này nhận được những vé đặc biệt mà lần sau họ đi xem sẽ không phải mất tiền. "Rain check", bây giờ có nghĩa là một cơ hội thứ hai để làm việc gì đó. Thường thì "Rain check" không liên quan gì tới mưa cả. Các cửa hàng cũng có thể tạo ra cơ hội thứ hai cho khách hàng khi mà sản phẩm của họ bán hết với giá rẻ đặc biệt, ví dụ như 1 cái TV chẳng hạn. Sau khi mọi chiếc TV đã được bán hết, cửa hàng này sẽ phát "Rain check" cho những ai muốn mua sản phẩm của họ. Cơ hội thứ hai cho phép những người sau vẫn mua với giá rẻ khi mà cửa hàng nhận thêm được hàng từ nhà máy. Cơ hội thứ hai cũng được sử dụng trong các tình huống của cuộc sống hàng ngày. Đó là cách đồng ý nhận lời mời nhưng vào một dịp khác. Bạn được mời đến dự bữa cơm tối ở một gia đình người bạn nhưng bạn không thể, bạn nói "mình rất muốn đến dùng cơm tối với gia đình nhưng rất tiếc mình lại bận rồi, cho mình để khi khác nhé." Nói một cách khác bạn đang hỏi lại liệu bạn có thể tham dự bữa cơm tối vào một dịp khác không.

### *Exercise 14.*

Một cậu bé da đỏ chạy như bay ra khỏi một làng ở Mexico. Trên tay cậu là một giỏ cá. Chúng vừa được vớt lên khỏi hồ nước lạnh

một vài phút trước đây. Cách xa đó một chút có một người khác đang đợi để nhận giỏ cá từ tay cậu bé mệt nhoài này rồi chạy tiếp. Và cứ như vậy từ người này qua người khác cá tươi được đưa nhanh từ hồ đến bàn tiệc của ngài Montezuma, người trị vì vùng Aztecs.

Tốc độ là rất quan trọng trong việc vận chuyển cá và nhiều thực phẩm tươi khác. Thực phẩm dễ bị hư hỏng cần phải đưa ra chợ, đến các bàn ăn càng nhanh càng tốt. Nhưng ngày nay các xe tải, tàu hoả, tàu biển và máy bay có thể thay thế những người đưa thực phẩm đó.

Máy bay là cách vận chuyển thực phẩm nhanh nhất và đặc biệt rất hữu ích trong việc chuyên chở thực phẩm đến cho người và động vật mà không thể tới được bằng các phương tiện khác. Giả dụ như có trận lụt hay động đất, xe tải và tàu hoả không thể chạy đến đó được. Người ta có thể thả thức ăn từ trên máy bay xuống để cứu nạn nhân khỏi chết đói. Nhưng vận chuyển bằng đường hàng không rất tốn kém, vì vậy trong phạm vi một nước phần lớn các loại thực phẩm dễ bị hỏng, ôi thiu được vận chuyển bằng xe tải hay tàu hoả.

### *Exercise 15.*

Mục đích của bất kỳ một hệ thống năng lượng mặt trời nào cũng là thu nhận năng lượng mặt trời và chuyển nó thành năng lượng nhiệt có ích. Hoạt động của hệ thống này phụ thuộc vào một vài yếu tố như nguồn năng lượng mặt trời sẵn có, nhiệt độ không khí xung quanh, đặc tính của dạng năng lượng cần phải chuyển hoá thành và đặc biệt là đặc tính nhiệt của bản thân hệ thống năng lượng mặt trời đó. Hệ thống thu nhận năng lượng mặt trời để đốt nóng hay làm lạnh thường được chia thành loại hệ thống động và hệ thống tĩnh. Các hệ thống tĩnh thu nhận và phân phối năng lượng mặt trời mà không cần sử dụng nguồn năng lượng phụ nào khác. Chúng phụ thuộc vào cấu trúc xây dựng và tính cảm nhiệt của vật liệu được dùng. Ngược lại, hệ thống động bao gồm các bộ phận hoàn toàn không phụ thuộc vào cấu trúc xây dựng và thường đòi hỏi một nguồn năng lượng phụ để chuyển năng lượng mặt trời đã



thu được đến nơi sử dụng. Các hệ thống này dễ lắp đặt hơn với các cấu trúc xây dựng hiện có.

#### *Exercise 16.*

Một hệ sinh thái gồm nhiều chất hữu cơ và môi trường tự nhiên của nó. Các chất hữu cơ và môi trường vô cơ có liên quan mật thiết và có tác động qua lại với nhau. Năng lượng của các chất vô cơ chuyển cho chất hữu cơ. Còn có nhiều chu kì trao đổi chất khác - đó là sự trao đổi chất hữu cơ và vô cơ. Vì thế cho nên khi chúng ta nghiên cứu một hệ sinh thái, chúng ta có thể phân tích các thành phần (tức cấu trúc của hệ sinh thái) và chúng ta có thể phân tích các quá trình của nó (tức chức năng của hệ sinh thái). Có 6 thành phần chính trong 1 hệ sinh thái.

#### *Exercise 17.*

Ngày nay khi tiếng Anh trở thành một ngôn ngữ chính trên thế giới, người ta có thể tưởng tượng được đó là một điều hết sức mới mẻ là vào thời Shakespeare, chỉ vài triệu người nói tiếng Anh, và tiếng Anh không được coi trọng ở những nước khác ở châu Âu và chưa bao giờ được biết đến ở những nước còn lại của thế giới.

Tiếng Anh đã trở thành một thứ tiếng Quốc tế vì nó được coi là tiếng mẹ đẻ bên ngoài nước Anh trên tất cả các lục địa trên Thế giới. Sự truyền bá tiếng Anh bắt đầu vào thế kỉ thứ 17, cùng với sự ra đời của các khu định cư đầu tiên ở Bắc Mỹ. Xét cho cùng, chính sự ra tăng dân số lớn ở Mỹ kèm theo sự di cư ồ ạt vào thế kỉ 19 và 20 đã đem lại cho tiếng Anh vị trí hiện nay trên thế giới.

#### *Exercise 18.*

### **Sự phát triển và tiến hoá**

Một hệ sinh thái luôn tồn tại ở dạng cân bằng. Nó có thể nuôi sống một số lượng nhất định các loài động thực vật khác nhau. Khi số lượng của một loài động tăng lên thì sẽ có một sự thay đổi trong hệ sinh thái. Sẽ không có đủ thức ăn và nước uống cho tất cả các loài động vật. Hậu quả là một số sẽ chết. Hệ thống này sẽ

trở về trạng thái cân bằng của nó. Hệ sinh thái tự điều hoà như là máy điều hoà nhiệt độ trong hệ thống sưởi.

Hệ sinh thái không ở trạng thái tĩnh – chúng luôn thay đổi. Động thực vật có thể thích nghi với những thay đổi trong môi trường tự nhiên. Có thể dự đoán được mọi sự thay đổi, ví dụ như khi một đám cháy phá huỷ hệ thực vật trong vùng, chắc chắn sẽ dẫn đến những sự thay đổi. Những cây cỏ, hoa lá đầu tiên sẽ mọc lại, côn trùng sẽ xuất hiện, gió sẽ phát tán hạt của các cây nhỏ. Những cây này sẽ mọc lên, cỏ sẽ mất đi và một khu rừng rậm sẽ hình thành. Một số cây không thể sống trong rừng rậm sẽ chết. Những cây khác sẽ phát triển và các loài muôn thú sẽ sống trong rừng.

### *Exercise 19.*

## **London**

London là thủ đô của Vương quốc Anh và là một trong những thành phố lớn nhất trên thế giới.

Khu cổ nhất của London được gọi là thành phố "City" nhỏ nhưng rất quan trọng. 2000 năm trước người ta đã xây dựng một thị trấn ở đây. Người ta đã sống và làm việc ở đó hàng trăm năm, nhưng bây giờ rất nhiều nhà cổ đã bị dỡ bỏ. Hàng nghìn người đã đến đây vào mỗi buổi sáng để làm việc trong các cơ quan lớn.

Về phía đông là một khu vực rộng lớn được gọi là "khu đông". Đây là khu nghèo nhất của London, nơi mà người da màu sinh sống. Những vịnh lớn ở dọc sông ở khu đông làm cho London trở thành một trong ba hải cảng lớn nhất trên thế giới

Về phía Tây là những cửa hàng, rạp hát của khu Tây, khu này rất nổi tiếng với những khách du lịch giàu có. Phố Oxford với các cửa hàng bách hoá lớn là phố rất thích hợp cho việc mua sắm. Ở khu Tây cũng có nhiều công viên đẹp. Công viên Hyde Park là công viên lớn nhất của London. Các viện của Quốc hội nằm dọc bờ sông Thames và quảng trường Quốc hội là một trong nhiều quảng trường ở London. Một số quảng trường nhỏ, còn một số khác rộng lớn và nhộn nhịp như là ở quảng trường Trafalgar.



### *Exercise 20*

Với 57 triệu người, Vương quốc Anh xếp hạng thứ 16 trên thế giới xét về mật dân số. Anh, Xứ Wên, Scốtlen và Bắc Ailen, 4 mảnh đất của Vương quốc Anh, có những truyền thống và nền văn hoá khác nhau. Qua nhiều thế kỷ, những người nhập cư và dân tị nạn chính trị từ Châu Âu đã đóng góp thêm vào những phong tục tập quán này. Gần đây nữa dân cư vùng biển Caribê và trên lục địa ở Nam Á người Cypriots, Trung quốc và những người khác đã góp phần làm phong phú thêm bản chất đa dân tộc của xã hội Anh quốc.

### *Exercise 21.*

Các thiết bị bảo vệ do đó phải được lắp đặt trên một hệ thống điện để đảm bảo cho việc truyền tải điện liên tục, để tránh làm thương tổn cho nhân viên sở điện, và làm hạn chế sự hỏng hóc của thiết bị khi có sự cố xảy ra. Việc lắp đặt các thiết bị này rất khác nhau tương ứng với mức độ bảo vệ điện theo yêu cầu.

### *Exercise 22.*

Cây cối và động vật có tác động qua lại lẫn nhau. Động vật lấy thức ăn từ thực vật. Tương tự cây cối lại phụ thuộc vào động vật. Tất cả cây cối và động vật phải có bốn thành phần : Cacbon, nitơ, hydrô, và ôxy. Những nhân tố này kết hợp với nhau để tạo thành protêin, chất béo, và hydrat cacbon ở động vật. Những chất này sẽ dùng để cấu thành nên các tế bào, mô cơ hoặc trở thành một nguồn năng lượng. Oxy được lấy từ không khí và nước. Nước cũng là một nguồn hydro cho động vật sống. Cacbon và nitơ có ở không khí, biêm, hoặc từ đất.

### *Exercise 23.*

Giá một chiếc máy tính nhỏ chưa đầy 50 bảng, các chuyên gia dự tính chẳng bao lâu nữa tất cả các trường học, các công việc giao dịch buôn bán và hầu hết các gia đình ở các nước giàu sẽ dùng một loại máy tính nào đó. Máy tính đã tạo ra những tình cảm mạnh mẽ - người ta hoặc thích hoặc ghét nó.

Những người yêu thích máy tính thì nói về sự hữu ích của nó như thế nào trong kinh doanh giáo dục và trong gia đình, ngoài những trò chơi vi tính ra, bạn có thể tính toán, học ngoại ngữ, viết thư, điều khiển hệ thống sưởi trung tâm và thậm chí ở một số nơi bạn có thể mang chúng đi chợ. Họ nhận xét máy tính mang lại cho họ sự nghỉ ngơi nhiều hơn vì nhiều công việc được Rôbốt máy tính hoá đảm nhiệm.

#### **Exercise 24.**

Về nguồn gốc thì Ulysses là người anh hùng của Hy Lạp cổ đại nhưng Ulysses của Maclean là một con tàu.

Tiểu thuyết có tiêu đề HMS Ulysses nói về các thủy thủ, những chiến hạm và cuộc chiến tranh trong những điều kiện khắc nghiệt của Bắc Đại Tây Dương và Bắc Cực, tiểu thuyết này kết thúc không có hậu. Nếu bạn thích những kết thúc hậu thì cuốn tiểu thuyết này không phù hợp với bạn. Câu chuyện xảy ra trong cuộc Đại chiến thế giới lần thứ 2 và tập trung vào chiến hạm Ulysses, một chiến hạm trong số nhiều chiến hạm khác đã bảo vệ đường tiếp tế của quân đồng minh ở Bắc Đại Tây Dương. Câu chuyện đã lên án cuộc chiến tranh vô nghĩa, hao tốn, đã cướp đi sinh mạng của nhiều người tốt và đã phá huỷ nhiều tàu chiến mà chẳng phục vụ cho một lợi ích nào cả.

#### **Exercise 25.**

### **Abraham Lincoln (1809-1865)**

Sinh ra trong một trang trại, bố là một nông dân nghèo và cậu bé này đã phải làm việc vất vả trong nông trại nhỏ bé của họ. Cậu bé Abe bé nhỏ đã học tập ở trường chưa đầy 1 năm. Nhưng cậu đọc rất nhiều sách. Cậu nói "Những điều tôi muốn biết là ở trong sách".

Một hôm Abraham mua được 1 cuốn sách nói về luật pháp của nước Anh, hàng ngày nghiên cứu và niềm say mê đã trở dậy trong ông. Ông đã trở thành 1 luật gia. Cuộc đời của ông trở nên thú vị

và hữu ích. Ông biết ông có thể giúp đỡ mọi người như thế nào và cố gắng sử dụng luật pháp để bảo vệ họ.

Vào năm 1864, Lincoln được bầu vào Quốc hội. Ông nói rằng ông chống lại chế độ nô lệ và người nô lệ da đen ở Châu Mỹ phải được tự do. Ông đã nghĩ đến một đất nước tự do cho tất cả mọi người.

Lincoln đã được mọi người biết đến. Năm 1860, ông được bầu làm Tổng thống của Hợp chúng Quốc Hoa kỳ.

Ý tưởng của ông về tự do cho những nô lệ da đen có lợi cho những người giàu có ở miền công nghiệp phía Bắc, còn những chủ đồn điền ở miền Nam bóc lột những người nô lệ đó thì phản đối. Do vậy cuộc chiến tranh giữa miền Bắc và miền Nam xảy ra và miền Bắc đã thắng lợi.

Năm 1864, Abraham Lincoln lại được bầu làm Tổng thống nhưng kẻ thù của ông, những kẻ muốn bóc lột người da đen như trước không thể để Lincoln tiếp tục sự nghiệp của mình.

Một năm sau đó ông bị giết hại trong một rạp hát ở Washington. Những tư tưởng của Abraham Lincoln sống mãi trong sự nghiệp đấu tranh của tất cả các tầng lớp nhân dân tiến bộ ở Mỹ.

#### *Exercise 26.*

Cơ lẽ thiết bị điện quan trọng nhất được sử dụng ngày càng rộng rãi trong suốt 20 năm qua là máy rửa bát đĩa. Rửa bát đĩa bằng tay không chỉ là công việc mất thời gian (có thể là mất nhiều thời gian hơn là việc dùng bữa ăn) mà còn là một công việc hết sức tẻ nhạt, đặc biệt khi bạn sống độc thân và công việc này cũng làm hỏng tay bạn. Máy rửa bát đĩa có nhiều kích cỡ, kiểu dáng khác nhau để phù hợp với túi tiền của bạn, số người trong gia đình và cách bày trong nhà bếp của bạn.

#### *Exercise 27.*

Mặt khác nền kinh tế của vùng tây bắc phát triển phụ thuộc nhiều vào công nghiệp khai thác gỗ. Cây bị đốn chặt để sản xuất những sản phẩm gỗ và nhiều nhà máy đã phải tăng nhịp độ để

đáp ứng cho nền khai thác gỗ. Trong những năm gần đây 500 hecta rừng già bị đốn chặt, kể cả những cây sống đến 500 năm và có đường kính rộng đến 2 mét. Trong khi Bộ lâm nghiệp Mỹ đang vật lộn với vấn đề cứu được bao nhiêu rừng, thì việc khai thác gỗ vẫn tiếp diễn. Các cán bộ lâm nghiệp địa phương từ chối cho phép chặt phá rừng già để lấy gỗ. Cuộc đấu tranh vẫn tiếp diễn trên qui mô Quốc gia với nhiều người ủng hộ mạnh mẽ cho cả hai phía.

### *Exercise 28.*

## **Các dịch vụ tài chính**

Các dịch vụ kinh doanh, bảo hiểm, tài chính, ngân hàng, và cho thuê bao chiếm khoảng 11% trong tổng sản lượng của kinh tế Vương quốc Anh. London có một thị trường bảo hiểm lớn nhất trên thế giới, và các ngân hàng của London chịu trách nhiệm cho khoảng 1/5 các khoản vay nợ ngân hàng Quốc tế. London là trung tâm buôn bán hàng hoá chính của thế giới và là một trung tâm đóng một vai trò ngày càng quan trọng cho các thị trường tài chính. Ngân hàng Anh đảm bảo cho sự vững chắc của hệ thống tài chính, thực thi chính sách tiền tệ làm dịch vụ tài chính đối với chính phủ và cung cấp những cơ sở vật chất cho hệ thống ngân hàng. Các ngân hàng riêng lẻ cung cấp các dịch vụ tài chính cho từng tư nhân và các công ty, đặc biệt là các dịch vụ mở tài khoản và cho vay. Những ngân hàng này cũng có dịch vụ cho vay tại nhĩ.

### *Exercise 29.*

## **Cambridge**

Cambridge là một thành phố đại học lâu đời đứng thứ hai ở Vương quốc Anh sau Oxford. Cambridge nằm bên sông Cam và được lấy tên từ con sông này. Có 29 trường đại học ở Cambridge. Đa phần dân số của thành phố này là giáo viên và sinh viên. Tất cả các sinh viên phải sống ở Cambridge trong khi họ đang theo học ở đó. Trên các đường phố của Cambridge, bạn có thể nhìn thấy nhiều bạn trẻ mặc quần áo màu xanh sẫm hoặc màu đen và đội mũ vuông đen. Truyền thống này bắt nguồn từ xa xưa khi mà các



sinh viên phải mặc toàn đồ đen. Vào thời đó họ không được chơi đùa, ca hát hay nhảy múa và họ cũng không được đi câu cá.

Nhiều vĩ nhân đã từng học tập tại Cambridge như Cromwell, Newton, Byron, Darwin và nhiều người khác. Nhà khoa học vĩ đại người Nga I.P. Pavlov đã đến Cambridge để nhận bằng tiến sĩ danh dự. Các sinh viên đã tặng ông một con chó đồ chơi.

Trường Cambridge nổi tiếng trên toàn thế giới. Nhiều nhà khoa học nổi tiếng đã làm việc ở đó như : Rutherford, Kappitza và những người khác.

### *Exercise 30.*

Tất nhiên bạn đã từng nghe đến tên tuổi của William Shakespeare. Ông là một trong những nhà văn vĩ đại nhất trên thế giới. Ông sinh ra ở Stratford on Avon, một thị trấn nhỏ của nước Anh. Trường Stratford vào thời đó là một trường khá nghiêm khắc. Học sinh phải có mặt ở trường lúc 6 giờ sáng vào mùa hè, còn mùa đông thì muộn hơn. Ngày học rất dài và chỉ những ngày nghỉ William Shakespeare mới có thể được nghỉ thật sự. Ông thường đi dạo trong rừng và bên bờ sông Avon. Nhưng điều thích thú nhất trong cuộc đời của William là các nhóm diễn viên thỉnh thoảng biểu diễn ở Stratford. Ông xem họ biểu diễn và nhận thấy rằng mình cũng muốn trở thành diễn viên. Năm 21 tuổi, ông đến London và trở thành diễn viên và sau này ông bắt đầu viết kịch. William Shakespeare quan sát cuộc sống mới và ông thể hiện trong tác phẩm của mình về cách nhìn nhận khác nhau của mọi người về cuộc sống mới đó. Cuộc sống đã tự mình hiện ra trong các vở kịch của ông. Cho đến nay, những nhân vật anh hùng của Shakespeare vẫn được dựng lên sân khấu. Chúng ta đến các nhà hát và rạp chiếu bóng để gặp lại những nhân vật chính trong các tác phẩm của ông.

Năm 1964, toàn thế giới đã kỷ niệm 400 năm ngày sinh của William Shakespeare. Một con tem đẹp của Liên xô trong năm đó chân dung ông và một số cảnh trong vở kịch Rô-mêo và Juliet.

### *Exercise 31.*

Qua nhiều thế kỷ, các ngày lễ hội có những vị trí khác nhau, nhưng ngày lễ Giáng sinh, lễ Phục sinh và ngày hạ chí vẫn giữ

nguyên vị trí là những ngày lễ chính trong năm. Lễ Giáng sinh trùng với thời điểm tối nhất trong suốt mùa đông dài đằng dặc ở Phần lan, là ngày nghỉ trọng tâm giành cho các gia đình. Vào khoảng giữa trưa ngày lễ Giáng sinh, bản hiệp ước hoà bình Nô en được phát đi trên khắp đất nước Phần lan từ cố đô Turku. Nghi thức này dựa trên luật pháp của thời Trung cổ mặc dù đã mất đi gốc tích luật pháp của nó hàng thế kỷ nhưng nó vẫn tồn tại như một nghi thức "khởi đầu" cho mùa giáng sinh. Tám hơi vào lễ Nô en là đặc trưng của đêm Nô en. Vào lúc chạng vạng tối, họ thắp nến lên trên những phần mộ của người trong gia đình. Rồi sau đó các gia đình tập trung lại cùng ăn bữa cơm Nô en chính. Cao điểm của đêm Nô en là sự viếng thăm của ông già Nô en, người trực tiếp mang quà Nô-en đến tặng. Nến và các vật trang trí Nô-en truyền thống được làm từ rơm để giữ không khí truyền thống của ngày lễ giáng sinh.

### *Exercise 32.*

Một tổ chức ở Philipin đã chế tạo ra một thiết bị nuôi gà nhanh và dễ hơn. Tổ chức này là "Học viện công nghiệp quy mô nhỏ" đó là trung tâm nghiên cứu và đào tạo của trường đại học tổng hợp Philipin. Thiết bị lò ấp trứng này giữ trứng gà luôn ấm và an toàn trong khi gà con đang phát triển bên trong. Làm lò ấp trứng gà rất dễ, sử dụng nguyên vật liệu ở địa phương. Đây là cách làm: đầu tiên tìm hai hộp làm bằng bìa cát tông, một hộp dài khoảng nửa mét, rộng gần nửa mét, cao khoảng 30 cm; hộp kia dạng như vậy nhưng các chiều nhỏ hơn một chút bạn có thể lồng hai hộp vào nhau và để các khoảng trống xung quanh. Tiếp theo bạn tìm báo cũ, vo tròn lại và đặt ở dưới đáy hộp lớn, dày khoảng 5 cm. Sau đó, đặt hộp nhỏ lên trên các nắm giấy, sao cho hộp nhỏ nằm chính giữa hộp lớn bên trên các nắm giấy. Vo thêm giấy và nhét vào bên ngoài hộp nhỏ, giấy này nằm ở giữa hộp to và hộp nhỏ. Bạn có thể dùng một số thanh gỗ để làm cho hộp chắc chắn. Sau đó làm một cái nắp bằng bìa cát tông sao cho thật khít với hộp to. Tiếp đó là bỏ một bóng điện và một bộ phận tự điều hoà



nhiệt vào trong hộp nhỏ . Bộ phận tự điều hoà nhiệt này sẽ đo nhiệt độ không khí và tắt , bật điện để giữ nhiệt độ trong hộp ở mức 32 độ C. Làm đáy của lò ấp trứng bằng một mảnh lưới đủ cao để có thể đặt một cho nước phía dưới, nước sẽ giữ độ ẩm không khí trong hộp .

### *Exercise 33.*

Shahriyar ÷ Quốcvương vùng Ba tư, rất ghét phụ nữ. Hoàng hậu đầu tiên đã lừa dối ông và kết quả là ông quyết định sẽ không để 1 phụ nữ nào có thể lừa dối ông 1 lần nữa. Ông ngủ với mỗi hoàng hậu mới một tối và sáng hôm sau thì hành quyết ngay. Lần này đến lượt nàng Shahrezad xinh đẹp, nàng không muốn bị chết 1 cách dễ dàng như vậy. Nàng quyết định xoá bỏ tục lệ độc ác của ông vua này. Shahrezad là một người kể chuyện rất giỏi, bởi vậy nàng đã thu xếp cho em gái của mình vào cung điện vào lúc sáng sớm để xin vua một sự chiếu cố đơn giản. Em gái nàng sẽ yêu cầu được nghe một câu chuyện trước khi đao phủ hành quyết. Nhà vua nghe thấy yêu cầu của cô em gái thì lấy làm thích thú. Và câu chuyện đã bắt đầu gây được sự chú ý của nhà vua. Khi đã đến giờ hành quyết mà câu chuyện vẫn chưa kết thúc, điều này khiến nhà vua rất tức giận vì ông vừa muốn nghe đoạn kết của câu chuyện vừa muốn xem lễ hành quyết. Tuy nhiên nhà vua không thể thực hiện được cả hai.

### *Exercise 34.*

Phần che khuất của mặt trăng là một điều bí ẩn có từ xa xưa đến nỗi sự thành công đầu tiên trong việc khám phá ra nó, chắc chắn sẽ đi vào lịch sử như một trong những bước tiến quan trọng nhất, mà con người đã làm được để nâng cao tầm hiểu biết của mình về vũ trụ.

Chuyến đi biển của Côlômbô thế kỷ XV quan trọng như thế nào với thế giới thì chuyến du hành của tên lửa Lunik III cũng có thể có ý nghĩa như vậy ở thế kỷ XX này.

Tàu Lunik III trông như hình con quay, nặng khoảng 614 bảng. Nó xuất phát từ trái đất bay đến phần phía nam của mặt trăng và tiếp tục hành trình khoảng 4000 dặm trên phần còn lại trước khi sức hút của mặt trăng làm cho nó thay đổi đường bay và quay đầu lại. Khi điều này xảy ra, tàu Lunik đã bay ở giữa mặt trời và mặt trăng theo một đường thẳng và lúc này đã có rất nhiều điều xảy ra. Nhận được tín hiệu từ trái đất tàu ngừng quay tròn và nắp ở đầu được mở ra, hai ca-mê-ra xuất hiện, một chiếc phóng to mặt trăng gấp lên hai lần rưỡi chiếc kia. Phim được sử dụng để chụp ảnh ở đây là loại phim đặc biệt để việc chụp ảnh phần tối của mặt trăng có thể điều khiển được từ trái đất. Khi các bức ảnh được chụp chúng sẽ được tự động tráng bằng một thiết bị đặc biệt, được thiết kế để làm việc trong điều kiện không trọng lượng.

### *Exercise 35.*

Những kẻ săn thú một lần nữa lại tấn công vào những con vượn núi, một trong những loài thú hiếm nhất của thế giới. Loài vượn này, chưa đến 250 con, sống thành từng bầy rải rác trong rừng trên những sườn dốc của 3 ngọn núi lửa đã tắt. Mỗi bầy thường có con đầu đàn là con đực cân nặng tới 130 kg và dễ dàng nhận ra nó bởi bộ lông có sọc màu sáng bạc xuất hiện khi con thú đã hoàn toàn trưởng thành. Những kẻ săn thú đâm con đầu đàn đến chết khi nó cố gắng bảo vệ gia đình mình, sau đó bắt đi chú vượn con khi mẹ nó bị mất tích và có thể cũng đã chết. Với quá ít số vượn còn sót lại, thì thậm chí 1 con vượn bị giết chết cũng thật sự là một thiệt hại lớn, đặc biệt là khi con đực đầu đàn có lưng màu sáng bạc bị chết. Không có con đực đầu đàn, rất có thể bầy vượn sẽ tan rã và nhập vào các bầy khác. Hai năm năm trước đây chỉ có khoảng 500 con vượn trong những khu rừng trên vùng núi cao này. Hiện thời số lượng này đã giảm xuống một nửa, không chỉ bị săn bắn trộm mà còn bị ảnh hưởng bởi sự can thiệp dưới đủ các hình thức khác của con người: đốn chặt gỗ trái phép, chăn nuôi gia súc và canh tác đã biến khu đất thành 1 dải đất hẹp. Chính phủ đang cố gắng bảo vệ loài vượn này và bảo đảm sự sống

còn của chúng. Một trong những việc thành công nhất của chính phủ là làm một nơi ở cho bảy vườn hoang dã để cho khách du lịch chiêm ngưỡng, những người này sẵn sàng trả một món tiền hào phóng và sẵn sàng chịu đựng bất kỳ gian khổ nào kể cả việc bò qua đường ngấm rậm rạp để có thể thoáng nhìn thấy những con vật này, người họ hàng gần gũi nhất hiện đang còn sống của chúng ta.

### *Exercise 36.*

## **Lịch sử hệ thống máy vi tính**

Lịch sử về sự phát triển các máy vi tính vào những ngày đầu ghi những tên tuổi gây rất nhiều ấn tượng. Nhà khoa học người Pháp Blaise Pascal đã được công nhận với việc ông phát minh ra chiếc máy cộng đầu tiên vào năm 1642. Chiếc máy này về bản chất hoạt động theo nguyên lý cơ học và sử dụng hộp số để chứa các con số. Mô hình cơ học này vào năm 1822 được Charles Babbage sư toán học thuộc trường Cambridge ở Anh kế thừa. Babbage đã dùng hộp số và các tập bìa có đục lỗ để tạo ra chiếc máy vi tính có chữ số đa chức năng đầu tiên mà ông gọi là máy phân tích, nhưng chiếc máy đó chưa bao giờ được hoàn thiện hoặc đưa vào sử dụng. Việc tiến hành các khảo sát đã khích lệ Herman Hollerith cải tiến cách sử dụng các bìa có đục lỗ trong việc xử lý dữ liệu đầu tiên. Việc ứng dụng thành công của họ trong cuộc khảo sát toàn quốc ở Mỹ năm 1890 đã chứng thực giá trị có thể nhận thấy từ các hệ thống xử lý dữ liệu tự động. Việc phân loại dữ liệu khảo sát thủ công tỉ mỉ và tốn thời gian đã được giảm đi cả về thời gian lẫn công sức, vì các bìa có đục lỗ được đưa vào máy và được tự động phân loại dữ liệu. Harvard Aiken ở trường Harvard đã kết hợp các quá trình cơ học của Babbage với công nghệ dùng bìa đục lỗ của Hollerith để phát triển thành 1 chiếc máy vi tính kết hợp giữa điện tử và cơ khí. Máy tính Harvard Mark I như người ta thường gọi có thể nhân chia với một tốc độ nhanh hơn trước nhiều. Bản chất của chiếc máy tính điện tử cơ học sử dụng bìa và băng đục lỗ để xử lý dữ liệu và điều khiển đã hạn chế tốc độ và khả năng của nó.

## II. CÁC BÀI TẬP KIỂM TRA KÍ NĂNG VIẾT.

Dạng 1: Viết lại các câu sau dùng các từ gợi ý.

### Exercise 1.

1. He/surprised/us/go/away/without/"goodbye"/
2. Before/give/evidence/you/must/swear/say/truth
3. I/give/you/ \$500/keep/mouth/shut
4. No matter/cold/he/have/a swim/lake/everymorning
5. My wife/not/accustomed/wander/dark/corridors

### Exercise 2.

1. Rain/prevent/I/go/out
2. You/better/listen/cassette-player/more/often/if/want  
improve/English *nghe lại, nhiều, thường xuyên*
3. If/soil/be fertilized/yield/large/crop
4. She/no/time/us
5. We/sorry/awfully/what/happen

### Exercise 3.

1. It/long/time/that/I/not/see/her
2. It/so/late/that/nothing/be done
3. I/sorry/the Smiths/not/town/weekend
4. She/so/beautiful/that/win/number/beauty-contest/is/she/want
5. Prevention/better/cure

### Exercise 4.

1. If/you/insomnia/take/pills/occasionally
2. Egg/contain/value/proteins
3. We/help/laugh/him
4. I/will/drop/you/team/if/not/train/harder
5. Day/after/day/passed/without/news/we/begin/lose/hope

**Exercise 5.**

1. Most/story/that/tell/Irish/not/true
2. Family hotels/hotels/which/welcome/parents/children
3. Like/women/she/love/tea party/gossip *drag, on low*
4. Process/learn/read/take/long/time
5. I/shouldn't/believed/it/if/not see/own eyes

**Exercise 6.**

1. I/saw/plane/crash/hill/burst/flames
2. Unless/they/leave/lamp/beside/hole/road/somebody/fall/it
3. High time/someone/tell/him/stop/behave child
4. We/use/room/special/occasions
5. Turn/oven/so that/meat/not/burn

**Exercise 7.**

1. If/house/be burned/we/claim/compensation *drag, on low*
2. I/would/never/tell/secret/woman
3. West End/where/can/find/most/London/theatres/cinemas
4. He/ kill/ men/ help/ bury/ treasure/ because/ want/ nobody/ himself/ know/ where/ it
5. I/take/shoes/avoid/make/noise

**Exercise 8.**

1. He/cough/warn/he/coming *drag, on low*
2. We/keep/hens/net/surrounded/wire/protect/foxes
3. Write/name/book/because/he/may/forget/who/lent/him
4. We/used/there/every summer
5. Not worry/we/plenty/time/do/all

## KEY

EX1.

1. He surprised us by going away without saying "goodbye"
2. Before giving evidence you must swear to say the truth
3. I'll give you 500 dollars to keep your mouth shut.
4. No matter how cold it is, he has a swim in the lake every morning
5. My wife is not accustomed to wandering along the dark corridors.

EX2.

1. The rain prevents me from going out.
2. You'd better listen to the cassette-player more often if you want to improve your English.
3. If the soil is fertilized it will yield a large crop.
4. She has no time for us.
5. We are awfully sorry about what has happened.

EX3.

1. It's a long time that I haven't seen her
2. It was so late that nothing can be done.
3. I'm sorry that the Smiths are not in town this weekend
4. She is so beautiful that she can win any number of beauty contests if she wants.
5. Prevention is better than cure.

EX4.

1. If you suffer from insomnia you could take pills occasionally
2. An egg contains valuable proteins
3. We can't help laughing at him.



4. I will drop you from the team if you don't train harder
  5. Day after day passed without news and we began to lose hope.
- EX5.

1. Most of stories that people tell about Irish are not true.
2. Family hotels are hotels which welcome parents and children.
3. Like many women, she loves tea parties and gossip
4. Process of learning how to read takes a long time
5. I shouldn't have believed it if I had not seen it with my own eyes.

EX6.

1. I saw the plane crashing into the hill and bursting into flames
2. Unless they leave a lamp beside that hole in the road somebody will fall into it.
3. It's high time someone told him to stop behaving like a child.
4. We use this room only on special occasions.
5. Turn down the oven so that the meat won't burn.

EX7.

1. If the house is burned down we can claim compensation
2. I would never tell a secret to a woman.
3. The West End is where you can find most London's Theatres and cinemas.
4. He killed the man who helped him to bury the treasure because he wanted nobody, but himself to know where it was.
5. I take off my shoes to avoid making any noise

EX8.

1. He coughs to warn that he is coming.

2. We keep our hens in the net surrounded by wire to protect them from the foxes.
3. Write your name in the book because he may forget who lent it to him
4. We used to go there every summer.
5. Don't worry we have plenty of time to do all.

**Dạng 2: Viết lại câu sao cho nghĩa của nó không thay đổi so với câu đã cho sẵn.**

*Exercise 1.*

1. I'd never eaten this before. ✓  
It is the first.....
2. "I must see the manager !", she cried. ✓  
She insisted ..... .
3. The only way you can become a good athlete is by training hard every day. ✓  
Only by.....
4. I'm sorry now that I asked her to say .  
Now I wish .....
5. He left quietly, so that he wouldn't disturb the children  
So as .....
6. Would you mind not smoking in here ?  
I'd rather .....
7. Because of the rough sea, the ferry couldn't sail  
The rough sea .....
8. Who does this bag belong to ?  
Whose .....
9. I would prefer you to deliver the sofa on Friday  
I would rather.....

10. Jame spoke to his lawyer before signing the contract

Jame didn't .....

*Exercise 2.*

1. Someone stole my purse from my handbag .

My purse.....

2. She asked Jone to repeat what he had said .

Please.....

3. It is a pity you didn't tell us about this.

I wish .....

4. We couldn't go out because the weather was so bad.

It was such.....

5. "Keep away from this area" said the security guard when we approached the fence.

The security guard told .....

6. He could repair the broken vase.

The .....

7. He is sorry now that he didn't invite us to his party .

He wishes.....

8. Although he had a good salary he was unhappy in his job.

In spite .....

9. He could not afford to buy the car.

The car.....

10. Couldn't you have got a bus to the station ?

Wasn't.....

*Exercise 3.*

1. Fares will be very likely to go up again this Autumn.

It looks.....

2. Do you think Sally will be able to come to us for Christmas ?  
Is there any.....
3. How about something to eat before the show ?  
Shall.....
4. That question cannot be answered satisfactorily.  
There is.....
5. He tries hard, but he cannot master English pronunciation .  
No matter.....
6. These new machines have put an end to queuing.  
Before these.....
7. Many people were severely critical of proposals for the new motorway .  
There was.....
8. If she hadn't insisted on kissing everyone good bye she would have caught the train .  
If it hadn't.....
9. "It certainly wasn't me who took your card" said Bob.  
Bob denied.....
10. I never intended to go to the meeting.  
I never had.....

#### *Exercise 4.*

1. If you missed the programme you couldn't really understand their intention.  
Unless you.....
2. I haven't been able to see them for over a year.  
It is.....
3. Someone has suggested abolishing income tax.  
It.....

4. There was no precedent for the King's resignation .

Never.....

5. He was so tired that he fell asleep before the end of the film.

He was too ~~tired~~ *had felt him, felt pass*

6. He failed to win the race.

He didn't .....

7. Nobody can deny that she has a beautiful voice.

It ...

8. The rent is \$60 per week.

The flat.....

9. He borrowed the money from the bank.

The bank.....

10. It is not very expensive.

It doesn't.....

#### Exercise 5.

1. It includes a tour of the Scottish highlands.

A tour of the Scottish highlands.....

2. He think it's easy to learn English.

He thinks.....

3. Sometimes a bypass has to be built.

Sometimes the government. ....

4. The owners of newspapers are usually very rich.

The people.....

5. Some one should have written to the newspapers .

The newspapers.....

6. A doctor took out her tonsils when she was six.

She.....

7. You look different .Has someone done your hair ?

Have you....

8. 'If I were you, Richard, I'd go by train ' said Sue .

Have you.....

9. Why don't you buy them this picture as a wedding present, Sarah?

Robin suggested.....

10. Helen can play the piano better than Elizabeth .

Elizabeth.....

#### Exercise 6.

1. She didn't say a word as she left the room.

She left the room.....

2. There are more people out of work in this country than ever before.

Never.....

3. "Don't move or I'll shoot" the bank robber said to the clerk .

The bank robber threatened.....

4. Helen said she was sorry she had hurt his feeling.

'Helen' apologised.....

5. Is this the only way to reach the city centre ?

Isn't there.....

6. He remembered, and so did she .

He didn't .....

7. When are the council going to do something about the city's traffic problems ?

It's high time something.....



8. May I borrow your pen ?

Would you mind .....

9. " I'd take a taxi if I were you" said Peter.

Peter suggested.....

10. It is said that he escaped to a neutral country.

He.....

### Exercise 7.

1. We'd prefer you not to smoke .

We'd rather.....

2. In spite of the forecast it stayed fine .

Although rain.....

3. You really should be able to dress yourself by now.

It is high.....

4. He is getting someone to mend the windows

He's having ..... mending repair

5. I'm never going to visit them again . .

That's.....

6. " Go home at once ,John" she said .

She told.....

7. I must leave now. or I will miss the bus .

I will miss.....

8. I'm sorry that I didn't learn to ride a bicycle when I was younger

I regret.....

9. Book now for a 10 percent reduction

You'll get.....

10. It is a three - month course .

The course.....

**Exercise 8.**

1. Paul said he was going to visit China the following year .

I'm .....  
*I'm going to visit China*

2. The porter told us the train had left five minutes earlier.

I'm sorry but.....  
*The train had left five minutes earlier*

3. She couldn't afford the Persian cat.

The persian cat.....  
*She couldn't afford the Persian cat*

4. The cheetah is the fastest animals in the world.

No animals run.....  
*No animals run faster than the cheetah*

5. You must not smoke in here.

Smoking.....  
*Smoking is not allowed here*

6. " Would you like to come round for a drink?" He said.

He.....  
*He asked me if I would like to come round for a drink*

7. " Don't swim out too far, boys" I said.

I warned.....  
*I warned the boys not to swim too far*

8. " Go on, apply for the Job" said Jack.

Jack.....  
*Jack told me to apply for the job*

9. He asked all persons not travelling to go ashore.

Will.....  
*He asked all persons not travelling to go ashore*

10. " If the flood gets worse we must leave the house" He said.

He said that .....  
*He said that if the flood gets worse we must leave the house*

**Exercise 9.**

1. The chapel was decorated by Italian craftsmen.

The King had.....  
*The King had been decorated by Italian craftsmen*

2. It took three hours to go round the grounds.

The tour.....

3. " Don't you dare to touch that vase" the curator warned the children .

The children .....

4. It is a pity she didn't insure the stereo.

She wishes she.....

5. Would you like me to call the police ?

I'll call.....

6. We had hardly put up the tent than it started to rain.

No sooner.....

7. Mary rang hours and hours ago.

It is hours.....

8. The water was so cold that the children could not swim in it.

The water was not.....

9. No matter how hard I tried I couldn't open the door.

Try.....

10. They were just as good as we had expected.

They certainly lived.....

#### Exercise 10.

1. They had to wait for twelve hours before the flight left.

Only after a.....

2. The drama critic of the " Daily news" regards the new play as a major break through.

According to.....

3. He never suspected that the money had been stolen.

At no time.....

4. Even though I admire his courage, I think he is foolish.

Much.....

5. Given fair warning, I could have avoided that date.

If you had told me..... *Given fair warning, would have*

6. Oil was slowly coating the edge of the shore.

The edge of the shore..... *oil was slowly coating*

7. This will be the orchestra's first performance outside London.

This will be the first time.

8. You 'll be back soon. I'll stay till then.

I'll.....

9. The performance had hardly begun when the lights went out.

Hardly.....

10. "If you get the job, will you move to York" Bill asked.

Bill asked.....

### Exercise 11.

1. "I don't love you any more" said Eric to his girlfriend.

Eric told his girlfriend that..... *he didn't love*

2. The noise next door did not stop until after midnight.

It was not.....

3. Although the play received good notices, not many people went to see it.

Despite.....

4. My decision to get up and dance coincided with the band's decision to stop playing.

The moment.....

5. It won't make any difference if it rains because we still go.

We still go.....

6. He said he was not guilty of stealing the car.

He denied.....

7. They couldn't trace who had supplied the information in the first place .

The source.....

8. Yogurt is supposed to be good for you.

Yogurt is supposed to do.....

9. The car was so rusty that it couldn't be repaired.

The car was too.....

10. He wondered whether he should wait for them or go on .

Shall *we wait or go on*.....

### Exercise 12.

1. " Shall we post it, Sir ?",he said .

He asked *whether he should post it*.....

2. " When it stops snowing we must start digging ourselves out,"  
I said .

I said that.....

3. He found that it was impossible to study at home.

He found.....

4. It was more expensive than I thought.

I *thought it was cheap*.....

5. I bought a book for James.

I bought *a book for James*.....

6. The child will die if nobody sends for a doctor.

Unless *somebody sends for a doctor*.....

7. He would prefer you to pay him immediately.

He'd rather *you paid him*.....

8. I'm sure he didn't know that his brother was seriously ill.

He couldn't possibly.. ..

9. The result of the match was never in doubt.

At no time.....

10. My protest was ignored.

Nobody.....

### Exercise 13.

1. Despite his ungainly air he is remarkably agile.

Although *un'gainly* *air* *he's* *re'markably* *agile*.

2. The refugees continued to feel unsafe until they had crossed the border.

Not until.....

3. It started to rain at two o'clock.

It has....*started*....*rain*....*at 2 o'clock*..(1)

4. She and I had never been there before.

Neither....*going*....*have*....*been*....*there*....*before*

5. It was such good weather that we went swimming.

The weather....*was*....*such*....*that*....*we*....*went*....

6. I can't see that far.

It is too....*far*....*for*....*me*....*to*....*see*....

7. I have never been to the ballet before.

It is....*the*....*first*....*time*....*I*....*was*....*to*....*the*....*ballet*

8. John doesn't always speak the truth, I'm afraid.

You can't.....

9. Why don't you put your luggage under the seat? He asked.

He suggested.....



10. John Speke failed to find the source of the river Nile.

John Speke didn't succeed.....

*Exercise 14.*

1. This furniture is so old that it isn't worth keeping.

This is... *So old that it isn't* —

2. I'm sure it wasn't Mrs Elton you saw because she is in Bristol.

It can't.....

3. It is pointless to have that old typewriter repaired.

That old typewriter is not.....

4. Mrs Taylor does not like living in such a small house.

Mrs Taylor wishes *she wouldn't live here* —

5. Bring your swimming things in case it is sunny .

He told.....

6. He was annoyed because his secretary came late to work.

He objected.....

7. The children may use the school swimming pool during the holidays.

There is no..... ✓

8. John's rudeness to Mrs Brown was quite inexcusable.

There is.....

9. Do you want to go over the main points again ?

Would.....

10. Must you go so soon ? it is only nine o'clock.

Can't you.....

**Exercise 15.**

1. Wherever he goes, his mother goes too.

His mother....~~and~~.....

2. Sociologists think a poor background can lead to baby battering.

Baby battering.....

3. I'm not sure about the price, but I think it is 5 pounds.

As far...as...know...it is only worth \$5.

4. The cost of running that house would be beyond our means.

We couldn't.....

5. Wasn't there anyone else in the house when the fire broke out?

Were you.....

6. Everyone heard about the accident before I did.

I was the.....

7. The fate of the two climbers is unknown.

It is a mystery.....

8. I do not enjoy cooking for five hungry children.

Cooking...for...5 hungry children it isn't interesting.

9. I didn't realise he was your brother until I saw the photograph.

It was only.....

10. John and Mary moved to Edinburgh twenty years ago.

It is...the...first...time... moved to E since 20 years

**Exercise 16.**

1. They made her hand over her passport.

She was....made...to hand over her passport.

2. No one has ever discussed that question.

That question has ever been discussed by no one.

3. No one in the group is younger than her.

She is... *the youngest in the group*

4. She didn't work hard enough, so she lost her job.

The reason.....

5. She is a slower and more careful driver than I am.

She drives ~~more~~ *more slowly and carefully than me (I do)*

6. Do you know where my shoes are, Mum? Sharon asked.

Sharon asked her mother.....

7. The instructions say you just add boiling water to the soup powder.

The soup powder.....

8. For a teacher of experience and ability, discipline was not a problem.

For such.....

9. My parents find fault with everything I do.

No matter..... *find fault with everything I do*

10. Don't you wish you could get out more in the evening?

Don't you get fed.....

### Exercise 17.

1. Mary told the police about the burglary.

Mary reported..... *from them*

2. I never intended to go to the wedding.

I never had... *any... intention to go to the wedding*

3. "It certainly wasn't me who took your car" said Bob.

Bob refused.....

4. Simon had no expected that he would feel so weak after the operation.

The operation left.....

5. Although he was not <sup>guilty</sup> they executed him.

In spite of .....

6. He was suspended for two matches for swearing at the referee.

Swearing at the referee earned .....

7. Though my house was cheaper than Norman's, it is bigger and more attractive .

Norman's house may...

8. Someone must meet him at the railway station .

He.....must...be...met at the ——— by .....

9. I often get up early.

I am used....to....get....up early.

10. Getting a good Job doesn't interest him.

He...isn't....interested. by ———.

### Exercise 18.

1. The garden is too small to play football in.

The garden is not...~~enough~~ big enough to play football in.

2. When did you start working here ?

How long...have...you...been worked here ?

3. She said to us " Don't be late".

She told.....us...not...to be late.

4. "You had better go there immediately".

She advised.....me....to go there.

5. I tried to eat the cake, but it was too sweet.

The cake....was...too...sweet for me to eat it.

6. The police started looking for him two months ago.

For two months now the police...have ~~start~~ been looking for him.

7. How old do you think this house is ?

When do you think...the house was built

8. This holiday is so expensive, I don't think I can go

It is such...~~expensive~~...that I ~~don't think~~ can't go

9. He spoke so quickly that I couldn't understand what he said.

He spoke too....quickly...for me ~~to~~ understand

10. I'm grateful that you looked after my mother so well.

Thank you.....

### Exercise 19.

1. Unless you start at once, You'll be late .

If you ~~don't~~ start at once, you'll be late

2. I have never seen a dirtier-looking dog.

This is...the first time saw a dirtier-looking dog

3. Although his leg was broken he managed to get out of the car.

In spite of his...broken leg

4. They will catch all the prisoners again by tonight.

All the prisoners.....

5. Mary rang hours and hours ago.

It is hours....since may long

6. You may get hungry on the train ,so take some sandwiches.

In case.....

7. They understand more than we do.

We don't ~~understand~~ as much as they do

8. The Prime Minister is going to open the enquiry.

The enquiry.....is being gone open by the

9. The robbers made the customers lie on the floor.

The customers ... *was... made to lie on the floor by*

10. No, please don't tell him.

I'd rather ... *you didn't tell him*

*1108*  
\* Exercise 20 :

1. Maria didn't apply for the job in the library and regrets it now.

Maria wishes.... *she hadn't* ~~she had~~ .

2. How old is your little boy ? Said the nurse to Mrs Bingley.

The nurse asked Mrs Bingley. *how old her boy was*

3. He was sorry he hadn't said good bye to her at the airport.

He regretted.....

4. It is ages since Alan visited his parents.

Alan... *hasn't visited his parents for ages*

5. He spends two hours a week sorting out stamps.

Sorting out his stamps... *he's spent two hours a week*

6. Some newspapers have more pictures than texts.

There are.... *more pictures than text in newspapers than for*

7. England has many old towns and villages.

There... *are many old towns and villages in E*

8. There are often very narrow streets.

Their.... *town has many*

9. It is a pity I didn't take my doctor's advice.

I wish... *I had* .

10. Unless you phone immediately you won't get any information

If..... *you* . *will*



### Exercise 21.

1. He prefers golf to tennis .

He 'd rather....*play golf, than tennis*

2. What a pity you failed your driving test.

I wish ..*hadn't failed* —

3. It is only 10 minutes from the town centre.

Getting to the town centre only.....

4. He still hasn't received any money from home.

His family.....

5. The furniture was so expensive that I didn't buy it.

The furniture was too..*expensive for me to buy* &

6. The bus takes longer than the train.

The train...*doesn't take as long as the bus*

7. We couldn't drive because of the fog.

The fog prevented.....

8. John asked if it was the blue one or the green she wanted.

Which.....

9. Her father pays her fees ; otherwise she can't be here.

If.....

10. Suppose the plane is late.

What...*a late plane? Suppose the plane is late?*

### Exercise 22.

1. Why don't you ask her yourself ?

I suggest.....

2. The garage is going to repair the car for us next week.

We are going .....

3. The cake was so hard that I couldn't eat it.

It was.....

4. John has not had his hair cut for over six months.

It is.....

5. Somebody repaired her motorbike yesterday.

She.....

6. I'm sorry that I didn't finish my homework last night.

I wish.....

7. He lives too far away from the school.

He doesn't live near

8. It is a two - week holiday.

The holiday.....

9. You can stay two nights in a 600 year - old castle .

You can stay two nights in a castle .....

10. Phone now, or you may be too late.

You may be too late if.....

### ***Exercise 23.***

1. He is said to have been in the French foreign legion.

People.....

2. During his childhood the family lived in Cornwall.

His family.....

3. He is thought to be the best player.

It is.....

4. He seemed to be living in the area.

It seemed .....

5. Where is the station car - park ? Mr Smith asked.

Mr Smith asked *Where is the car park?*

6. That was a silly thing to say.

What... *a silly thing to say.*

7. They travelled across India, and then flew on to Korea.

After they *had* .....

8. She cut the apple into quarters and gave each child a piece.

The apple... *was* .....

9. In spite of his age, Mr Benson runs seven miles before breakfast.

Although...

10. There are two large restaurants in the art gallery.

The art gallery... *is* .....

#### Exercise 24.

1. The car has leather seats.

The seats... *are* .....

2. He 's had it for three weeks.

He bought it *3*... *ago* .....

3. The garage is going to repair the car for us next month.

We are going... *to* .....

4. Maria says she'd like to have been put in a higher class.

Maria wishes... *she had been* .....

5. We didn't go because it rained.

If it hadn't *rained*, *we would have gone*.

6. I would like you to help me to put the chair away.

Do you mind... *helping me* .....

7. A train leaves at eight o'clock every evening.

There is... 8 ~~four~~ - - -

8. You must see the manager tomorrow morning.

You've... ~~been~~ seen.

9. She liked Paris very little, and Rome less.

She thought Rome.....

10. I can't get my feet into these shoes.

These shoes.....

### Exercise 25 :

1. I've never met such a famous person before.

It is... the first time I met - - -

2. The garden still needs digging.

The garden hasn't... ~~been~~ dug

3. Tim will be eighteen next week.

It is Tim's... birthday next week.

4. Apples are usually cheaper than oranges.

Apples are not as... ~~cheap~~ as expensive as oranges.

5. I am always nervous when I travel by air.

Travelling... by... air... makes me nervous.

6. The mechanic serviced my car last week.

My car... B.A.

7. That can cost a lot of money.

That can be... B.A. ....

8. Some newspapers are more informative than other means of mass media.

Other means of mass media... are not as ~~informative~~ as newspapers.

9. Not only is this exercise tedious it is also hard .

This.....

10. Tanet has made the neccesary arrangements.

The.....BA

### Exercise 26.

1. What time does the manager come back ? The customer asked.

The customer wanted.....

2. You 'd better not touch that switch.

If I ~~were~~ would if I

3. He said" We must have a party to celebrate this" .

He said that.....

4. "Must you go so soon ?" I said.

I.....

5. As a student he had known great poverty.

When.....

6. " Why don't you apply for the job, Anne ?",said Sue.

Sue suggested.....

7. Remind me to water the plants.

Don't.....

8. If it doesn't rain soon,millions of pounds' worth of crops will be lost.

Unless.....

9. I didn't realise who he was until later.

Only later.....

10. If you want my advice, you would forget about buying a new house

If.....

**Exercise 27.**

1. I had better get back to work.

It 's..... *For me to get*

2. My father speaks very little French.

My father speaks hardly..... *at all... French.*

3. The dog was so fierce that nobody would visit them.

They had... *NO*

4. The critics were very impressed by her performance.

Her performance made.....

5. " You stole the jewels ! ", the inspector said to him.

The inspector accused.....

6. I expected that he would get there by lunch time.

I expected.....

7. It is such a pity your sister can't come as well.

If only....

8. People who haven't been abroad shouldn't criticise foreign customs.

Foreign customs .....

9. My parents find fault with everything I do.

No matter.....

10. It is nobody's fault that the meeting was cancelled.

Nobody.....

**Exercise 28.**

1. I am fond of my nephew although he behaves terribly.

Despite.....



2. Although the team played well, they lost.

Despite....

3. Six years ago we started writing to each other.

We have....

4. The heat was such that I nearly fainted.

It was.....

5. I'm sorry I interrupted your speech in the middle.

I apologize.....

6. We couldn't answer those two difficult questions.

Those two.....

7. We had never been so happy before.

We were... *unhappy here*

8. Do you have to bring that heavy suitcase with you ?

Is it really.....

9. They say Rembrandt painted this picture .

Rembrandt.....

10. His resemblance to his father is remarkable.

He looks...

### Exercise 29.

1. He speaks more persuasively than his brother.

He is a.... *quicker*

2. The last time it rained was a fortnight ago .

It.....

3. Is it essential to meet your aunt at the station ?

Does your aunt .....

4. Their teacher is making them prepare carefully for the exam.

They are.....

5. I would do anything for you.

There is.....

6. He was late because his car broke down .

The reason.....

7. I won't swim in the sea because it's too cold.

The sea is not.....

8. Robert says he will never visit Manchester again .

Robert says this.....

9. Why was she late ?

What .....

10. Scientists think that black holes exist in space .

Black holes.....

### *Exercise 30.*

1. The house seemed to have been unoccupied for several years.

It looked.....

2. Police were informed of the identity of the murdered man .

The identity.....

3. The fisher man's life was one of great poverty .

Throughout .....

4. The president is the statesman I admire most of all.

The statesman.....

5. The students regretted that they had missed the lecture .

The students regretted not.....

6. She asked me how I liked her new dress.

How .....

7. I've warned you not to go near that dog .

I've warned you about.....

8. I can't cook as well as my mother does .

My mother.....

9. Would you like me to finish the work tonight ?

I'll .....

10. "You stole my best cassette , Amada", said William .

William accused.....

### Exercise 31.

1. Philip asked Olive if she could remember where she had put the camera.

Philip said "Olive....."

2. The bridge was so low that the bus couldn't go under it.

It was.....

3. There is no need for you to talk so loudly .

You don't.....

4. The children couldn't go swimming because the sea was very rough .

The sea was too.....

5. I advise you to put your money in the bank .

You'd.....

6. Have you got a cheaper carpet than this ?

Is this.....

7. He does a lot of work in the evening .

He works very.....

8. I'm going to the theatre tomorrow , and I'm really looking forward to it .

I'm really looking.....

9. My brother and I both went to that school .

I went to that school and so.....

10. I wasn't there at that time.

He denied.....

### *Exercise 32.*

1. The children should be working by now .

It is time.....

2. They made him wait for two hours .

He was.....

3. The police made the boat turn back .

The boat.....

4. I'd rather you smoked in here.

Would.....

5. If I had known all the facts, I would not have rung the police.

As I.....

6. We shall notify the police about this matter .

The police.....

7. Galileo is considered to be the father of modern astronomy.

Galileo is regarded.....

8. The value of Sterling has fallen considerably in the past week.

There has.....

9. That dress has only the slightest mark on it .

I can barely.....

10. I have never seen such a mess in my life .

It is .....

*Exercise 33.*

1. It took us three hours to open the door.

We spent.....

2. His mother wouldn't allow him to go out.

He.....

3. He'll never forget waiting for his friend to go to school.

He'll always remember.....

4. "Let's go for a walk in the park ", said Andrews.

Andrews suggested that.....

5. His second attempt on the world record was successful .

He broke.....

6. He said " I wish I knew the answer" .

He said that.....

7. He wished he hadn't spent so much money .

He was sorry.....

8. He said " Good luck !"

He wished.....

9. I applied for the job but was turned down.

My.....

10. " Please don't drive so fast " Ann begged her boyfriend .

Ann pleaded.....

*Exercise 34.*

1. My husband didn't leave the car keys , so I couldn't pick him up at the station

If my husband.....

2. I don't suppose you have change for a pound, do you ?

Do you happen.....

3. A train leaves at 7 o'clock every morning .

There is.....

4. An up - to - date visa is necessary for Andorra.

You'll.....

5. Before he had the car , he went to work by a bike .

Before he had the car he used to.....

6. He insisted on a full apology .

Nothing but.....

7. The doctor advised me to rest .

The doctor suggested.....

8. There is always trouble when he comes to visit us .

Whenever .....

9. He never has enough money .

He's always.....

10. Is it possible to travel to London by coach ?

I wonder.....

## KEY

### EX1.

1. It's the first time I ate/have eaten this.
2. She insisted on seeing the manager.
3. Only by training hard can you become a good athlete.
4. Now I wished I hadn't asked her to stay.



5. So as not to disturb the children, he left quickly.
6. I'd rather you didn't smoke here.
7. The rough sea prevented the ferry from sailing.
8. Whose bag is it ?
9. I would rather have the sofa delivered on Friday
10. Jame didn't sign the contract before speaking to his lawyer.

**EX2.**

1. My purse was stolen from my handbag.
2. "Please, repeat what you have said, Jone ?
3. I wish you had told us about this.
4. It was such bad weather that we couldn't go out.
5. The security guard told us to keep away from that area.
6. The broken vase could be repaired.
7. He wishes he had invited us to his party.
8. In spite of good salary, he was unhappy in his job.
9. The car was too expensive for him to buy.
10. Wasn't it possible for you to get a bus to the station ?

**EX3.**

1. It looks as if fares would go up again this Autumn
2. Is there any possibility that Sally would come to us for Christmas?
3. Shall we eat something before the show ?
4. There is no satisfactory answer for that question.
5. No matter how hard he tries he cannot master English pronunciation.
3. Before these new machines were invented there used to be queues.

7. There was much criticism about the proposals for the new motorway
8. If it hadn't been delayed by her kissing everyone goodbye, she would have caught the train.
9. Bob denied having taken the card.
10. I never had the intention to go to the meeting.

EX4.

1. Unless you saw the programme you couldn't understand their intention.
2. It is a year since I last saw them.
3. It has been suggested that income tax be abolished.
4. Never before had the King resigned.
5. He was too tired to see the end of the film.
6. He didn't succeed in the race.
7. It can't be denied that she has a beautiful voice.
8. The flat costs \$60 per week.
9. The bank lent him the money.
10. It doesn't cost a lot of money.

EX5.

1. A tour of the Scottish highlands is included
2. He thinks learning English is easy.
3. Sometimes the government has to build a bypass.
4. The people who own newspapers are usually rich
5. The newspapers should have been written to.
6. She had her tonsils taken out when she was six.
7. Have you had your hair done ? You look different.
8. Have you thought of going by train ?

9. Robin suggested buying them this picture as a wedding present.
10. Elizabeth can play the piano worse than Helen.

EX6.

1. She left the room without saying a word.
2. Never before are more people out of work.
3. The robber threatened to shoot if the clerk moved.
4. Helen apologized for having hurt his feeling.
5. Isn't there any other way to reach the city centre ?
6. He didn't forget. Neither did she.
7. It's high time something about the city's traffic was going to be done by the council.
8. Would you mind lending me your pen ?
9. Peter suggested taking a taxi.
10. He is said to have escaped to a neutral country.

EX7.

1. We'd rather you didn't smoke.
2. Although rain was forecasted it stayed fine.
3. It's high time you were able to dress yourself.
4. He's having the windows mended by someone.
5. That's the last time I visited them.
6. She told John to go home.
7. I will miss the bus if I linger on/stay on.
8. I regret that I hadn't learned to ride a bicycle when I was younger.
9. You'll get a ten percent reduction if you book now.
10. The course lasts three months.

EX8.

1. "I'm going to visit China next year", Paul said.
2. I'm sorry but the train left five minutes ago.
3. The Persian cat was too expensive for her to buy.
4. No animals run faster than the cheetah.
5. Smoking is prohibited here.
6. He invited me to come round for a drink.
7. I warned the boys that they shouldn't swim too far.  
not to swim too far.
8. Jack encouraged me to apply for the job.
9. Will all persons not travelling go ashore ?
10. He said that if the flood got worse they had to leave the house.

EX9.

1. The King had the chapel decorated by Italian craftsmen.
2. The tour round the ground took 3 hours.
3. The children were reminded not to touch that vase.
4. She wishes she had insured the stereo.
5. I'll call the police if you like.
6. No sooner had we put up the tent than it started to rain.
7. It's hours since Mary rang.
8. The water was not warm enough for the children to swim.
9. Try to the best of my ability, I still couldn't open the door.
10. They certainly lived as well as we had expected.

EX10.

1. Only after a 12 hour delay did the flight leave.

2. According to the drama critic of the "Daily News" the play is a major break through.
3. At no time in his life did he suspect that the money had been stolen.
4. Much as I admire him, I still think he is foolish.
5. If you had told me, I could have avoided that date.
6. The edge of the shore was slowly coated by oil.
7. This will be the first time the orchestra performs outside London.
8. I'll stay till you are back.
9. Hardly had the lights gone out when the performance began.
10. Bill asked me whether I would move to York if I got the job.

EX 11:

1. Eric told his girlfriend that he didn't love her anymore.
2. It was not until after midnight that the noise next door stopped.
3. Despite its good notices, not many people went to see the play.
4. The moment I decided to get up and dance, the band stopped playing.
5. We still go despite the rain  
in spite of the rain.  
although it rains.
6. He denied having stolen the car.
7. The source of the information couldn't be traced.
8. Yogurt is supposed to do you good.
9. The car was too rusty to be repaired.
10. Shall we wait for them or go on ?

## EX 12.

1. He asked if they would post it.
2. I said that we had to start digging ourselves out when it stopped snowing.
3. He found studying at home impossible.
4. I thought it was cheaper.
5. I bought James a book.
6. Unless a doctor is sent for, the child will die.
7. He'd rather you paid him immediately.
8. He couldn't possibly be seriously ill.
9. At no time was the result of the match in doubt.
10. Nobody paid attention to my protest.

## EX13.

1. Although his air is ungainly, he is remarkably agile.
2. Not until had the refugees crossed the border did they feel safe.
3. It has rained since 2 o'clock.
4. Neither of us have been there before.
5. The weather was so good that we went swimming.
6. It's too far for me to see.
7. It is the first time I went to the ballet.
8. You can't believe John because he never speaks the truth.
9. He suggested putting my luggage under the seat.
10. John Peke didn't succeed in finding the source of the river Nile.

## EX 14 :

1. This is the old furniture that isn't worth keeping.



- CO-1-20 12/20/00
2. It can't be Mrs Elton because she is in Bristol.
  3. That old typewriter is not repairable.
  4. Mrs Talor wishes she didn't live in such a small house.
  5. He told me to bring swimming things in case it was sunny.
  6. He objected to his secretary's coming to work late.
  7. There is no doubt that the children can use the school swimming pool during the holidays.
  8. There is no excuse for John rudeness to Mrs Brown.
  9. Would you like to go over the main points again ?
  10. Can't you go a bit later. It's only nine o'clock.

EX 15 :

1. His mother follows him wherever he goes.
2. Baby battering can be caused by a poor background in sociologists opinion.
3. As far as I know it is only worth \$5.  
costs only \$5.
4. We couldn't afford the cost of running that house.
5. Were you in the house when the fire broke out ?
6. I was the last to hear about the accident.
7. It's a mystery about the fate of the two climbers.
8. Cooking for 5 hungry children isn't interesting.
9. It was only when I saw the photograph did I realize that he was your brother.
10. It is 20 years ago since John and Mary moved to Edinburgh.

EX 16 :

1. She was made to handover her passport.
2. That question has never been discussed before.

3. She is the youngest person in the group.
4. The reason why she lost her job was that she didn't work hard.
5. She drives more slowly and carefully than I do.
6. Sharon asked her mother where her shoes were.
7. The soup powder is prepared when boiling water is added.
8. For such an experienced and able teacher, discipline was not a problem.
9. No matter what I do, my parents find fault with it.
10. Don't you get fed up with staying indoors so much?

EX 17 :

1. Mary reported the burglary to the police.
2. I never had any intention to go to the wedding
3. Bob ~~refused~~ having taken the car. *denied*
4. The operation left Simon weak.
5. In spite of his innocence, they executed him.
6. Swearing at the referee earned him a suspension for 2 matches.
7. Norman's house may be smaller and less attractive.
8. He must be met at the railway station.
9. I am used to getting up early
10. He is not interested in getting a good job.

EX 18.

1. The garden is not large enough to play football in.
2. How long have you been working here ?
3. She told us not to be late.
4. She advised me to go there.
5. The cake was too sweet for me to eat.

6. For 2 months now the police have been looking for him.
7. When do you think the house was built ?
8. It's such an expensive holiday that I can't go.
9. He spoke too quickly for me to understand.
10. Thank you for have looked after my mother so well.  
having looked

EX 19 :

1. If you didn't start at once you would be late.
2. This is the dirtiest looking dog I have ever seen.
3. In spite of his broken leg he managed to get out of the car.
4. All the prisoners will be caught again tonight.
5. It is hours since Mary rang.
3. In case you are hungry, take some sandwiches.
7. We don't understand as much as they do.
3. The enquiry is going to be opened by the Prime Minister.
9. The customers were made to lie on the floor.
10. I'd rather you didn't tell him.

EX 20 :

1. Maria wishes she had applied for the job in the library.
2. The nurse asked Mrs Bingley how old her boy was.
3. He regretted that he hadn't said goodbye to her at the airport.
4. Alan hasn't visited his parents for ages.
5. Sorting out his stamps took 2 hours a week.
6. There are more pictures in newspapers than in texts.
7. There are many old towns and villages in England.
8. Their town has many narrow streets.

9. I wish I had taken my doctor's advice.

10. If you phone immediately you will get some information.

EX 21 :

1. He'd rather play tennis than golf.

2. I wish you hadn't failed your driving test.

3. Getting to the town centre only takes 10 minutes.

4. His family hasn't sent him any money.

5. The furniture was too expensive for me to buy.

6. The train travels faster than the bus.

7. The fog prevented us from driving

8. Which colour do you like, John, the blue one or the green ?

9. If her father hadn't paid her fees, she couldn't have been here.

10. What would happen if the plane were late ?

EX 22 :

1. I suggested that you should ask her yourself.

2. We are going to have the car repaired next week.

3. It was too hard for me to eat.

4. It is six months since John had his hair cut.

5. She had her motorbike repaired yesterday.

6. I wish I had finished my homework the night before.

7. He doesn't live near his school.

8. The holiday lasts two weeks.

9. You can stay two nights in a castle which is 600 years old.

10. You may be too late if you don't phone now.

EX 23.

1. People say that he has been in the French foreign region.

2. His family lived in Cornwall when he was a child.
3. It is said that he is the best player.
4. It seemed that he was living in the area.
5. Mr Smith asked where the station car park was.
6. What a silly thing to say !
7. After they had travelled across India, they flew on to Korea.
8. The apple was divided into quarters and each child was given a piece.
9. Although Mr Benson is old, he runs seven miles before breakfast.
10. The art gallery has 2 large restaurants.

EX 24.

1. The seats are covered in leather.
2. He bought it 3 weeks ago.
3. We are going to have our car repaired next month.
4. Maria wishes she had been put in a higher class.
5. If it hadn't rained we would have gone.
6. Do you mind helping me to put the chair away ?
7. There is the 20.00 train every evening.
8. You have got to see the manager tomorrow morning.
9. She thought Rome was worse than Paris.
10. These shoes are too small for my feet.

EX 25.

1. It is the first time I met such a famous person.
2. The garden hasn't been dug.
3. It's Tim's eighteenth birthday next week.
4. Apples are not as expensive as oranges.

5. Travelling by air makes me nervous.
6. My car was serviced by the mechanic last week.
7. That can be expensive/costly.
8. Other means of mass media are less informative than some newspapers.
9. This exercise is both tedious and hard.
10. The necessary arrangements have been made by Tanet.

EX 26.

1. The customer wanted to know what time the manager came back.
2. If I were you I wouldn't touch that switch.
3. He said that they had to have a party to celebrate that.
4. I asked if he had to go so soon.
5. When he was a student he had known great poverty.
6. Sue suggested applying for the job.
7. Don't forget to ask me to water the plants.
8. Unless it rains soon millions of pounds' worth of crops will be lost.
9. Only later did I realize who he was.
10. If I were you I wouldn't buy a new house.

EX 27.

1. It's better for me to get back to work.
2. My father speaks hardly any French.
3. They had such fierce dogs that nobody would visit them.
4. Her performance made the critics impressed.
5. The inspector accused him of having stolen the jewels.
6. I expected him to get there by lunch time.



7. If only your sister could come.
8. Foreign customs shouldn't be criticised by people who haven't been abroad.
9. No matter what I do my parents are never satisfied.
10. Nobody is blamed for the cancellation of the meeting.

EX 28.

1. Despite my nephew's bad behaviour I am fond of him.
2. Despite the team's good performance they didn't win.
3. We have written to each other for 6 years.
4. It was so hot that I nearly fainted.
5. I apologize for having interrupted you in the middle.
6. Those two questions were too difficult for us to answer.
7. We were unhappy before.
8. Is it really necessary to bring that heavy suitcase with you ?
9. Rembrandt is said to have painted this picture.
10. He looks remarkably like his father.

EX 29.

1. He is a more persuasive speaker than his brother.
2. It's a fortnight ago since it last rained.
3. Does your aunt really want to be met at the station ?
4. They are made to prepare carefully for the exam.
5. There is nothing I shouldn't do for you.
6. The reason for his coming late was that his car broke down.
7. The sea is not warm enough for me to swim in.
8. Robert says this is the last time he visits Manchester.
9. What made her late ?

10. Black holes are thought to exist in space.

EX 30.

1. It looked as if it had been unoccupied for several years.
2. The identity of the murdered man was informed to the police.
3. Throughout the fisherman's life he was very poor.
4. The statesman I admire most of all is the president.
5. The students regretted not having attended the lecture.
6. "How do you like my new dress?" She asked.
7. I've warned you about going near that dog.
8. My mother cooks better than I do (me)
9. I'll finish the work tonight if you like.
10. William accused Amanda of having stolen his best cassette.

EX 31.

1. Philip said, "Olive, do you remember where you have put the camera?"
2. It was impossible for the bus to go under the bridge as it was so low.
3. You don't have to talk so loudly.
4. The sea was too rough for the children to swim.
5. You'd better put your money in the bank.
6. Is this carpet the cheapest one?
7. He works very hard in the evening.
8. I'm really looking forward to going to the theatre tomorrow.
9. I went to that school and so did my brother.
10. He denied being there at that time.  
that he had been there at the time.

EX 32.

1. It's time the children were working.
2. He was made to wait for 2 hours.
3. The boat was made to turn back by the police.
4. Would you mind smoking in here ?
5. As I didn't know all the facts I rang the police.
6. The police will be notified about this matter by us.
7. Galileo is regarded as the father of modern astronomy.
8. There has been a considerable fall in the value of Sterling.
9. I can barely see the mark as it is slight.
10. It's the first time I have seen such a mess in my life.

EX 33 .

1. We spent 3 hours opening the door.
2. He wouldn't be allowed to go out by his mother.
3. He'll always remember waiting for his friend to go to school.
4. Andrews suggested that they should go for a walk in the park.
5. He broke the world record the second time.
6. He said that he hadn't known the answer.
7. He was sorry he had spent so much money.
8. He wished me good luck.
9. My application for the job was turned down.
10. Ann pleaded her boyfriend not to drive so fast.

EX 34.

1. If my husband had left the car keys, I could have picked him up at the station.
2. Do you happen to have change for a pound ?

3. There is a 7 o'clock train every morning.
4. You'll need to get an up-to-date visa for Andorra.
5. Before he had the car he used to go to work by bike.
6. Nothing but a full apology was accepted.
7. The doctor suggested me resting (that I should rest.)
8. Whenever he comes to visit us there is trouble.
9. He's always broke.
10. I wonder whether we can travel to London by coach.

**Dạng 3: Dùng các từ gợi ý để hoàn chỉnh các câu sau. Thay đổi những chỗ cần thiết.**

1. *Thanks*  
1. Thanks/ letter. I /sorry/not write/ a long time.
2. My test/ two weeks, and I / English/ yet.
3. I happy/ you/ come/ England. You / soon ?
4. I / show/ a lot of interesting places.
5. I / you/ meet/ English friends. I /lot/since/here.
6. You/ English because /none (French). It /too difficult ?
7. You/ English/ school ? How long/ stay ? I /find/ flat.
8. Address/ top/good English dinner /you.
9. I /flat/ hotel/ expensive /me.
2. *I have been out of the country for a long time.*  
1. I/postcard/ afternoon.
2. I / pleased/you/ able/here/week.
3. Not worry / accommodation. There/ Hotel Royal/ corner.
4. That/ hotel/ I/ stay/ before/ landlady.
5. I /sure/you/bored. This/ interesting town.

1. I / college/ afternoons/ so/ we/meet/ evening

2. Mr John.....he/ teacher/me/came here.....says I / longer.

3. I think/ good idea. what/ think ?

4. I/ this town and happy/ but/ I/ not satisfied/ English/yet.

0. I/everyone. Write/soon.

5. It/me/you/last week

6. After you/ go/ I felt/ lonely. I/do.

7. I enjoy/ you/ again. I /hope/you /yourself/ too.

8. I/ took/exam/three days ago. It/difficult.

9. If/ I /pass. I/ get/ certificate.

10. I/ be able/ good job.

11. I/had/class party/ last night. The atmosphere/great.

12. Everyone/good mood/because/they/finish/course.

13. I/miss/new friends/ I/made.

0. I/stop/now. See/ next week.

1. I/hope/you/me/airport.

I/miss/you/a lot.

I/been/ sad/week/because I/ seen/you/month.

I/ learn/French/ week. I/ hard. I/been/ much.

I/do/home work/ last night/ and/ tired/today.

Paris/small/London/but/it/interesting.

I /think/best city/I/been to.

7. There/much/pollution/there/not/restaurants/English wine/but I/like/a lot.
8. All/teachers/intelligent/none/speak English /me/I/speak French.
9. Well/ I/ finish/now. I/write/next week/I/promise.

5.

1. Last Monday/ I/went/ an excursion/ Cambrige.
2. I/ went/ my classmates.
3. I/got up/early/ and/met/school.
4. Morning/we/the city. It/interesting.
5. We /lunch/ a restaurant/I/drink/some beer.
6. Afternoon/we/park/walk/park.
7. I/meet/ English man / blue eyes.
8. I /not/ practise/ English/because/spoke/ French/time.
9. Do/you/nice/weekend ? I/you/ much.

6.

1. Exactly/ two weeks/ I purchase/shirt/your store/ High Sreet.
2. I /wear/time/I/amazed/a hole/left sleeve.
3. What/more/shirt/not/cheap. I/believe/pay/quality.
4. I/ take/ salesperson/ whom/I/buy./it
5. She /refuse/ exchange/and/refuse/manager.
6. I/write/hope/gain/satisfaction.
7. I/enclose/shirt/receipt/price/date/which/it/purpose
8. Thank/ advance.



1. Please/find/enclose/shirt/you/complain/letter/March 13 rd
2. We /regret/not/exchange/it.
3. Manager/ whom/you/explain/correct/do.
4. She/carry out/company policy/which/good/wear/not/exchange.
5. Our quality /department / complain/ come/ conclusion/ sleeve/ which/ hole/ appear/must/subject/unusual stress.
6. Perhaps/ you /rub/elbow/rough/surface
7. Leather patch/sew/elbow/sale/store/from/you/shirt.
8. I/ sure/staff/only/ready/you.

1. Thank/letter/ 21 st August
2. Which/you/complain/laundry service.
3. We/remind/you/from/which/list/items/laundering/state/clearly/hotel/not/ accept/responsibility/lost items/clothing.
4. Bag/ which/place/ clothes/same warn/print/it.
5. We /apologize/inconvenience.
6. We/ hope/we/shall/pleasure/your custom/future occasions.

1. I/ write/ enquire/items/laundry/ which/lose/hotel/ laundry service.
2. I/stay/ Victoria Hotel/ March 3 rd/ March 27 th.
3. Morning 5 th/ I/ hand/ laundry bag.
4. when / it/return/next day/ I/ discover/two socks/miss.
5. I /discover/shirt/which/laundry/lose/its buttons.
6. House keeper/ whom/I /complain/ me/items/post/me.

7. Until/I/nothing.

8. I/ would/ mention/question/compensation/shirt/which/ run.

9. I/ buy/ 20 pounds / only /week/ previously.

10.

1. Well/ my/ third week/here. I /like/ very much.

2. I/ always/ get up/ seven/ and/ breakfast/ my landlady.

3. English/ breakfast/ small/ but/ the tea/ not/ bad.

4. I/ usually/ go/ school/ bus.

5. I/ often/ at school/ nine.

6. Evening/ I/ at home/ but/ I/ go to/ cinema.

7. Life/ busy/ here.

8. Weekend/ I / excursion/ class- mates.

9. Give/ regards/ the family.

11.

1. Recent/ advertisement/ TV/ times magazine/ ask/ people consider/ emigrate/ Australia

2. I/ grateful/ if/ you/ give/ information/ possibility.

3. Particularly/ information/ help/ you/ often/ pay/ cost/ far/ Australia.

4. I/ also/ know/one/ able/ become/ citizen/ and /how/ this/ achieve

5. Advertisement/ mention/ some constraints/ replace/ emigration large families.

6. I/ grateful/ if / could/ clarify/ precisely/ what/ meant/ " large families"/ context.

7. Thank/ advance.

2.

. I/ sorry/ I/ fail/ arrive/ Athens/ Last Friday  
. I/ hope/ this/ not/mess/ up/ completely.  
. I/ know/ you/ make/ special arrangements/ visit/ parents / friend.  
. I/ sorry/ all that  
. I/ sure/ you/ sympathetic  
. When /tell/you/ my father/ill/ London hospital / I/ worry  
. I/ find/ impossible/ England/ he/ this state.

3.

I/ thought/ I /drop/ a line/ confirm/ arrangements/ trip/ over/  
Germany.  
I/ must/ I/ look/ forward/ it  
I/ leave/ Heathrow Airport/ 10/ morning/ 27 th.  
Flight /often/ half past eleven/ there abouts  
Could/ you/ me/ airport ?  
I/ stay/ you/ three days/ then / 31 st of May/ I / cross/ border/  
Koge/ Denmark/ see/ old friend/ couple of days.  
I/ back/ you/ about/ 3 rd of June.  
Then / we/ go off/ our travels/ southern Germany.  
I/ must/ back/ England/ 18 th of june.  
). I/ hope/ arrangements/ OK/ you.

4.

Thank/ invitation/ your wedding/ beginning/ December  
I/ please/ learn/ you/ Frank/ decide/ " something" / at last.  
I/ like/ the wedding very much/ Dutch wedding

4. But/ it/ possible/ me/ take/ weekend off
5. I/ work/ fairly/ late/ Friday night
6. Friends/ come down/ stay/ Sunday/ lunch time
7. So/ there/ no way/ which/ I/ squeeze/ wedding/ Holland/ between.
8. All/ I/ do/ is/ wish/ happiest/ days/ future.

15.

1. I/ think/ kill/ two birds/ one stone
2. Stone / three day trip/ London/ Friday 10 th of March / Monday
3. Birds/ see/ those films.
4. I/ want/ see/ but/ can/ not/ Chepston/ see/ you.
5. Would/ it/ possible/ Ali/stay/ flat/ that weekend
6. With you/ or / if/ you/ away/ without/ which/ a pity/ but, convenient.
7. Of course / I/ like/ much/ see/ you.
8. And/ this /seem / opportunity/ if / you/ be/ there.
9. Please/ you/ know/ at once/ that /if/ it/ not possible.
10. I/ make/ arrangements.

16.

1. Help/ me/ I / have/ real problem.
2. I/ love/ girl/ name/ Alice.
3. I/ her/ my study/ 3 years ago.
4. Everyday/ I/ try /her/ tell/ my love/ her/ but/ she/ not/ accept love.
5. I/ know/ she/ not/ love/ but/ I/ not/ want/ live/ without/ her.
6. Same time/ there / girl/ name/ Janey.

. She/ love/ me/ much/ but I/ not/ her.  
. I/ think/ she/ nice/ but/ it /not/ love.  
. What/ I/ do ? I/ think/ both/ the time.  
0. I/ not/ not/ know/ do/ help/ soon/ possible.

7.

. How/lovely/your letter  
. Allthe Vietnamese students/stay/us/you/first/write/us/Hanoi  
. I/delighted/news/your marriage  
. We/will. I/ busy  
. I/return/visit/Japan.It/wonderful trip  
. Language school/close down/we/longer/students/Haddington  
. The school/move/Edinburgh  
. Give/love/girls/boys/tell/them/write/me  
. Who/know/we/meet/sometimes/future  
0. Wishes/you/every one

8.

. Thank/much/letter/15 th June  
. I/sorry/previous letter/took/reach/you  
. I/think/must/due to/fact/sent/surface mail/airmail  
. I/make/sure/present letter/post/air mail  
You/get/within/a week/so  
Yes/indeed/all/ready/receive/as/visting professor  
We/looking/forward/make/personal  
Kindest/regards

19.

1. Thank/much/offering/share/you/publication/paper/on/
2. I/read/though/introductory chapters/find/good/indeed
3. I/not/have/opportunity/do/too much/chapter/deal/advances/
4. Now/I back/laboratory/can/get down/work
5. I/send/you/material/regular intervals
6. I/hope/you/receive/a lot/the end/November
7. We/must/allowance/unforeseen circumstances/try finish/ copy,  
March

20.

1. I/happy/get/letter/express pleasure/I/make/English
2. It/most/kind/you/wish/give/present/reward/work
3. I/like/have/bicycle/it/would/great use/me/in/go to/from/out/or  
business
4. During/holidays/I/ride/to/Hyde Park/which/be/enjoyable
5. Trading company/showrooms/there/fine bicycles/Viha/make
6. They/not/dear/of/fine appearance
7. Like/foreign style/they/so/strong/well made/ that/ they/ last/ life  
- time
8. If/I have done
9. You/sure/I/continue/work hard/deserve/opinion

21.

1. We/thank/your enquiry/yesterday
2. In reply/beg/inform/you/we/have/immediate  
tenacy/house/which/we/think/suit/you



3. It/contain/three reception rooms/four bed rooms two bathrooms usual offices
4. Premises/brick/first class condition/recently/newly/decorate
5. House/situate/district/coolest/healthiest/Bangkok
6. Rent/\$ 150,000/month
7. We/glad/show/over the premises/if/you/appoint/a day/and/an hour

22.

1. I/awfully/sorry/Monday evening
2. I/understand/you/wait/me/lounge
3. Please/excuse/not/come
4. I/get/your note/at night/as/I /unexpectedly/call away
5. I/try/reach/you/telephone/as/soon/I/come/home
6. But/reception clerk/tell/you/leave/were/not/expected/back/before night.
7. I/hope/receive/message.
8. I/try/ring/again/tonight.
9. I/arrange/meet/before/you/leave/London.

23.

1. You/not/know/I/am/let/me/introduce/myself
2. I/keen/get/pen friend/Britain
3. I/ apply/ bureau/ which/ people/ France/ touch/ penfriend/ various countries
4. They/kindly/give/your address/so I/write/you
5. Name/Dupin/and I/boy
6. I/15 years/class2/grammar school/Bapaume/North

7. I/enclose/photograph/myself/my father/mother
8. I/collect/stamps/and/glad/if/send/English/ones/exchange
9. I/hope/you/write/me/soon/tell/all about/yourself

24.

1. I/duly/receive/letter/5 th/May
2. Which/you/me/Mr N/refer request/you/sole/publisher/his book
3. Thank/much/trouble/you/take/look/files/locate/negative/ question  
/send/ glossy print/which/perfect/suite/purpose
4. We/duty/proper credit/you/author
5. Thank/much/dispense/usual change/rights/Mr N's photograph

25.

1. Thank/much/letter/20 th August
2. Under/cover/I/send/you/required diagrams/lettering omitted
3. One/ them/ unfortunately/ exceeds/ dimension prescribe/ notes/  
authors
4. I/could/not/manage/do/it/otherwise
5. Scheme/rather/complicated/if/it/too/small/it/not/possible/  
distinguish/individual/ details are/importance for aparatus
6. I/hope/it/not/too inconvenient/reproduce/diagram
7. Should/difficulties/arise/you/use/original diagram/I/send/before ?
8. I/look/forward/hear.further/I/wish/thank you all the trouble/ you/  
take

26.

1. I/read/first/fourth/referee's comments

2. Both/agree/favourable evaluation/experimental results/ they/ set/  
section3/our paper
3. Their opinion/part/paper/describe/design/apparatus/( section  
1,2)/unfavourable
- .. I/would/make/points
4. Suggestion/two referees/section 1,2/ should/ omit/ whole/ should/  
rewrite/more appropriate journal/ not/ appear/ justify/ for/ it/  
section/ question/novel
- . We/willing/modify/formulation/section1/suggested/first referee
- . Its/amended/problem/treat/come out/clearly
- . I/enclose/reply/referee 's comments

## KEY

Thanks for your letter. I'm sorry I haven't been able to write for a long time.

My test will be in two weeks, and I can't speak English well enough yet.

I'm very happy you want to come to England. Will you be able to come soon ?

I want to show you a lot of interesting places.

And I want you to meet all my English friends. I've made a lot of friends since I came here.

You'll have to speak English because none of them can speak French. It won't be too difficult for you, will it ?

You studied English at school, didn't you ? How long will you be able to stay ? I've been able to find a flat.

8. The address is at the top of the letter. Flats are difficult to find in England.
9. I'll be able to cook a good English dinner for you.
10. I had to get a flat because the hotel was too expensive for me.

2)

1. I got your postcard this afternoon.
2. I'm very pleased that you'll be able to come here next week.
3. Don't worry about accommodation. There's the Royal hotel just round the corner.
4. That's the hotel I used to stay before I met my landlady.
5. I'm sure you won't be bored here. This is an interesting town.
6. I go to college in the afternoons, so we'll be able to meet each other every evening.
7. Mr. John - he's the teacher who has been teaching me since I came here - says I should stay here longer.
8. I think that it's a good idea. What do you think ?
9. I still like this town and I'm happy here but I'm not satisfied with my English yet.
10. I miss everyone a lot. Write back to me soon.

3)

1. It was so nice to see you last week.
2. After you had gone I felt so lonely. I still do.
3. I really enjoyed seeing you again. I hope you enjoyed yourself too.
4. I took my exam three days ago. It was rather difficult.
5. If I pass I'll get a certificate.

6. I'll be able to find a good job.
7. I had a farewell class party last night. The atmosphere was great.
8. Everyone was in a good mood because they'd finished the course.
9. I'm going to miss all the new friends that I've made here.
10. I must stop now. See you next week.
11. I hope you'll be able to meet me at the airport.

4)

1. I've missed you a lot.
2. I've been sad this week because I haven't seen you for a month.
3. I've learnt a lot of French this week. I haven't been out much.
4. I had to do a lot of homework lastnight and I'm tired today.
5. Paris is smaller than London but it's more interesting.
6. I think it's the best city I've ever been to.
7. There is too much pollution and there aren't enough restaurants with English wine but I like it a lot.
8. All of my teachers are intelligent and none of them speak English to me, so I have to speak French.
9. Well, I have to finish now. I'll write again next week. I promise.

5)

1. Last Monday I went on an excursion to Cambridge.
2. I went with my class mates.
3. I got up early and met them at the school.
4. In the morning we visited the city. It was very interesting.
5. We had lunch in a restaurant and I drank some beer.

6. In the afternoon we sat in the park and walked through the park.
7. I met an interesting English man with blue eyes.
8. I didn't practise my English because he spoke French all the time.
9. Did you have a nice weekend ? I miss you much.

6)

1. Exactly two weeks ago, I purchased a shirt from your store in the Hight Street.
2. I had worn the shirt only twice when I was amazed to discover a hole in the left sleeve.
3. What is more, the shirt is not cheap. I believe in paying for quality.
4. I took the shirt back to the salesperson from whom I had bought it.
5. She refused to exchange it and refused to let me see the manager.
6. I'm writing to you in the hope of gaining satisfaction.
7. I enclose the shirt and the receipt which shows the price and the date on which it was purchased.
8. Thank you in advance.

7)

1. Please find enclosed the shirt about which you complained in your letter of March 13 th.
2. We regret that we can not exchange it.
3. Our manager, to whom you first complained, was correct in refusing to do so.



4. She was carrying out company policy, which states that goods which have been worn can not be exchanged.
5. Our quality control department investigated your complain and came to conclusion that the sleeve in which the hole appeared must have been subjected by unusual stress.
6. Perhaps you constantly rub your elbows on a rough surface.
7. Leather patches sewn to the elbows are on sale at the store, the one from which you bought the shirt.
8. I am sure the staff will be only ready to help you.

8)

1. Thank you for your letter of August 21st.
2. In which you complained about our laundry service.
3. May we remind you that the form on which you listed the items for laundering, states quite clearly that the hotel can not accept responsibility for lost items of clothing.
4. The bag in which you placed your clothes has the same warning clearly printed on it.
5. We apologize for the inconvenience.
6. We hope that we shall have the pleasure of your custom on future occasions.

9)

1. I am writing to enquire about some items of laundry which were lost in your hotel laundry service.
2. I was staying at the Victoria Hotel from March 3rd to March 27th.
3. On the morning of 5th, I handed in my laundry bag.

4. When it returned the next day, I discovered that two socks were missing.
5. I also discovered that a shirt, which had also been laundered, had lost all its buttons.
6. The house keeper to whom I complained told me that the items would be posted to me.
7. Until now I heard nothing.
8. I would also mention the question of compensation for the shirt, which was ruined.
9. I bought it for \$20 only a week previously.

10)

1. Well, this is my third week here. I like it very much.
2. I always get up at seven o'clock and have breakfast with my landlady.
3. English breakfast is rather small, but the tea is not bad.
4. I usually go to school by bus.
5. I often arrive at school at nine o'clock.
6. In the evening I always stay at home but sometimes I got to the cinema.
7. Life is very busy here.
8. Next weekend I am going on an excursion with class-mates.
9. Give my regards to the family.

11)

1. A recent advertisement in the TV Times magazine asked people to consider emigrating to Australia.

I would be very grateful if you could give me some information about this possibility.

Particularly information about the help you offer to pay the cost of the fare to Australia.

I would also like to know how one is able to become an Australian citizen, and how soon this could be achieved.

The advertisement also mentioned that "some constraints" might be placed on the emigration of large families.

I would be grateful if you could clarify precisely what is meant by "large families" in this context.

Thank you in advance.

)

I am terribly sorry that I failed to arrive in Athens last Friday.

I hope that this did not mess you up completely.

I know that you had already made some special arrangements for my visit with your parents and friends.

I am very sorry about all that.

I am sure you will be sympathetic.

When I tell you that my father is dangerously ill in a London hospital. I am very worried.

I found it impossible to leave England when he is in this state.  
8. See you later.

)

I thought, I'd drop you line to confirm the arrangements for my trip over to Germany.

I must say, I am really looking forward to it.

3. I should be leaving Heathrow Airport at 10 in the morning on the 27th.
4. The flight often arrive at half past eleven or thereabouts.
5. Could you meet me at the airport ?
6. I'd like to stay with you for 3 days, and then, on the 31st of May, I am going across the border to Koge in Denmark to see another oldfriend for a couple of days.
7. I'll be back with you on about the 3rd of June.
8. Then we can go off on our travels through Southern Germany.
9. I must be back in England on the 18th of June.
10. I hope these arrangements are OK with you.

14)

1. Thank you for your invitation to your wedding at the beginning of December.
2. I was pleased to learn that you and Frank have decided on "something" at last.
3. I'd like to be at the wedding very much especially a Dutch wedding.
4. But it is impossible for me to take that weekend off.
5. I have to work fairly late on Friday night.
6. Friends are coming down to stay from Sunday lunchtime.
7. So there would be no way in which I could squeeze a wedding in Holland in between.
8. So all I can do is to wish you the happiest of days and also a bright future.

5)

I'm thinking about killing two birds with one stone.

The stone is a three days trip to London from Friday 10th of March till the Monday.

The birds are seeing all those films.

I've wanted to see but can't in Chepstow and seeing you.

Would it be possible, Ali, to stay in your flat for that weekend?

With you - or, if you are away - without you - which would be a pity, but still convenient.

Of course, I'd like very much to see you.

And this seems a marvellous opportunity if you are going to be here.

Please could you let me know at once so that if it's not possible I could make other arrangements.

6)

Please help me, I have got a real problem.

I am in love with a girl whose name is Alice.

I met her through my study about 3 years ago.

Everyday, I try to meet her and tell her about my love for her but she doesn't accept it.

I know she doesn't love me but I don't want to live without her.

At the same time there is a girl whose name is Janey.

She loves me very much but I don't love her.

I think she is very nice but it is not love.

What should I do ? I think of both of them all the time.

I don't know what to do, please help me as soon as possible.

17)

1. How lovely to receive your letter.
2. Of all the Vietnamese students, who stayed with us, you are the first to write to us from Hanoi.
3. I'm delighted to hear the news of your marriage.
4. We are all well and I've been busy.
5. I've just returned from a lovely visit from Japan. It was a wonderful trip.
6. The language school has closed down and we no longer have any students in Haddington.
7. The language school has moved to Edinburgh.
8. Give my love to all the girls and boys and tell them to write to me.
9. Who knows perhaps we may meet sometimes in the future.
10. Best wishes to you and every one.

18)

1. Thank you very much for your letter of 15th June.
2. I am sorry that my previous letter took so long to reach you.
3. I think this must have been due to the fact that it was sent by surface mail instead of airmail.
4. I am making sure that the present letter is posted to you by airmail.
5. You should get it within a week or so.
6. Yes, indeed, all is ready here to receive you as Visiting Professor.
7. We are looking forward to making you personal.
8. With kindest regards.

9)

- . You do not know who I am, so let me first introduce myself.
- . I was very keen to get a penfriend in Britain.
- . So I applied to a bureau here which many people in France in touch with penfriend in various countries.
- . They very kindly gave me your address, so I am writing to you.
- . My name's Dupin and I am a boy.
- . I am 15 years old and I am in class 2 of the grammar school in Bapaume in the North of France.
- . I enclose a photograph of myself with my father and my mother.
- . I collect stamps and would be very glad if you send English ones in exchange.
- . I hope that you will write to me soon and tell me all about yourself.

0)

- . I am happy to get your letter expressing pleasure at the progress I have made in English.
- . It is most kind of you to wish and give me a present as a reward for my work.
- . I would like to have a bicycle for it would be of great use to me in going to and from school and out on business.
- . During the holidays I could ride it to Hyde Park which I would be very enjoyable.
- . In Trading Company's showrooms there are some fine bicycles of ViHa make.
- . They are not very dear and are of fine appearance.
- . Like all foreign style, they are so strong -- and well - made that they will last a life-time.



8. If I may have one, I shall be very happy.
- 9 You may be sure that I shall continue to work hard to deserve your good opinion.

#### **Dạng 4 : Viết thư theo yêu cầu**

Phân địa chỉ của người gửi và người nhận các em tự nghĩ ra  
Chú ý cách tổ chức một lá thư bằng tiếng Anh.

1. Write a letter to invite one of your friends to come and stay with you.
2. You want to spend some days in Wales ( or another place). Write a letter to your friend asking about it.
3. Write a letter to accept an invitation from your friend.
4. Imagine that you are invited to the wedding of a friend. Unfortunately you are busy, so you can't come. Write a letter to excuse about it.
5. You want to make an arrangement to do something with your friend. Write a letter to him (her) about it.
6. Write a letter to your friend, apologizing and explaining why you can't come to see him (her).
7. Your friend has just got good news. Write a letter to congratulate him ( her).
8. You have just spent a holiday with a family you know. Write a letter to thank them for the delicious food you ate there.
9. Write a letter to the district council complaining about the garbage collection in your area.
10. you are studying in a foreign country. Write a letter to your friend telling him or her about your current situation.
11. You are too busy with your work to meet one of your relatives at the airport ( station). Write a letter to your close friend,

asking him ( her) to do it for you. Describe your relative to your friend.

You have just bought something from a shop. Unfortunately, it is faulty. Write a letter of complaint to the manager of the shop.

Write a letter to an acquaintance whom you do not know very well, asking him (her) to lend you a book you know he (she) possesses.

Suppose that you had witnessed an accident. Write a letter to a friend, describing what had happened.

You borrowed a book from a friend, but your younger sister (brother) tore some of the pages. Write a letter, offering to replace it.

## KEY

er 1 :

Dear Mary,

I've just heard from your parents that you have come to land and looking for a new job. While you are waiting, we think could be a good idea if you come down and see us for a few days longer. We've got a spare room. It hasn't begun to rain yet, so luck, we will be able to visit a few places in the area, or even a walk to Dartmoor.

Vell, think about it, and we both hope you can come.

love,

iz and Peter.

*Letter 2 :*

Dear Joe,

I'm thinking about killing two birds with a stone. The "stone" is a three-day trip to Wales from Thursday 12th of January to Sunday. The "birds" are seeing all the beautiful places I have wanted to see but can't in Stoke Gabriel, and seeing you. Would it be possible, Joe, to stay in your flat for that week with you - or, if you're away - without you - which would be a pity, but still convenient. Of course, I'd like very much to see you and this seems a marvelous opportunity if you are going to be there.

Please, could you let me know at once so that if it is not possible I could make another arrangement with Daisy.

I hope to see you .

Love,

Mary.

*Letter 3 :*

Dear Jane,

It was very nice to get your invitation to spend next week with you, lucky I'm completely free then so I'll say "yes", and be arriving in London at 8 p.m. on Wednesday evening. The idea of a party on Saturday sounds marvelous and I promise to bring you a cake for it - an Italian speciality ! Well, see you then.

Love,

Joan.

*Letter 4 :*

Dear Margarite,

Thank you for your invitation to your wedding at the beginning of December.

I was pleased to learn that you and Robert have decided on something" at last.

Unfortunately, much as I'd like to be at the wedding, especially Dutch wedding( !), it simply is not possible for me to take that weekend off ; I have to work fairly late on Friday night, and friends are coming down to stay from Sunday lunchtime so there would be no way in which I squeeze a wedding in Holland in between.

So all I can do is to wish you the happiest of days and also of future.

Love,

Michael.

*Letter 5 :*

Dear Vlich and Benthe,

I thought I'd drop you a line to confirm the arrangements for my trip over to France - I must say, I'm really looking forwards to it. I'll be leaving Heathrow Airport at 9 in the morning of 28th. The flight gets in at half past seven or thereabouts. Could you please meet me at the airport ? I am hoping to stay with you for three days, and then, on 31st of May I am going to another place to see another friend for a couple days. I'll be back with you on about 3rd of June and then we can go off on our travels through Southern France. I must be back in England on 18th of July.

I hope these arrangement are O.K. with you.

See you soon

Yours,

Deck

*Letter 6 :*

Dear Pike,

I am awfully sorry that I failed to arrive in Rome last Friday. I hope that this did not mess you up completely, although I know

that you had already made some special arrangements for my visit with your parents and friends. I am very sorry about all that. I am sure you will be sympathetic, however, when I tell you that my mother is dangerously ill in a London hospital, and that I found it impossible to leave England when she is in this state.

I hope to see you and your family in a soon day.

Love,

Mary

*Letter 7 :*

Dear Jack,

Great and surprising news - Congratulations on your decision to become " a married man".

Seriously though, I'm delighted that you and Lucy have decided to get married, and I hope that you both stay delighted with the idea.

Chris.

*Letter 8 :*

Dear Mr. and Mrs. Hallinen,

I must write and thank you for your kindness to me personally on my visit to Wales this month. I'm very grateful to your showing me all the beautiful places in the area and the delicious meals I've had opportunity to try in your family. In fact, I can assure you those seven days were the happiest of my trip to Wales.

Yours sincerely,

John.

*Letter 9 :*

Dear sir,

I am afraid that I am forced to write to you about the collection of dustbins in Larch Grove. This morning, for the third time in three weeks, the council dustmen have left an appalling amount of

rubbish - paper, cans, ash and bottles - on the pavements of Larch  
rove. Surely, it is not impossible to collect rubbish without  
reading half of it over the streets. I would be most grateful if  
you would put an end to this matter immediately. We want clean  
houses, gardens, and streets in this town.

Yours faithfully,

Gerseoland Fox

*Letter 10 :*

Dear John,

I've missed you very much. I've been sad this week because I  
haven't seen you for a month. I've learnt a little French this week.  
Last night I had to study much because I am taking an exam next  
week. All of my teachers are kind and they help me very much,  
although it's still difficult for me to speak French fluently.  
Sometimes I go out with Jane, a new friend. She is also kind to  
me. I get used to French food and traffic. What are you doing now?  
Well, I really must finish now. I will write again in two days. Give  
my regards to your parents.

All my love,

Mary

*Letter 11:*

Dear Peter,

I'm sorry to disturb you by this letter. But in fact, I have a  
problem that only you can help me. Would you please meet Mary,  
one of my cousins at the Leeds airport on Friday 5th, June. Of  
course, you don't know her before so here is her description.

She is in her late thirties, she has fair complexion, thick brown  
hair which she wears in a bun and dark brown eyes. She is about  
5 metres tall.

And by the way, I send you a photograph of hers. I also tell her  
that you'll come to meet her.

I hope to receive the news from you.

Thanks a lot,

Mary.

*Letter 12:*

Dear Mr Bradburn,

I recently ordered from you a set of four French dining room chairs and an Italian coffee table. Both of which were advertised in the January edition of Home and Gardens magazine. They arrived as promised but unfortunately they were damaged. The coffee table had one of its legs broken and the backs of the chair were scratched. I understand these items are under guarantee.

Could you please tell me what I should do ?

I look forward to hearing from you.

Yours sincerely,

Jane Robinson

*Letter 13:*

Dear John,

You must be very surprised to receive this letter. Do you remember me ? It is still in my mind that you and I met each other in the English Club last month. I've just heard from Mary that only you have the book "New Concept English".

I'd be very grateful if you could lend me this book. If I have this book in some days my entrance examination in next month will be less difficult. I'm sure that I only keep it in 3 days. Don't worry about it. I will take good care of it.

Please, let me know about this as soon as possible.

Yours sincerely,

Jane



*Letter 14:*

Dear Caroline,

I'm thinking about an incident that I can't forget. I write this letter and want to tell you about it.

You know it was on Tuesday morning when I was walking in a busy street. On this street I know the jewelery shop of Mr Taylor. At that time Mr Taylor was admiring a new window display and two of his assistants were working busily. The silence was broken when a large car roared down the arcade. One man stayed at a wheel while two others with black stocking over their faces jumped out and smashed the window of the shop with iron bars. Fortunately, those men were chased by passers by. I myself also saw one man escaping so I shouted at him. In a few minutes all of them were caught and taken to the police station.

Give my regards to your parents.

Love,

John

*Letter 15:*

Dear Sybil,

I'm terribly sorry that the book that I borrowed on Tuesday from you has some torn pages. I hope that you will forgive me for this. After reading the book I left it on a low table. Then my younger sister got hold of it. When I came into the room several pages were torn. Actually, I got angry with her. I'm very sorry about all that. I'm sure you'll be sympathetic, however, I have just bought another book and if it's possible I'll send it to you tomorrow.

Will you please forgive me ?

Thank you for your kindness.

Yours,

Jane.

## **Dạng 5 : Viết luận**

Một số đề luận :

1. Write a composition of 150 words about the person you like best
2. Write composition of 150 words about the things you dislike most.
3. Have you ever seen an accident ? Write a composition of 150 words about it.
4. Write a composition of about 150 words about        your frightful dream.
5. Do you like watching television ? Write a composition of about 150 words about the usefulness of television.
6. Do you like travelling ? Write a composition of about 150 words about the country you would like to visit.
7. Write a composition of about 150 words about the things you enjoy doing.
8. Write a composition of about 150 words explaining why you like to live in the city.
9. Write a composition of about 150 words about the importance of learning English.
10. Do you think that examinations are necessary ? Write a composition of about ( 150 ) words telling why examinations are important.
11. Write a composition of about 150 words about your best friend.
12. Write a short composition of about 150 words about your teacher.
13. Water is very important for our life. Write a short composition of about 150 words about its importance.
14. Write a composition of about 150 words about the pleasures of living in a village.

## KEY

### Q 1 : The person I like most

Of all the people in the world, I like my dear mother the most. Not all the wealth in the world can make me hate my mother.

Everyone knows that that mother's love is the greatest love in the world. When I see how my mother behaves towards my father, brothers, sisters and me, I am filled with pride. In everything that she does, there is a touch of love. Even when she washes the dishes, she makes sure that they are clean so that no one in her family will become ill.

Though she sometimes scolds me, I know that she does so not because she is bad but because she is tired, working all day for the happiness of her family. So I keep quiet while she expresses her anger, so that she may feel a little relieved after that.

That she loves her family is proved every day. When my youngest brother is very hungry in the middle of the night and cries for milk, she wakes up at once to attend to him, even if she is tired or ill. In the same way, she wakes up before all the others and goes to bed last, so that everyone in the family can receive her care. If anyone is ill in the family, she is the one who is the most worried.

Such care and love no one in the world can give to me. For these reasons my mother will always remain the dearest person to me.

### Q 2 : The things I dislike the most

There are many things that I dislike ; but the ones I dislike the most are noise, crowds and laziness.

Noise disturbs me greatly. This is why I hate to live in a city. In a city, vehicles run to and fro dawn till midnight. This makes the city very noisy indeed. The voice of thousands of people living close to one another also add to the noises caused by the vehicles. Besides, there are noises in the factories in the city.

I also dislike crowds. Crowds make movement difficult. If a place is crowded, it is not easy to move about or to do any work quickly. If we are in a hurry to go anywhere, a crowd can delay our progress.

Finally, I hate laziness because a lazy boy is problem not only to his parents but also to others. By refusing to do any work, he compels others to work for him. Sometimes a weak and poor person has to work hard to bring food for a strong and healthy person who is lazy. Such a person is really bad and ill-mannered. As long as he gets what he needs and wants, he does not care what others think of him. I hate to see such a person, even if he is my own brother or father.

All this explains why I hate the things I have mentioned

### **Dề 3 : A frightful accident I have seen**

One evening I saw a car running at great speed. I knew at once that it would soon be involved in an accident.

As expected, the car had not gone very far when it went off the road and hit a tree. At once the car was on fire.

The driver was hurt so badly that he could not open the door of his car. Then I heard some frightful screams.

By now a big crowd had collected round the car ; but no one could help the unfortunate man in the car. It was dangerous to go too near to the burning car.

The fire grew bigger. There were no more screams. The driver was burnt to death. I felt very sad after that. Indeed I cannot forget that accident.

### **Dề 4 : A frightful dream**

One night, after a heavy meal, I went to bed late. It was hot and I felt very uneasy.

When at last I fell asleep, however, I had a very frightful dream. I saw a monster with long sharp teeth attack my village. It had a great appetite. It ate a number of the people it had killed.

It was indeed a terrible sight. There was blood all around, and the frightened villagers were running about in all directions, making a lot of noise.

At last the monster began to come towards me. I was so terrified that I gave out a loud scream.

I now woke up, and was greatly relieved to find that the danger was in was not real. It was just another of my wild dreams.

### **§ 5 : The usefulness of television**

Television enables us to see things in distant places. It is indeed one of the most wonderful things that man has ever invented.

Television not only entertains people but also teaches people a variety of important things. Through this wonderful invention we learn about people and events thousands of miles away. Pictures taken in all parts of the world are also shown on television for entertainment as well as for instruction. Short films based on popular stories are often shown which entertain millions of people all over the world.

In some countries television is used to teach pupils and students many useful lessons. Students who cannot go to school because of transport or other problems are taught all their lessons at home through television. As television appeals to the eye instead of the ear, people enjoy watching more than listening to the radio. Listening requires knowledge of many things, but what we see with our eyes explains itself.

### **§ 6 : The country I would like to visit**

I have heard and read a lot about the beautiful countries in the world. But the country that I would like to visit is the United States of America. From my geography books I know that the United States is a very big country. Here, there are people from all

countries of the world. Europeans, Africans, Asians and others live together in peace and happiness, like the people of Singapore and Malaysia. It would indeed be a pleasure to meet so many races of people in one country.

The building in the United States are among the largest in the world. The roads are the best in the world too. Travelling in this country is therefore very easy. There are fast-running cars, trains and other means of transport.

Again, the scenery is different in parts of the country. In some places there are high mountains. In some places there are lowlands for miles together. And in other parts, there are deserts.

Thus, travelling in this big country would be really very interesting. I should therefore welcome any opportunity to visit this country.

### **Đề 7 : The thing I enjoy doing**

I do many things every day, but the things I enjoy doing are plucking flowers and preparing my school lessons.

As a fourteen-year old girl, I help my mother every day. My mother is a very religious lady. Every evening, before her prayers, I go out in search of flowers which my mother needs for her prayers. I really enjoy looking for flowers around my house. I go to all our neighbour's gardens and pluck a variety of flowers. Our neighbours are very kind and they allow me to pluck as many flowers as I like.

Preparing my school lessons also gives me a lot of pleasure. As I prepare them, I learn many things about the world and its affairs, past and present. I also learn about the people around us as well as those across the oceans. Further, I learn more and more new words and phrases which help me to speak and write better. What I learn from books also helps me to meet and talk with people confidently.



Thus, the things that I like to do not only amuse my mind but so enrich my mind.

## **§ 8 : Living in a city**

A city is very noisy ; yet most people like to live in it. There are indeed many things to see and enjoy in a city.

The streets in a city are full of people and vehicles. Cars, buses and other vehicles can be seen running up and down the streets throughout the day. All these make a city very noisy and busy. Sometimes all kinds of accidents occur and some people die as a result.

In a city, there are also many schools and hospitals. So, the people here find it very easy to send their children to school and to visit the hospital quickly when necessary.

At night a city is full of colourful lights. They make the city beautiful. Some parts of the city are very crowded at this time, especially where the eating stalls or cinemas are.

Many people also attend school at night to improve themselves. Today there are night schools in almost every city.

For all these reasons, living in a city could be very exciting indeed.

## **§ 9 : Why do I want to learn English**

English is the most important language in the world today. A very large number of people understand and use English in all parts of the world. Indeed, English is a very useful language. If we know English we can go to any place or country we like. We shall not find it hard to make people understand what we wish to say.

English also helps us to learn all kinds of subjects. Hundreds of books are written in English every day in all countries to teach people many useful things. The English language has therefore helped to spread ideas and knowledge to all the corners of the world. There is no subject that cannot be learned in the English language.



As English is used so much everywhere in the world, it has helped to make the countries of the world become more friendly with one another. The leaders of the world use English to understand one another. The English language has therefore also helped to spread better understanding and friendship among countries of the world.

Lastly, a person who knows English is respected by people. It is for all these reasons that I want to learn English.

### **Đề 10 : Why are examinations important ?**

Most pupils are afraid of examinations, but examinations are very important today. They are also very interesting.

Examinations are important because they compel pupils to learn. Without them most pupils would not learn. So they would know very little about the world. They would learn only those subjects in which they are interested and ignore the other subjects which are thought to be difficult subjects, though they are very important in the modern age.

Examinations also help us to have some ideas about a person's knowledge of certain subjects. For example, if a boy has passed the Primary Six Examinations, we can at once know how much knowledge he has of certain subjects. Accordingly, we can have some ideas of what kind of work he can do. This is why most employers want to know what examinations a person had passed before he is given some work.

Finally, examinations are interesting because we can test how much we ourselves know, while preparing for them. When we sit for an examination we enjoy answering what we know, though we feel sad if we are not successful in an examination.

### **Đề 11 : My best friend**

I have many friends of several races, but my best friend is a Chinese boy whose name is Ah Chong.

Ah Chong is fourteen years old. He lives near my house. He is not only a clever boy but also a good boy.

Ah Chong's father is a carpenter. His mother looks after their small shop. They are very hardworking people. They are also very kind to me.

Ah Chong goes to school with me. We are in the same class. He sometimes helps me in my lessons. I sometimes help him to understand and learn a few difficult lessons, too.

After school, Ah Chong and I play some games. Sometimes we go out to catch some fish or birds which we really enjoy catching. We often return home very late after our hunting trips and our parents scold us severely. But Ah Chong and I are so interested in his kind of hunting that we cannot give it up.

Indeed, I enjoy Ah Chong's company very much.

## Unit 12 : My teacher

The name of my teacher is Miss Lam. She is a very pleasant lady.

Miss Lam likes children very much. She herself has many brothers and sisters at home. Most of them are going to school and she helps them in their lessons.

What she does for her own brothers and sisters she also does for the children in the class-room. She does not get angry easily. If some pupils are slow to learn, she takes great trouble to explain all the lessons slowly so that all the pupils can understand the lessons well. Sometimes, she also brings certain things into the class-room to explain a lesson. For example, one day she brought a toy ape to explain what an ape was. This makes her lessons very interesting indeed.

Miss Lam, sometimes, also takes all her pupils out for a visit to some interesting places. She believes that children could learn a lot by travelling. Last year she took our whole class to Ha Noi where we visited many interesting places such as, the museum, the zoo and the famous temple of literature.

I am indeed very proud of my teacher, Miss Lam.

### ***Dè 13 : The importance of water***

Water kills thousands of people and destroys many acres of crops every year. But water also gives life to all living things in the world.

Without water life is unthinkable.. We must have water to grow our food, feed the birds and animals in our homes, grow forests and produce electricity. We use waterways to carry our goods of trade. Even the human body, which is seventy parts out of one hundred, water itself, cannot exist for long without water.

Ever since the earth began, large quantities of water have been used by living things. Yet for every drop water that is taken from one place, another drop is put back somewhere else. Nature has a very clever way of carrying water from cloud to land and sea and back to cloud. No water has ever been lost.

But nature does not put water where and when we need it. While some men are drowning, others in another part of the world are dying of thirst. Thus, people all over the world are trying to bring water to places where it is scarce, to control its flow in times of floods and to make greater use of it.

### ***Dè 14 : The pleasures of living in a village***

A village is a quiet place where the influence of the city is not felt much. It is indeed a very good place for rest and relaxation.

In a village people do not live very close to one another. Their houses are far apart. Each house therefore has a lot of space around it. So, almost every house is surrounded by flowers and fruit plants and vegetables. All these make the village look green and fresh. There are also tall trees everywhere which provide shade from the sun and keep the village cool.

Some villages are surrounded by paddy-fields or mountains. There are also many streams and rivers in most villages. All these add great beauty and variety to the village scene.

The people of the village are very simple in thought and behaviour. They are therefore very friendly and helpful. So, the

times of the city are almost unknown in the village. The people  
ere work together and live in peace. Whenever they celebrate a  
stival, they dance and sing together and the whole village is in  
goodl mood. Living among such friendly and simply people, in such  
quiet place, is indeed a real pleasure.

## **ang 6.2 : Dịch sang tiếng Anh**

Báo chí đóng một vai trò quan trọng trong đời sống của chúng  
ta. Báo chí là nguồn thông tin quan trọng giúp ta biết được  
những gì đang diễn ra ở trong nước cũng như trên thế giới.

Không gì làm tôi hạnh phúc hơn là được nghe những bài hát do  
ca sĩ Elvis Presley trình bày.

Càng về trưa trời càng nóng.

Mặt trời càng lên cao ánh nắng càng chói chang.

Càng gần đến tết không khí chuẩn bị càng nhộn nhịp. Các cửa  
hàng chật ních người đi sắm hàng tết. Vui nhất là lúc giao thừa  
khi nhà nào cũng đốt pháo đưa tiễn năm cũ và đón chào năm  
mới. Ngày mừng một tết mọi người đi thăm nhau chúc nhau  
những lời chúc may mắn cho một năm mới mạnh khỏe may mắn  
và làm ăn phát đạt.

Mùa hè năm ngoái em cùng gia đình đi nghỉ ở Đồ Sơn. Thật là  
những ngày nghỉ thú vị vô cùng bởi vì đó là lần đầu tiên em ra  
biển. Đứng trước biển em thấy mình nhỏ bé vô cùng. Bình minh  
trên biển thật là tuyệt diệu. Mặt trời như quả cầu lửa từ từ lên  
cao, càng lên cao bao nhiêu nước biển càng xanh bấy nhiêu.  
Ngày nào em cũng đi tắm hai lần, lúc sáng sớm và lúc xế chiều.  
Đêm nằm nghe tiếng sóng vỗ bờ sao mà yêu biển đến thế.

Năm học của chúng ta bắt đầu vào tháng 9 và kết thúc vào  
tháng 5.

Vào dịp nghỉ hè học sinh thường đi trại hè thiếu niên ở bờ biển  
hoặc đi về vùng nông thôn nghỉ hè.

Hè năm ngoái, tôi ở quê hơn một tháng, tôi đã giúp bố mẹ tôi  
làm mùa.

10. Vịnh Hạ Long là một trong những thắng cảnh đẹp nhất nước ta
11. Ngọn núi cao nhất ở nước Anh là Bennevis, cao 1343m.
12. Đường phố hẹp nhất thế giới là phố Cornwall ở Luân Đôn. Phố này chỉ rộng 3,8m.
13. Nếu chúng ta học chăm hơn chúng ta sẽ đạt nhiều điều tốt.
14. Hiện nay chúng tôi nói tiếng Anh chưa tốt nhưng chúng tôi hy vọng rằng sang năm chúng tôi sẽ nói tiếng Anh khá hơn.
15. Mùa hè này bạn có đi đâu không ?
  - Mình sẽ đi biển, được tắm biển và nô đùa trên cát thì thật vui lắm. Thế còn bạn.
  - Mình cũng thích biển lắm. Hè năm ngoái mình cũng nghỉ bờ biển nhưng hè năm nay mình sẽ đi thăm nhà bạn mình ở vùng núi.
16. Nó thích bóng đá từ khi còn nhỏ
17. Bạn đã bao giờ được đi máy bay chưa ?
  - Tôi được đi rồi, tôi đi máy bay cùng với bố tôi tới thành phố HCM mùa hè năm 1988.
18. Tôi đã kể cho mẹ tôi nghe hết mọi chuyện.
19. Cậu đã ở Hà Nội được bao lâu rồi ?
 

Được một năm, từ khi tôi vào trường này.
20. Mùa hạ ngày dài hơn đêm, nhưng mùa đông đêm dài hơn ngày
21. Phần lớn chúng tôi thích mùa hè hơn mùa đông, vì kỳ nghỉ dài hơn kỳ nghỉ tết, và vì chúng tôi không chịu được thời tiết lạnh.
22. Làng tôi bây giờ to hơn và đẹp hơn nhiều so với trước đây.
23. Chiếc bút chì này dài gấp đôi chiếc bút chì của tôi.
24. Những bài học tiếng Anh của chúng tôi càng ngày càng khó
25. Chúng tôi học ngày càng chăm chỉ hơn khi kỳ thi gần tới.
26. Bố tôi hơn mẹ tôi hai tuổi.



1. Cậu không có anh trai nào có phải không ?
2. John không biết bơi phải không ?
3. Nam bị phạt vì điểm kém có phải không ?
4. Năm ngoái cậu đi nghỉ hè ở miền núi có phải không ?
5. Trong khi chị tôi đang nấu cơm, tôi phải tưới rau ở ngoài vườn.
6. Sida là bệnh nguy hiểm nhất đối với con người hiện nay.
7. Các em phải làm cẩn thận tất cả các bài tập cô giáo giao.
8. Khi tôi khám bệnh bác sĩ thường hỏi tôi "Cháu bị làm sao thế ?".
9. Chuyến đi thăm quê hương Bác để lại cho chúng tôi những ấn tượng không thể nào quên.
10. Hàng ngày chúng tôi dành nhiều thời gian để nói chuyện với nhau bằng tiếng Anh và đọc những truyện vui bằng tiếng Anh.
11. Khi tôi đến vườn bách thú mọi người đang xếp hàng mua vé vào cổng.
12. Khi tôi đang xem vô tuyến thì các bạn tôi đến chơi.
13. Khi bạn đến chơi thì họ đang làm gì ?
14. Khi chúng tôi đang đến trường thì trời mưa.
15. Vào lúc bảy giờ sáng hôm qua tôi đang ăn sáng.
16. Vào lúc ba giờ chiều hôm qua bạn đang làm gì ?
17. Tôi gặp anh ấy khi tôi đang trên đường đi thư viện.
18. Chúng tôi đang nô đùa ngoài sân thì thấy giáo đến.
19. Hôm qua là ngày 8-3 chúng tôi đến thăm các cô giáo cũ của chúng tôi và tặng hoa cho các cô.
20. Mùa hè năm nay chúng tôi sẽ đi nghỉ mát ở bãi biển Sầm Sơn.
21. Mùa đông năm nay lạnh hơn mùa đông năm ngoái.
22. Hôm nay thời tiết ấm nhưng tôi chắc rằng ngày mai thời tiết sẽ ấm hơn.

49. Lúc chúng tôi ra khỏi nhà thì trời đang mưa.
50. Hè năm ngoái khi chúng tôi nghỉ ở vùng nông thôn ngày nào chúng tôi cũng ra đồng giúp các bác nông dân làm đồng.
51. Tôi chưa bao giờ được đi biển nghỉ hè.
52. Suốt đêm qua trời mưa.
53. Chủ nhật trước các bạn tôi đi HN xem phim nhưng tôi không đi, tôi ở nhà học tiếng Anh vì tôi học tiếng Anh còn yếu.
54. Thứ năm tuần trước tôi bị ba điểm vì tôi không trả lời được các câu hỏi của thầy giáo.
55. Về mùa hè ngày nào chúng em cũng đi tắm.
56. Cậu thích học môn gì nhất?
57. Bác Hồ sinh ngày 19-5-1890 ở làng Kim Liên, huyện Nam Đà - Tỉnh Nghệ An.
58. Học sinh Việt Nam nghỉ hè vào tháng 6 - 7 và 8.
59. Sau khi học bài và làm bài tập xong chúng tôi cùng nhau đi sông tắm.
60. Mùa hè tới bố chúng tôi sẽ đưa chúng tôi đi TPHCM nghỉ hè. Chúng tôi dự định sẽ đi vào đó bằng tàu hỏa.
61. Khi tôi còn sống ở quê, tôi đã vài lần đi vào rừng kiếm củi.
62. Nó đến sớm hơn tôi 20 phút.
63. Mẹ tôi trẻ hơn bố tôi ba tuổi.
64. Chiếc xe máy này đắt tiền hơn chiếc xe máy kia.
65. Hà Nội ngày nay to hơn và đẹp hơn nhiều so với Hà Nội trước năm 1954.
66. Bằng tuổi Nam nhưng tôi cao hơn Nam một tí.
67. Kỳ nghỉ hè dài hơn kỳ nghỉ tết nhiều.
68. Người ta nói rằng học tiếng Anh dễ hơn học tiếng Nga.
69. Tuần sau chúng tôi sẽ bận nên không thể thăm anh ấy được.



Đã đến lúc anh phải đi nghỉ thôi, đã hơn một năm nay anh chưa nghỉ phép rồi.

Hôm qua thầy giáo bảo chúng tôi ôn lại bài cũ để kiểm tra.

Những phát minh về hóa học của Mendeleev làm cho ông nổi tiếng khắp thế giới.

Nhiều người thích đi du lịch bằng tàu hỏa hơn ô tô, vì đi bằng tàu hỏa tuy chậm hơn nhưng thoải mái hơn và thú vị hơn.

Đi dạo trong công viên vào một ngày thu đẹp trời thật là dễ chịu.

Trước đây chúng tôi thường đi tắm hoặc câu cá ở sông gần làng tôi.

Chúng tôi học tiếng Anh càng ngày càng chăm hơn và càng ngày càng đạt được điểm tốt.

Ba tuần nữa chúng tôi bắt đầu ôn tập để thi.

Cậu đã đợi được bao lâu khi tôi trở về.

Bố tôi vừa mua một chiếc đài do Liên Xô sản xuất năm 1986.

Cái túi này làm bằng gì ?

Trường của chúng tôi được xây dựng cách đây đã lâu, các dãy nhà đều làm bằng gạch.

Chiếc xe đạp của cậu được sản xuất ở đâu ?

Chiếc cặp của bạn có phải bằng da thật không ?

Mùa hè tới cậu có đi đâu không ?

Không. Mình sẽ ở nhà giúp đỡ bố mẹ mình làm việc ở ngoài đồng, mình cũng sẽ đọc sách ôn tập để chuẩn bị cho năm học mới.

Đối với các bạn trai được chơi bóng vào các buổi chiều là một điều rất thú vị.

Tập thể dục vào buổi sáng là rất có lợi cho sức khỏe.

87. Học ngoại ngữ rất quan trọng và rất cần thiết nhưng dễ nản  
vững một ngoại ngữ không dễ dàng chút nào.
88. Bơi lội vào mùa hè là rất thú vị và rất có lợi.
89. Đối với những người mới học tiếng Anh, phát âm các từ tiếng  
Anh rất khó.
90. Chúng ta khó mà làm được bài tập này nếu không có sự giúp  
đỡ của thầy giáo.
91. Trong việc học ngoại ngữ học thuộc lòng các bài khóa là cần  
thiết.
92. Chúng tôi đều hi vọng rằng, chúng tôi sẽ đạt điểm cao trong  
 kỳ thi hết học kì II.
93. Ngôi nhà này cao bao nhiêu ? Nó cao khoảng 15m.
94. Bể bơi này sâu bao nhiêu ? Khoảng 4m.
95. Miếng vải cậu mua ngày hôm qua dài bao nhiêu ?  
- Nó dài 1m3, nhưng rộng 1m1.
96. Căn hộ nhà tớ dài 5m rộng 4m. Diện tích 20m<sup>2</sup>.
97. Tôi vừa về đến nhà thì các bạn tôi tới.
98. Người ta vừa bán hết vé thì tôi ra đến ga.
99. Hàng ngày tôi phải giặt quần áo hết 30'.
100. Sáng nay tôi phải mất 3 tiếng mới làm xong bài tập và h  
bài xong.
101. Bạn thích nghề gì nhất ?  
- Tớ thích nghề dạy học.  
- Tại sao bạn lại thích nghề dạy học ?  
- Vì tớ nghĩ nghề dạy học là một nghề cao quý.  
- Thế còn bạn ?  
- Tớ muốn trở thành kỹ sư.
102. Châu nam cực là nơi lạnh nhất trên hành tinh chúng ta.

3. Chúng ta đang cố gắng hết sức để xóa bỏ nạn mù chữ ở nước ta.
4. Tuy rất bận học nhưng chúng tôi thường tranh thủ thời gian viết thư cho Bố Mẹ, chúng tôi kể về cuộc sống và việc học tập của chúng tôi ở trường nội trú.
5. Mãi đến khi nhận được thư của anh ấy tôi mới biết rằng anh ấy đã chuyển vào TPHCM rồi.
3. Nơi tôi sinh ra nay đã là một thành phố lớn.
7. Tôi sẽ không bao giờ quên ngày đầu tiên tôi cắp sách đến trường.
3. Chúng tôi lên đường ngay khi trời tạnh mưa
3. Nếu cậu không nghe tớ thì sau này cậu sẽ phải trả giá cho việc đó.
3. Tôi thường đi mua sắm ở bách hóa tổng hợp Tràng Tiền một tuần một lần. Ở cửa hàng này người ta bán hầu như tất cả mọi thứ bạn muốn mua. Từ đây đến cửa hàng ấy là 8km. Tôi thường đi xe đạp, thỉnh thoảng tôi đi ô tô. Tôi thường đi mất 45'.
1. Tớ biết chỗ mua thực phẩm rất rẻ.
2. Ở cửa hàng bách hóa tổng hợp có rất nhiều thứ bày bán nên chúng tôi không biết chọn thứ nào cả.
3. Cậu đã quyết định mời ai đến dự sinh nhật chưa ?
4. Chúng tôi không biết làm bài tập này như thế nào cả.
5. Trên đường về nhà tôi đã nghĩ mãi về nghề nghiệp tương lai của mình. Trước đây tôi đã mơ ước trở thành một bác sĩ nhưng rồi tôi nghĩ rằng nhà nông cũng là một nghề cao quý. Tôi đã quyết định học nông nghiệp ở trường đại học để tôi có thể giúp hợp tác xã làng tôi thu hoạch những vụ mùa bội thu.
6. Chúng tôi đã hoàn thành mọi việc trước khi giám đốc đến.

117. Khi chúng tôi ra đến ga người ta nói rằng tàu đã chạy được 15' rồi.
118. Để phát triển kinh tế và nâng cao đời sống nhân dân, chúng ta cần phải trao đổi thành tựu khoa học kỹ thuật và hòa hóa với các nước tiên tiến trên thế giới.
119. Càng đọc nhiều kiến thức của bạn càng rộng.
120. Quê tôi là một làng nhỏ ven sông Hồng. Quê tôi không nổi tiếng về các sản phẩm nông nghiệp mà còn nổi tiếng cảnh đẹp làng quê nữa. Nếu bạn về quê tôi chơi bạn sẽ được đón tiếp nồng nhiệt vì người làng tôi rất hiếu khách.
121. Ước gì nhà trường cho chúng tôi đi tham quan Lạng Sơn.
122. Bạn Phương không những là một học sinh thông minh mà còn có phương pháp học tốt nữa.
123. Chúng tôi vừa về đến nhà thì trời đổ mưa.
124. Không bao giờ chúng tôi lại đồng ý với một lời đề nghị như vậy.
125. Chỉ có bằng cách đi nhiều và đọc nhiều, chúng ta mới có thể nâng cao kiến thức về mọi mặt.
126. Tôi đã gọi điện cho giám đốc mấy lần nhưng hình như ông ấy không có nhà.
127. Mãi đến khi tôi nhận được thư của anh ấy tôi mới biết rằng anh ấy bị ốm.
128. Sáng nay, tôi gọi điện cho họ nhưng không thấy ai trả lời chắc là họ đi vắng.
129. Tôi chưa thể đi chơi hoặc đi làm việc khác khi tôi chưa hoàn thành hết bài tập và dịch xong bài khóa.
130. Các cửa hàng đóng vai trò quan trọng trong đời sống của chúng ta. Chính tại nơi đây chúng ta đã mua thực phẩm, quần áo và các đồ dùng khác.
131. Chúng tôi vừa tìm được chỗ ngồi trên tàu thì tàu chạy.

2. Ngày nay nhờ có máy móc và các tiến bộ khoa học kỹ thuật mà năng suất lao động ngày càng được nâng cao và lao động ngày càng được nhẹ nhàng hơn.
3. a) Chúng ta đã và đang áp dụng những tiến bộ của các ngành khoa học vào việc dạy và học ngoại ngữ. Các phòng học tiếng được trang bị máy móc hiện đại đã và đang được sử dụng rộng rãi để nhằm nâng cao kết quả và rút ngắn quá trình học ngoại ngữ.  
b) Việc ngày nay chớ để ngày mai.
4. Bảo vệ môi trường sống hiện nay là nhiệm vụ cấp bách đối với tất cả các nước trên trái đất.
5. Nhân dân Việt Nam có truyền thống tổ chức năm mới vào ngày 1-1 âm lịch. Đây là ngày lễ lớn nhất trong năm.
6. Vào dịp tết, nhân dân cả nước tích cực tham gia phong trào trồng cây do Bác Hồ phát động khi còn sống. Bác đã dạy chúng ta : "Vì lợi ích mười năm chúng ta phải trồng cây, vì lợi ích 100 năm chúng ta phải trồng người".
7. Mặc dù nhà mình xa trường nhưng mình chưa bao giờ đi học muộn.
8. Khi tôi sống ở quê tôi thường đi dạo vào buổi sáng.
9. Tôi thường hỏi anh tôi nhiều câu hỏi khi tôi mới bắt đầu học tiếng Anh.
10. Nếu tôi nghe lời anh thì mọi chuyện đâu đến nỗi tôi tệ như thế này.
11. Hiện nay con người đang tàn phá rừng nhiệt đới của trái đất một cách nghiêm trọng. Theo ước tính mỗi năm 100.000km<sup>2</sup> rừng nhiệt đới bị chặt phá để lấy gỗ, làm giấy và nhiên liệu cũng như để lấy đất sinh sống và đất canh tác. Phá hủy rừng nhiệt đới chính là phá hủy môi trường sống của con người. Vì vậy các quốc gia cần phải hợp tác để cứu lấy rừng nhiệt đới, nếu không thì sẽ quá muộn.

142. Vấn đề trẻ em hút thuốc đang được mọi người quan tâm chú ý. Trẻ em bắt đầu hút thuốc không hẳn là các em thích hương vị của thuốc. Đó hoàn toàn là cái mốt các em thực sự muốn trở thành người lớn, muốn tỏ ra mình là người lớn. Các em cảm thấy điều đó làm cho các em tự do và độc lập hơn. Các em phải phát động một chiến dịch chống trẻ em hút thuốc. Đây là vấn đề quan trọng. Các bậc cha mẹ và các thầy cô giáo phải hết sức mình để ngăn cản thanh thiếu niên đừng hủy hoại sức khỏe của mình.
143. Giải quyết vấn đề ô nhiễm hiện nay là một trong những vấn đề cấp bách của cả thế giới. Nhiệm vụ trước mắt của chúng ta là giữ cho ô nhiễm dưới mức nguy hiểm. Nhưng giải quyết vấn đề ô nhiễm thôi chưa đủ, xử lý ô nhiễm phải song song với hạn chế gia tăng dân số, quản lý sản xuất và tiêu dùng.
144. Tivi là một trong những phát minh quan trọng của thế kỷ 20. Tivi ngày nay đóng vai trò quan trọng trong đời sống con người. Tivi không những là một phương tiện thông tin quan trọng mà còn là một phương tiện giải trí rẻ tiền thuận tiện và bổ ích. Tivi đem lại cho chúng ta thông tin về những sự kiện đang xảy ra. Hàng ngày ngồi ở nhà xem Tivi thuận tiện hơn là phải đi ra ngoài tìm cách giải trí khác.
145. Nước Anh được coi là quê hương của bóng đá, nhưng hiện nay các đội bóng của nước Anh không phải là những đội mạnh của thế giới, và nước Anh cũng chưa bao giờ đoạt chức vô địch thế giới về bóng đá.
146. Tất cả công nhân của nhà máy dệt công đòi bọn chủ tăng lương và giảm giờ làm.
147. Anh có thể miêu tả tỉ mỉ về những điều anh đã chứng kiến.
148. Mỗi loại phương tiện giao thông đều có những thuận lợi và chế riêng.
149. Cho dù bạn chọn phương tiện du lịch nào đi chăng nữa, bạn cũng nên đi mua vé trước.



150. Công việc này không dễ như chúng tôi tưởng ban đầu.
151. Chúng ta sẽ không tồn tại được nếu thiếu không khí, thức ăn và nước uống.
152. Giá như chiếc ô tô không dừng lại thì cậu đã bị chết rồi.
153. Nếu hôm qua cậu uống thuốc thì hôm nay cậu đã đỡ ốm rồi.
154. Nếu chiến tranh không xảy ra thì mọi sự sẽ khác.
155. Radio và vô tuyến truyền hình hiện nay đã trở thành những phương tiện thông tin đại chúng đóng vai trò quan trọng trong đời sống của chúng ta. Chúng không những là phương tiện giải trí tiện lợi mà lại còn giúp chúng ta theo kịp với tình hình thời sự thế giới và mở rộng tầm nhìn về mọi mặt.
156. Thời gian quý như vàng.
157. Đất nước ta rừng vàng biển bạc.
158. Quê tôi là một làng nhỏ ven sông. Đó là một làng rất đẹp có lẽ là làng đẹp nhất mà tôi từng thấy. Tôi rất yêu quê hương tôi.
159. Phần lớn diện tích nước ta là rừng núi bao phủ.
160. Mặc dù chúng tôi rất mệt nhưng chúng tôi vẫn tiếp tục làm việc để hoàn thành cuộc thí nghiệm trước khi trời tối.
161. Cuộc cắm trại của chúng tôi hoãn lại vì lý do thời tiết.
162. Nhìn chung tôi không thích không khí ồn ào của thành phố. Tôi thích cuộc sống ở nông thôn hơn.
163. Bác Hồ thường gửi thư cho học sinh vào ngày khai trường
164. Hàng tuần chúng tôi thường về nhà vào chiều thứ 7 và trở lại trường vào chiều chủ nhật.
165. Trước khi tôi vào trường này anh ấy đã học ở đây được 12 năm.
166. Bạn tôi                      sẽ không nghỉ hè ở miền biển. Chúng tôi  
\*\*\* cũng thế. \*\*\*

167. Tôi không có thời gian chơi thể thao. Các bạn trong lớp cũng thế.
168. Bạn ấy không trả lời được câu hỏi của thầy giáo mặc dù bạn ấy là học sinh giỏi nhất lớp.
169. Nghe một bản nhạc hoặc đọc một quyển sách hay cũng là một hình thức giải trí bổ ích.
170. Sân bắn là một bộ môn thể thao hấp dẫn đối với những ai có nhiều thời giờ rỗi.
171. Tôi nghĩ rằng ngày mai trời sẽ có mây hoặc có mưa.
172. Ngày mai là ngày chủ nhật tôi sẽ ở nhà giúp mẹ tôi làm vườn hoặc đến thăm một người bạn cũ.
173. Nếu bạn muốn, bạn có thể viết thư cho tôi bằng tiếng Anh hoặc là bằng tiếng Việt.
174. Hôm qua anh ấy không đi học chắc hẳn anh ấy bận hoặc bị ốm.
175. Những điều chúng ta biết là có hạn. Những điều chúng ta chưa biết là vô hạn.
176. Sách là nô lệ của tôi, nhưng chúng cũng là những người bạn tốt nhất của tôi.
177. Người bạn trong lúc khó khăn là người bạn thực sự.
178. Bây giờ anh ấy vẫn chưa đến, chắc là anh ấy bị lạc đường.  
- Anh ấy không thể lạc đường được. Tôi đã chỉ dẫn cho anh ấy cẩn thận và còn vẽ cả sơ đồ cho anh ấy nữa.
179. Cuốn sách ghi những sự kiện và những kỷ lục đáng ghi nhớ của thế giới, Guinness, hiện nay được xuất bản bằng 35 thứ tiếng trên thế giới. Hiện nay số phát hành của sách này là 65 triệu cuốn. Cuốn Guinness 91 giành sự chú ý lớn về vấn đề bảo vệ môi trường sống và nguy cơ đối với hệ sinh thái ngày nay trên hành tinh chúng ta.

80. Học sinh không được tiều cây và hái hoa trong vườn trường và cũng không được viết hoặc vẽ lên tường và lên bàn ghế.
81. Mỗi đất nước, mỗi dân tộc trên thế giới đều có phong tục và tập quán riêng. Đặc biệt là phong tục tổ chức năm mới và các ngày lễ lớn. Nhân dân Việt Nam ta có truyền thống lâu đời là tổ chức năm mới vào ngày mừng 1 tháng giêng âm lịch. Ở nước Anh thì lại khác. Cũng như một số nước phương Tây, nhân dân Anh có truyền thống tổ chức lễ giáng sinh ngày 25-12 là ngày lễ lớn nhất trong năm. Nhưng riêng nhân dân Scotland lại tổ chức ngày tết Dương lịch sau lễ giáng sinh một tuần.
82. Mọi người đều biết rằng trong việc học ngoại ngữ, thực hành là chìa khóa để phát triển cách nói lưu loát. Tất cả những người học ngoại ngữ kể cả những người ở trình độ trên, đều cần thực hành. Một điều thường thấy là người học có thể biết thông thạo nhiều quy tắc ngữ pháp và vốn từ lớn, tuy nhiên, vẫn nói chưa tốt. Do đó người học cần phải biết sử dụng những gì đã học chứ không phải chỉ có khả năng giải thích những điều đó bằng ngữ pháp.
83. Tiếng Anh được sử dụng là ngôn ngữ chính thống ở 44 nước trên TG và ở rất nhiều nước khác, tiếng Anh là ngôn ngữ buôn bán, thương mại, kỹ thuật. Tiếng Anh còn là ngôn ngữ hàng không, ngôn ngữ thể thao quốc tế và nhạc pop.
84. Một trong những đặc điểm điển hình của Luân Đôn là ở đây có rất nhiều công viên. Có khoảng 80 công viên lớn nhỏ ở Luân Đôn. Những công viên này giữ vai trò rất quan trọng vì chúng như lá phổi cung cấp ôxi trong lành cho thành phố. Những công viên này còn là nơi giải trí không thể thiếu được của người Luân Đôn.
85. Tiếng Anh hiện đại bắt nguồn từ tiếng Germanic mà người Anglosaxons mang tới nước Anh khi họ xâm chiếm nước này từ thế kỷ 4 - thế kỷ 7.

186. Một đất nước văn minh, tiến bộ là nước có trình độ dân trí cao. Con người tâm tối, lạc hậu không thể đem lại phồn vinh cho đất nước.
187. Họ đã giành nhiều thời gian trong cuộc họp để tìm ra giải pháp tối ưu cho các cuộc xung đột trong khu vực.
188. Danh ngữ tiếng Anh là một thực thể ngôn ngữ phức tạp có sức tải nghĩa lớn cho câu nói nhịp nhàng cân đối về ngôn điệu. Việc nắm vững cấu tạo của danh ngữ giúp người nghe dễ dàng nhận diện cấu trúc câu và mặt khác giúp ích rất nhiều cho việc xây dựng câu, phát triển về ngữ nghĩa.
189. Tôi muốn mọi đứa trẻ cần được giáo dục tốt.
190. Nghe nói đọc viết cả bốn kỹ năng đều quan trọng nhưng hầu như tất cả những người học tiếng Anh đều thấy rằng nghe và viết là hai kỹ năng khó nhất.

## KEY

1. The newspaper plays an important role in our life.

It is an important source of communication and helps us know what is going on in the country as well as in the world.

2. Nothing makes me happier than listening to the songs which were sung by Elvis Presley.
3. The nearer the noon comes, the hotter it is.
4. The higher the sun rises, the more brightly it shines.
5. The nearer Tet approaches, the busier preparations are. Shops and stores are filled with customers doing their shopping for Tet. The most exciting moment is at mid-night on the new year's Eve when all families fire crackers to see the old year out and the new year in. On the first day of the new year, people visit each other, exchanging good wishes of good luck, good health and prosperity in the new year.

6. Last summer, my family and I went to Do Son for our holiday. It was great because it was the first time I had a sea holiday. Standing in front of the sea I found myself too small. How wonderful down at sea ! The sun like a ball of fire was slowly rising, the higher it went up, the bluer the sea became. I went swimming twice everyday, early in the morning and late in the afternoon. The sound of the waves lapping against the shore at night made me love the sea much more .
7. Our school year begins in September and finishes in May.
8. In summer, the pupils often go to the pioneer-camp by the sea or go to the village for their holiday.
9. Last summer I stayed in my native village for over a month, I helped my parents with their crops .
10. Ha Long Bay is one of the most beautiful spots in our country.
11. Ben Nevis is the highest mountain in England, which is 1343 metres high.
12. (Cornwall in London is the narrowest street in the world. This street is only 3.8m wide.
13. If we learn hard, we will get good marks.
14. Now we can not speak English very well, but we hope that next year we will speak English better.
- 15.- Where will you go this summer ?
  - I am going to go to the sea. It is very interesting to swim in the sea and play on the sand. What about you ?
  - I also enjoy going to the seaside. Last summer I spent my holiday at the seaside, but this year I'll pay a visit to my friend's house in the mountains.
16. He has liked football since he was a boy .
17. Have you ever travelled by air ?

Yes, I have. I went to HCM city by air with my father in summer 1988.

18. I have told my mother everything.

19. How long have you been staying in HN ?

I have been staying in Hanoi for a year since I entered this school.

20. In summer, the days are longer than the nights but in winter, the nights are longer (than the days).

21. Most of us prefer summer to winter. Because the summer holiday is longer than the newyear holiday, we can not stand cold weather.

22. My village is bigger and nicer than it used to be.

23. This pencil is two times longer than my pencil.

24. Our English lessons are more and more difficult.

25. We learn harder and harder when our exam is coming.

26. My father is two years older than my mother.

27. You haven't got a brother, have you ?

28. John can not swim, can he ?

29. Nam was punished for bad marks, wasn't he ?

30. Last year, you spent your holidays in the mountains, didn't you ?

31. When my sister was cooking, I had to water the vegetable in the garden.

32. Aids is the most dangerous disease for people now.

33. You have to do carefully all the homework the teacher gave you.

34. When I go to the doctor's the doctor usually asks me "What's the matter with you ?".



5. The journey to Uncle Ho's homeland left an unforgettable impression on us.
6. Everyday we spend much time speaking English and reading short funny stories in English.
7. When I came into the Zoo, people were standing in a queue for their tickets.
8. When I was watching TV, my friends came.
9. What were they doing when you came ?
0. When we were coming to school, it started to rain.
1. I was eating breakfast at 7 a.m yesterday.
2. What were you doing at 3 p.m yesterday ?
3. I met him when I was coming to the library.
4. We were playing on the play ground when the teacher came.
5. It was March 8th yesterday, we visited our woman teachers and gave them flowers.
6. This summer we will go to Sam Son seaside for our holidays.
7. This winter is colder than that of last year.
8. It is very warm today but I think it will be warmer tomorrow.
9. When we left home, it was raining.
0. Last summer, when we stayed in the country, we helped the farmers do farm work in the field everyday.
1. I have never gone to the sea for my summer holiday.
2. It had been raining the whole night last night.
3. Last Sunday, my friends went to Hanoi to see a film but I did not. I stayed at home to learn English as my English is still poor.
4. I got mark 3 last Thursday as I could not answer the teacher's questions.

55. We have a bath everyday in summer.
56. What subject do you like best ?
57. Uncle Ho was born on May 19th 1890 in Kim Lien village, Nam Dan district, Nghe An province.
58. Pupils in Vietnam have their summer holidays in June, July and August.
59. After learning our lessons and doing our homework, we went swimming in the river together.
60. Next summer our father will take us to HCM city for our holidays. We intend go there by train.
61. When I lived in my village, I sometimes went to the forest to gather wood.
62. He came 20 minutes earlier than me.
63. My mother is 3 years younger than my father.
64. This motorbike is more expensive than that one.
65. Hanoi is now much bigger and nicer than Hanoi before 1954.
66. I am as old as Nam but I am a little taller than Nam.
67. The summer holiday is much longer than the New year's holiday.
68. It is said that learning English is easier than learning Russian
69. Next week we will be busy so we can not visit him.
70. It is time you had a holiday, you have not had a holiday for more than a year.
71. Yesterday, the teacher told us to revise our lessons to prepare for a test.
72. Mandeleev's discoveries in chemistry made him famous all over the world.

. Many people like to travel by train more than by bus, as travelling by train is slower but more interesting and comfortable.

. It is very pleasant to go for a walk in the park on a beautiful Autumn day.

. We used to bathe or fish in the river near our village.

. We learn English harder and harder and get better and better marks.

. In three weeks we will begin to review for tests.

. How long had you been waiting when I arrived ?

. My father had just bought a radio which was produced in USSR in 1986.

. What is this handbag made of ?

. My school was a long time ago, all the rows of houses are made of brick.

. Where was your bike made ?

. Was your case made of leather ?

. Are you going anywhere next summer ?

. No, I will stay at home to help my parents work in the field, I will read books, revise my lessons to prepare for the new schoolyear.

. It is very interesting for boys to play football in the afternoons.

. Doing morning exercise is very good for our health.

. It is very important and necessary to learn languages, but it is very difficult to master well.

. It is very interesting and useful to swim in the summer.

. It is very difficult for English beginners to pronounce English words.

90. It is very difficult for us to do this exercise without our teacher's help.
91. When learning foreign languages it is necessary to learn by heart the lessons .
92. We all hope that we will get good marks in the second term exams.
93. How high is this house ? It is about 15 metres high.
94. How deep is this swimming pool ? It is about 4 metres deep.
95. How long is the piece of cloth which you bought yesterday?  
It is 1.30 metres long and 1.10 metres wide.
96. My flat is 4 metres wide and 5 metres long, it is 20 square metres .
97. Hardly had I come home when my friend came
98. They had hardly sold out the tickets when I got to the station.(Hardly had they sold out the tickets when I got to the station).
99. It takes me 30 minutes to wash my clothes everyday.
100. It took me 3 hours to learn my lessons and to do my homework this morning.
101. What profession do you like best ?
- I like teaching.
  - Why do you like teaching ?
  - Because I think that teaching is a noble profession.
  - And you ?
  - I want to be an engineer.
102. Antarctica is the coldest place on our planet.
103. We have been trying our best to get rid of illiteracy in our country.

4. Though we are very busy learning, we often find time to write letters to our parents to tell them about our studies and our life in the boarding school.
5. I didn't know that he had moved to HCM city until I received his letter.
6. The place, where I was born, is a big city now.
7. I will never forget the first day I went to school.
8. We started our journey just after it had stopped raining.
9. If you didn't take my advice you would pay for it later.
0. I often go shopping in Trang Tien shop once a week. This shop sells almost anything you want. It is 8 km from here to the shop. I usually go by bicycle, sometimes I go by bus, it takes me 45 minutes to get there.
1. I know where to buy food cheaply.
2. There are many things which are sold in the shop, so we don't know what to choose.
3. Have you decided who to invite to the birthday party ?
4. We didn't know how to do this exercise.
5. On the way home, I thought much about my future job. I used to dream of becoming a doctor but when I thought that farming was also a noble job, I decided to learn agriculture in the university, so that I could help my village coop have bumper crops.
6. We had finished everything before the director came.
7. When we got to the station, people said the train had left 15 minutes before. (the train was said to have left 15 minutes before)
8. In order to develop our economy and improve our people's living standards, we should exchange our scientific and

technical achievements and goods with the advanced countries in the world.

119. The more you read the more knowledge you will gain.
120. My homeland is small village on the bank of the Red River it is not only famous for its agricultural produces but also for its beautiful scenery. If you visit my homeland, you will be warmly welcomed as our people are very hospitable.
121. We wish our school allowed us to go to Lang Son for sightseeing .
122. Not only is Phuong a clever pupil but she also has good learning methods.
123. Hardly had we arrived home when it started to rain.
124. Never shall we agree to such a proposal.
125. Only by reading and travelling much can we improve our knowledge in every field.
126. I phoned the director many times but may be he was out.
127. I didn't know that he had been ill until I received his letter
128. I called them this morning but nobody answered, they must have been away from home.
129. I can't go out or do anything else when I have not finished the exercise and translated the text.
130. Shops play a great role in our life. It is here that we buy food and clothes and other things.
131. Hardly had we found a seat on the train when it left.
132. Nowadays, thanks to machines, and scientific and technical advances labour productivity increases more and more improved, and labour gets less and less hard.
- 133 (a) We have been applying the progress of sciences to teaching and learning foreign languages. Language labs equipped with



modern machines have been widely used in order to improve the results and shorten the process of learning languages.

((b) Don't put off today's work until tomorrow.

4. Nowadays, protecting the environment is the urgent task of all countries in the world.
5. The Vietnamese people have tradition of celebrating new year on lunar January 1st. This is the biggest holiday of the year.
6. On the occasion of the New Year, people all over the country take an active part in planting-tree campaign launched by Uncle Ho when he was still alive. He taught us : "for the benefit of ten years we must plant trees for the benefit of hundred years we must educate children".
7. Though my home is far from the school, I have never gone to school late.
8. When I lived in the country I used to go for a walk in the morning.
9. I used to ask my brother many questions when I began to learn English.
0. If I had taken your advice, the situation wouldn't have been worse like this.
1. Nowadays, people are destroying tropical forests of the earth seriously. It is estimated that every year 100,000 square kilometres of forests are destroyed for the supply of woods, for paper and fuel as well as for the residential and farming land. Destroying tropical forests is destroying our environment. Therefore nations need co-operation to save tropical forests, if not it will be too late.
2. The problem of children smoking is being paid attention to by many people. Children start smoking not because they like the taste of cigarettes. That is a fashion. They really want to appear adults, they feel that thing makes them freer and more independent. It is necessary to launch a campaign against the

children smoking. This problem is very important. Parents and teachers have to try their best to stop the young children destroying their health.

143. Nowadays to solve the pollution problem is one of the urgent matters all over the world - our immediate task is to keep the pollution under the danger level. But it is not enough to solve the problem of pollution alone, pollution control must be done together with the population control and control over production and consumption.
144. Television is one of the important inventions of the 20th century. Now TV plays an important role in our life. TV is not only an important means of communication but also a useful and convenient form of entertainment. TV brings us the current events. Everyday, it is more comfortable to stay at home to watch TV than to go out for other forms of entertainment.
145. England is considered the home of football but now football teams of England are not good teams of the world and England has never won the football championship of the world.
146. All workers of the factory went on strike for higher pay and fewer working hours.
147. Could you describe in detail what you have witnessed?
148. Every means of transport has its own advantages and disadvantages.
149. Whatever means of travelling you choose you had better buy your ticket before hand.
150. This work is not as easy as we thought at first.
151. We can't exist without air, food and water.
152. If the car hadn't stopped, you would have been killed.

53. If you had taken medicine yesterday, you would have been better today.
54. If the war hadn't happened, everything would have been different.
55. Now radio and television have become means of massmedia communication which play great role in people's life. They are not only useful means of amusement but also help us to keep up with the news and broaden our out look in every field.
56. Time is gold.
57. Our country abounds in mineral resources.
58. My homeland is a small village on the bank of a river which is very nice. Perhaps it is the nicest village which I have ever seen. I love my homeland very much.
59. The greater part of our country is covered with forests and hills.
60. Although we were very tired we went on working to finish the experiment before it was dark.
61. Our camping was put off because of the weather.
62. In general, I don't like the noise of the city, I prefer to live in the country.
63. Uncle Ho used to send letters to pupils at the beginning of a new schoolyear.
64. Every week we always go home on Saturday afternoon and come back to school on Sunday afternoon.
65. Before I entered this school he had been studying here for 12 years.
66. My friend will not spend his holiday at the seaside. Neither will we.
67. I haven't got time to play sports. Neither have my classmates.

168. He couldn't answer the teacher's questions, though he was the best pupil of the group.
169. Listening to a piece of music or reading an interesting book is also a good form of entertainment.
170. Hunting is an interesting sport for those who have much spare time.
171. I think that it will be either cloudy or rainy tomorrow.
172. Tomorrow will be Sunday . I will either stay at home to help my mother to do the gardening or visit an old friend.
174. If you want, you can write letters to me either in English or in Vietnamese.
174. Yesterday he didn't go to school he must have been either busy or ill.
175. What we know is limited, what we haven't known is unlimited.
176. Books are my slaves, but they are my best friends.
177. A friend in need is a friend indeed.
178. He hasn't come yet, he must have lost his way.
- He can't have lost his way, I showed him the way carefully and drew a map for him.
179. The book which covers all the remarkable events and records of the world, Guinness, is now published in 35th language, in the world. Nowadays, the circulation of this book is 65 million copies. The 1991 Guinness pays much attention to the problem of environmental protection and the dangers to the ecology on our planet nowadays.
180. The pupils mustn't climb trees and pick flowers in the school gardens and mustn't write on the walls and tables, too.
181. Every country and nation over the world has its own customs and traditions, especially customs of celebrating the new year and great holidays. The Vietnamese people have the old

tradition of celebrating the new year on Lunar January 1<sup>st</sup>. Holidays are different in England, Like people in many western countries, English people have the tradition of Celebrating Christmas on December 25<sup>th</sup> as the greatest holiday of the year. But the Scottish have the tradition of celebrating the new year which comes a week after Christmas.

- 32.. Everybody knows that in studying foreign languages practice is the key to fluency. All foreign language learners even the advanced learners need practice. There is a fact that a learner can know a lot of grammar rules and have a large vocabulary, however, they can't speak well yet. So the learner must know how to use what they have learnt apart from the ability to explain grammatical rules
- 33.. The English language is used as the official language in 44 countries and in many others, as the language of business, commerce and technology. English is also the language of aviation, international sports and pop music.
- 34.. One of the typical characteristics of London is that there are a lot of parks here. There are about 80 big and small parks in London. These parks play an important role because they are like lungs which supply fresh air for the city. These parks are places of entertainment which are essential for Londoners.
- 35.. Modern English was formed by Germanic language which was brought to England by the Anglosaxons when they came to invade this country from the 4th century to the 7<sup>th</sup> century.
- 36.. A progressive and civilized country is one with a high level of educational background. Obscure minded and backward people can not bring prosperity to their countries.
- 37.. At the meeting they spent a lot of time seeking the optimum solution to the conflicts in the region.
- 38.. The English noun phrase is a complicated language entity, capable of carrying meaning and giving balance to the

sentence in terms of prosody. A good command of its structure helps the listener more easily identify how sentences are constructed and on the other hand, this helps make utterances more semantic.

189. I want all the children to be well educated.

190. Listening, speaking, reading and writing are all important skills but most English learners find listening and writing the most difficult (ones).



### Phần 3

## TÓM TẮT CÁC HIỆN TƯỢNG NGỮ PHÁP CƠ BẢN

### THỜI CỦA ĐỘNG TỪ

#### Hiện tại đơn giản.

+ Ý nghĩa : chỉ hành động theo thói quen, chân lí (Trong mệnh đề chỉ thời gian và điều kiện, nó mang ý nghĩa tương lai).

+ Cấu tạo : V + S hoặc ES ở ngôi thứ ba số ít.

+ Trạng ngữ thường dùng : sometimes, usually, always, rarely, seldom, often,

Ví dụ :

- She usually watches T.V in the evening.

- The sun moves around the earth.

#### Hiện tại tiếp diễn.

+ Ý nghĩa : diễn tả hành động đang xảy ra tại một thời điểm ở hiện tại

- Đối với động từ chuyển động thể hiện ý nghĩa tương lai của hành động

+ Cấu tạo : Be + V + ing

+ Trạng ngữ thường dùng : Now, at the moment, when ....

Ví dụ :

- My son is listening to the radio now.

- The birds are singing in the trees.

- We are going to Paris on Friday.

Chú ý :

Một số động từ sau nói chung không được sử dụng ở thời hiện tại tiếp diễn : see, hear, feel, taste, love, now, remember, believe, understand, seem, belong, own, possess, suit, fit.

### **Thời quá khứ đơn giản :**

+ Ý nghĩa : Diễn tả hành động xảy ra tại một thời điểm trong quá khứ.

+ Cấu tạo : - V+ ED động từ theo qui tắc.

- V bất qui tắc (xem bảng động từ bất qui tắc )

+ Trạng ngữ thường dùng : yesterday, last week (month, year), ago, when...

Ví dụ :

- Peter went to the cinema last night.

- She arrived at our house yesterday.

### **Thời quá khứ tiếp diễn.**

+ Ý nghĩa : Diễn tả một hành động đang xảy ra tại một thời điểm trong quá khứ

+ Cấu tạo : WAS/WERE + DOING

+ Trạng ngữ thường dùng : At .....o'clock , when .....

Ví dụ :

- At 2 o'clock yesterday afternoon I was working in my office.

- They were having a meeting when we came.

### **Thời hiện tại hoàn thành**

+ Ý nghĩa : Diễn tả hành động đã xảy ra trong quá khứ và kết quả còn lưu lại ở hiện tại.

+ Cấu tạo : Have/Has + Done ( Phân từ hai)

+ Trạng ngữ thường dùng : already, ever , yet, for....., since....., just.

Ví dụ :

- Have you ever broken a bone ?

- Elmer has already visited ten countries in Europe.

- They have been married since 1987.

**Hiện tại hoàn thành tiếp diễn.**

+ Ý nghĩa : Diễn đạt quá trình xảy ra của hành động bắt đầu từ quá khứ, tiếp diễn ở hiện tại và còn có thể tiếp diễn trong tương lai.

+ Cấu tạo : Have/Has + been + Doing

+ Trạng ngữ thường dùng : since..., for.....

**Ví dụ :**

- His brother has been learning English for six months.
- Professor Brown and I have been studying this problem since 1990.

**Hiện tại quá khứ hoàn thành**

+ ý nghĩa : diễn tả một hành động xảy ra trước một thời điểm trong quá khứ, hoặc trước một hành động khác trong quá khứ.

+ Cấu tạo : Had + Done (phân từ hai )

+ Trạng ngữ thường dùng : For..., since..., when..., before..., after..., once..., until..., as soon as ..., by the time .....

**Ví dụ :**

- I didn't go to the cinema because I had seen the film.
- By the time I left the school I had taught that class for ten years.
- Nina had learnt English before she came to England.

**Quá khứ hoàn thành tiếp diễn**

+ Ý nghĩa : diễn tả quá trình xảy ra của hành động đến một thời điểm nhất định trong quá khứ

+ Cấu tạo : Had + been + doing

+ Trạng ngữ thường dùng : For..., since... , when..., before...,

### **Ví dụ :**

- The telephone had been ringing for three minutes before it was answered.
- I asked her what she had been doing since she arrived in England.

### **Thời tương lai.**

+ Ý nghĩa : Diễn tả hành động xảy ra trong tương lai :có thể là tương lai gần hoặc tương lai không xác định.

+ Cấu tạo : Shall/will+ Do (Tương lai không xác định )

Be + Going + To do (Tương lai gần )

+ Trạng ngữ thường dùng :tomorrow, in....., next week(month, year) , when.....,

### **Ví dụ :**

- My mother - in - law will go to Thailand next month.
- In a few minutes they are going to get into the expensive car and drive to the big hotel for the reception.

### **Thời tương lai trong quá khứ.**

+ Ý nghĩa : Diễn tả hành động xảy ra trước một thời điểm trong tương lai.

+ Cấu tạo : - Would+ Do

- was/were+ going + to do

+ Trạng ngữ thường dùng :the next day( week, month, year )

### **Ví dụ :**

- He said he would go there the next month.
- She said she was going to see her father again soon.

### **Tương lai tiếp diễn.**

+ Ý nghĩa : diễn tả một hành động đang xảy ra tại một thời điểm trong Tương lai.

+ Cấu tạo : Shall/will + be + doing

+ Trạng ngữ thường dùng :This time tomorrow(next week, next month, next year) ...

### **hời tương lai hoàn thành**

+ Ý nghĩa : diễn tả hành động sẽ kết thúc trước một thời điểm hoặc một hành động trong tương lai, một gì thuyết hoặc một khả năng.

+ Cấu tạo : Shall/Will + Have + Done

+ Trạng ngữ thường dùng :By....., on....., when.....

Ví dụ :

- It's now 6.30 p.m. ; I shall have finished my work by 7 o'clock
- When I leave the school next week I shall have taught this class for 10 years.
- On December 18th they will have been married for 25 years.

### **Thể bị động.**

+ Cấu tạo : Be + Done (phân từ hai )

Thời	Thể chủ động	Thể bị động
Hiện tại đơn giản	Mr Brown teaches this class	This class is taught by Mr Brown
Hiện tại tiếp diễn	Mr Brown is teaching this class	This Class is being taught by Mr Brown
Hiện tại hoàn thành	Mr Brown has taught this class	This class has been taught by Mr Brown
Quá khứ đơn giản	Mr Brown taught this class	This class was taught by Mr Brown
Quá khứ tiếp diễn	Mr Brown was teaching this class	This class was being taught by Mr Brown
Quá khứ hoàn hành	Mr Brown had taught this class	This class had been taught by Mr Brown





- They had been made to work.
- He was seen to take the money.

### **Phân từ**

Có hai loại phân từ :Phân từ hiện tại tận cùng bằng - ING.

Phân từ quá khứ tận cùng bằng - ED và dạng phân từ 2 của các động từ bất qui tắc.

#### **dụ :**

- He stood there watching the men at work.
- George is busy cleaning the car.
- The ship came into port, its sails torn by the gale.

### **Động từ**

Động từ + ING và được sử dụng như một danh từ :

#### **Ví dụ :**

- The reading of the will took place in the lawyer's office.
- Seeing is believing.
- She likes dancing.
- They are fond of dancing.
- Meeting you has been a great pleasure.
- The swimming pool is empty.

### **Một số động từ hay dùng với danh động từ**

like, hate, avoid, consider, delay, deny, detest, dislike, endure, enjoy, escape, excuse, fancy, finish, imagine, mind, miss, postpone, practice, risk, stop, suggest, understand.

#### **Lưu ý :**

Một số động từ vừa dùng với danh động từ, vừa dùng với động từ nguyên dạng tạo nên một cặp động từ khác nhau về nghĩa :

- Cease doing (ngừng hẳn hoạt động)

to do (tạm dừng hoạt động trong một thời gian ngắn)

→ like doing (Thích làm gì theo thói quen) ~ ~ ~ ~ ~

to do (Thích làm gì tại một thời điểm nhất định)

- remember doing (Nhớ lại là đã làm gì)
- to do (Không quên làm gì)
- Stop doing (Dừng hẳn, cai)
- to do (Dừng lại để làm gì)
- try doing (thử xem)
- to do (Tìm cách, cố gắng)

- Đối với các động từ chỉ nhận thức :hear, see, feel, nếu dùng với danh động từ thì hành động đang xảy ra, nếu dùng với động từ nguyên dạng thì hành động đã hoàn thành.

Ví dụ :

- The buses have ceased running.
- Please remember to bring your book tomorrow.
- I shall never forget seeing the Swiss Alps for the first time
- He stopped to eat.
- I saw him working in the garden.
- It's no use crying over the spilt milk.

#### 4. Lối nói gián tiếp

Khi chuyển từ câu trực tiếp sang câu gián tiếp ta cần lưu ý sự chuyển đổi sau :

a) Đại từ nhân xưng, tính từ sở hữu, đại từ phản thân, đại từ chỉ định phải biến đổi cho phù hợp với ngữ cảnh.

b) Các trạng ngữ chỉ thời gian, địa điểm biến đổi như sau :

today - that day

tonight - that night

yesterday - the day before

last week(month, year) - the week(month, year) before.

tomorrow- the next day (the following day)

next week(month, year) - the next week(month, year)

ago- before/earlier.

here- there

c) Thời của động từ phải thay đổi cho phù hợp, thường lùi lại một nấc về quá khứ.(Chú ý : thời quá khứ của các động từ khuyết



Dạng 2 : IF did/were, Would(could/might/should) .

Dạng 3 : IF had done/been, Would(could, might/should/ought to) have done.

Dạng 4 : Hỗn hợp.

Ví dụ :

- If John works hard, he will pass the examination.
- If the rain stops, I shall go for a walk.
- Unless the rain stops, I shall not go for a walk.
- + If Mary were here, she would know the answer.
- + If the hat suited me, I would buy it.
- + If the grass needed cutting, I would cut it.
- =If I had had the money, I would have bought a bigger house.
- =If you hadn't told me about it, I might have never gone to see it.
- =I should never have done that work, if you had not helped me.

**Chú ý :** Câu điều kiện ở dạng đảo - không sử dụng IF.

- Were John here now he would explain the whole matter.
- Were our train to arrive punctually at 12 o'clock, we should have time to visit your sister.
- Had you asked me, I would have told you the answer.
- I will go, should it be.

### **Câu hỏi.**

Có 4 loại câu hỏi chính :

a) Câu hỏi Yes/No.

Ví dụ :

- Are you a student ?
- Can you speak English ?
- Did you go there yesterday ?

b) Câu hỏi Wh- .

Ví dụ :

- What do you eat ?
- Where does she live ?

- Why did they learn French ?
- How do you know that ?
- Which book do you like to read ?
- c) (Câu hỏi lựa chọn dùng Or.

Ví dụ :

- Can he speak English or Russian ?
- Does she live in the city or in the country ?
- Is your friend a teacher or an architect ?

d) (Câu hỏi láy (hoặc đuôi)

Ví dụ :

- You went there with your brother, didn't you ?
- She learns linguistics, doesn't she ?
- They won't go there, will they ?
- She isn't tired, is she ?

### **Câu cảm thán.**

- + What a beautiful girl she is !
- + How nice you are !

How carefully he drives !

### **Câu phức.**

Bao giờ cũng có hai mệnh đề một mệnh đề chính và ít nhất là một mệnh đề phụ bổ sung và làm rõ nghĩa cho nhau. (Phần gạch chân là mệnh đề phụ)

Ví dụ :

- That is the house which I want.
- The thief ran away when he saw the police.
- The student who answered the question was John.
- Thank you for the house that you have given me.
- Miss Smith, whom you met at our house, is going to marry Mr Brown.
- I know the reason why he was so angry.

- The place where Macbeth met the witches was a desolate heath.
- What you are doing seems very difficult.
- I'm sorry that your brother is ill.
- What surprised me was that he spoke English so well.

## 6. Tính từ và trạng ngữ

- Tính từ thường đi trước danh từ.

Ví dụ :

He is a good man.

They are very beautiful.

- tính từ sở hữu : This is my book.

your

his

her

our

your

their

- Tính từ so sánh:

### a) So sánh bằng : AS.....AS.

She is as tall as her mother.

This boy is as intelligent as my son.

### b) So sánh hơn :

+ Tính từ ngắn : ADJ+ ER THAN

I am shorter than him.

He is bigger than his brother.

+ Tính từ dài : MORE+ ADJ+ THAN

Jane is more important than Mary.

Mr Brown is more helpful than his neighbour.



### **Số sánh cao nhất :**

+ Tính từ ngắn : THE+ ADJ- EST + Noun

They are the richest people in the world.

His house is the biggest one in the street.

+ Tính từ dài : THE+ MOST+ ADJ+ Noun

Paris is the most beautiful city in Europe.

It is the most necessary task in this month.

### **Trạng ngữ :**

- Bổ nghĩa cho động từ.

- Dạng : ADJ+ LY.

Wí dụ:

He runs very quickly.

They drive very carefully.

Chú ý : Một số tính từ có dạng tính từ và trạng ngữ giống nhau  
như : well, hard, fast.

### **Giới từ :**

Có nhiều giới từ khác nhau trong tiếng Anh như : in, on, at, for.... Việc sử dụng các giới từ nói chung là khó, cần phải học thuộc nhiều. Cần chú ý cách dùng của các giới từ đi kèm với động từ như : take up, take in, take off, take after...

### **Mạo từ : A, AN, THE**

Lưu ý các cách nói cố định

Wí dụ : in a hurry ;by bus ;to school ;by chance.....

### **Số và sự hợp thời**

#### **ự hợp thời giữa động từ và chủ ngữ**

The window is open. (Số ít)

The windows are open(Số nhiều)

**Chú ý :** Một số danh từ số ít nhưng lại có dạng ở số nhiều và ngược lại.

- Measles is sometimes serious
- Mathematics is difficult
- The cattle on the farm are very productive
- Our people are complaining

### **Tính từ được danh từ hoá**

- The public are tired of demonstration
- The poor live in the East End and the rich in the West End.

### **Sự hợp thời do khái niệm vị trí cấu trúc**

- The government have broken all their promises
- He wanted to run away, but there was police every where
- No one except his supporters agree with him.
- One in ten take drug
- Either your brakes or your eyesight is at fault
- Either your eyesight or your brakes are at fault
- Neither you, nor I, nor anyone else knows the answer
- Nobody, not even the teachers, was listening
- Every member of that vast crowd of 50,000 people were pleased to see him
- More than one person has protested against the proposals

Phần bốn

**MỘT SỐ ĐỀ THI MẪU**

Ộ GIÁO DỤC VÀ ĐÀO TẠO  
ẠI HỌC QUỐC GIA HÀ NỘI

TRƯỜNG ĐẠI HỌC  
SƯ PHẠM NGOẠI NGỮ

**ĐỀ THI TUYỂN SINH MÔN : TIẾNG ANH**

*Thời gian làm bài : 180 phút*  
*Ngày thi : 05 tháng 07 năm 1994*

ọ và tên thí sinh : Số báo danh : .....

.....

*(không được sử dụng bất cứ loại từ điển nào)*

**Hãy cho dạng đúng của động từ trong ngoặc.**

. Look. It (rain).

. By this time last week, they (visit) Ha Long Bay

. I (ffinish) the book before my next birthday

. he (wake) if you spoke louder

. Some animals (not eat) during the winter

**II. Dùng những cụm từ đã cho, hãy viết lại những câu sau sao cho vẫn giữ nguyên nghĩa của chúng.**

. It'ss wet we can't go out.

It'ss too wet .....

. Maary dances better than Alice does.

Alice doesn't dance .....

. Mrr Jones must sign this letter.

This letter .....

4. A meeting will be held at the town hall on Monday.

There .....

5. Mary lent me 5\$.

I.....

6. "Put that box there, John", she said.

She told .....

7. We do not allow smoking in this cinema.

Smoking.....

8. "Where do you live ?" he asked.

He asked me .....

9. "Would you mind opening the windows, Peter ?"

She requested Petter.....

10. "How about watching World Cup's 94 at my home tonight, boys ?", said Mike.

Mike suggested that .....

### **III. Hãy sắp xếp những câu sau thành bài hội thoại hợp lý**

1. Yes, were catching the 8.30 train.

2. Thanks. Same to you.

3. Thanks, I'll send you a card the moment we arrive there.

4. So you're off to Weymouth on Saturday.

5. I hope you have anice holiday and a good rest.

6. Well, all the best if I don't see you before you leave.

### **IV. Hãy điền vào mỗi chỗ trống một từ thích hợp trong đoạn văn sau**

All the world knows William Shakespeare as one of the greatest poets and dramatists. He was born in a small English (1)... of Stratford - upon - Avon and (2)... in a large family of eight brothers and four sisters, but many of them died very (3)... His

ther, John Shakespeare, made and sold gloves. William learned a (4)... in Stratford. He got married very young when he was )... nineteen, and soon went to London where he worked at (6)... eatree. There he began to write (7)... for the theatre. His plays are good and the people liked them. Now Shakespeare could help s family in Stratford. He (8)... thirty seven plays and some books poems. At the end (9)... his life he came back to Stratford and 0)... there.

### **Bài đọc hiểu.**

People go to live in cities to find work. People go to the cities cause there are schools and doctors for their children. Young ople go to cities because they think life is exciting there. They n make more friends of their own age and live more freely. Some ople go to the city because of trouble at home. They have no land they have quarrelled with their family. For these reasons our ies are growing quickly. But city life is often difficult for these w comers. There are more people looking for jobs than there are os. A place to live and things to eat cost more in a city. In a city ople are strangers to each other and it is easy to be lonely. Cities tractt thousands every year but many later wish they had not left eir willage.

Trả lời câu hỏi sau :

- a. What are the reasons that cause people to go to live in cities ?
- b. What problems do newcomers usually face living in cities ?

Dịch sang tiếng Việt từ "But city life" cho đến hết bài.

**I. Anh (chị) muốn kết bạn với thanh niên ở nước Anh qua thư từ. Để giúp anh (chị) dịch vụ kết bạn ở Anh, Pen-friend service, yêu cầu anh (chị) cung cấp một bản khai về bản thân mình.**

## ĐỀ THI TUYỂN SINH ĐẠI HỌC NĂM 1994

### MÔN : TIẾNG ANH

*Thời gian làm bài : 180 phút*

*Ngày thi : 2-7-1994*

#### ĐỌC HIỂU

**A. Hãy đọc đoạn văn sau đây và tìm một từ thích hợp để điền vào chỗ trống.** Thí sinh không phải chép lại bài đọc.

Trên giấy làm bài thí sinh ghi lại số của từng chỗ trống và từ điền vào :

Ví dụ : 1. Earn

Most of people work to (1)... a living, and produce goods and services (2)... are either agricultural (like maize and mild) or manufactured (like cars and paper). (3)... are such things as education, medicine and commerce. Some people provide goods some provide services. Other people provide (4)... goods and service. For example, in the (5)... garage a man may buy a car or some service which (6)... him to maintain his car.

The work people do is (7)... economic activity. All economic activities together make up the economic system of a town, a city a country or the world. Such an economic system is the sum total of what people do and what they want. The work people undertake either provides what they (8)... or provides the money they can buy (9)... commodities. Of course, most people hope to earn (10)... money to buy commodities and services which are non - essential but provide some particular satisfaction, like toys for (11)... visits to the cinema and books.

*(By Tom Mcarthur)*



Hãy đọc đoạn văn sau đây. Dùng thông tin trong bài đọc để trả lời câu hỏi hoặc hoàn thiện những câu còn bỏ trống.

Ashenden got up and walked slowly to his hotel. It was a small steel, spotlessly clean and his bedroom had a nice view, though on a cold wet day it would have been miserable, in that warm and sunny weather it was grey and pleasing. There were tables in the hall and he sat down at one of these and ordered a bottle of beer. The landlady was curious to know why he had come to stay in that bad season and he was glad to satisfy her curiosity. He told her that he had recently recovered from an illness and had come to London to get his strength back. He was employed by the government and was taking the opportunity to improve his German. He asked her if she would recommend a teacher to him. The landlady was good - humoured and talkative, so that Ashenden felt pretty sure that she would repeat the information he gave her in the proper quarter.

(By W.S. Fowler)

### Đề tập

11. Ashenden stayed at a ... in a room ...
22. Ashenden walked into the hall ...
33. What did Ashenden say to satisfy the landlady's curiosity ?
44. What did Ashenden ask the landlady to do for him ?
55. Why did Ashenden believe that the landlady would repeat what he told her in the proper quarter ?

### Sắp xếp lại trật tự của bài hội thoại sau.

11. Good morning, sir. Can I help you ?
22. Good morning.
33. I've booked a room here.
44. Thank you, sir. That was a single room, wasn't it ?

5. Would you fill in this registration form, please ?
6. Yes, that's right.
7. Yes, sir. What name was it, please ?
8. Here's a pen, sir.
9. I don't seem to have a ...

## **NGŨ PHÁP**

### **A. Cho dạng đúng của động từ trong ngoặc :**

1. For the last six months Brighton (run) its own toy library.
2. The idea first (suggest) by John Lee.
3. Now, the Whitehawk Toy Library (open) every day.
4. Money for the toys (raise) so far from charity.
5. But now the government (offer) money that should cover the expenses.

### **B. Viết lại những câu sau đây theo hướng dẫn trong ngoặc**

1. The children have spent all their money at the fair. (Chuyển sang câu bị động)
2. Paul informed us about his success. (Chuyển sang câu bị động)
3. "Do you feel comfortable here" ? the receptionist asked (Chuyển sang câu gián tiếp)
4. Morris asked what it was about (Chuyển sang câu trực tiếp)
5. She lived in that house. It has been sold (Chuyển sang câu phức dùng từ nối)
6. He never saw it (Chuyển sang câu nhấn mạnh với NEVER ở đầu câu)
7. The people are injured. They go to court to prove their case (Chuyển thành câu phức dùng WHO)

8. This work provides what they want. This work provides money. (Viết lại câu dùng EITHER...OR)
9. John goes home often. He runs out of money. (Viết lại câu dùng SO ... THAT)
10. He showed me a motorbike which seemed to be run over by train. (Viết lại câu dùng LOOK AS IF)

## TIẾT

1. Dùng những từ và nhóm từ sau viết thành câu hoàn chỉnh. (Đổi các động từ sang dạng phù hợp và thêm từ nếu thấy cần thiết)

1. Go/work/by bus//
2. Return/little house/after/years away//
3. If/left home/7 o'clock/(miss)/first bus//
4. My teacher/help/get over/difficulties//
5. Up/that moment/John/(not have)/doubt//

2. Dùng những từ và nhóm từ gợi ý sau đây viết một đoạn văn hoàn chỉnh bắt đầu bằng :

I went to work yesterday as usual.

1. (leave)/eight o'clock//
2. train/to Leeds
3. (reach)/central station/eight twenty
4. bus//to the corner/near/office//
5. (walk) office/(get) to work/nine o'clock//

**ĐỀ THI TUYỂN SINH NĂM HỌC 1995-1996**

**MÔN THI ANH VĂN**

*( Thời gian 180 phút )*

**I. NGỮ PHÁP**

**A. Chọn đúng dạng của động từ trong ngoặc**

Peter 1(do) quite a lot of things in his spare time recently.

He 2(be) to the cinema to see Superman. He 3 (visit) his cousins and 4 (eat) out in a Pazzaria.

**B. Chọn một câu trả lời đúng trong số a,b,c,d và viết vào giấy thi.**

Ví dụ 2.a 3.b ....

1. The boy said that he..... his work tomorrow.

a. Will begin    b. Would begin    c. begins    d. begin

2. Are you.....in sports ?

a. Interested    b. Of interest    c. Interesting    d. Interest

**C. Đổi các câu sau sang dạng bị động.**

1. Egypt exports cotton to many countries.

2. he knows fewer English words than his brother

**D. Viết lại các câu sau dùng từ nối trong ngoặc.**

1. The headmaster spoke to the boys. Their work was below standard. (whose)

2. Trams were made long ago. They are still used in several cities (which)

## . NGỮ ÂM

Tìm một từ có cách phát âm khác các từ kia. Đánh dấu vào trước từ chọn.

- |                |            |           |         |
|----------------|------------|-----------|---------|
| 11. a. Weather | b. Weak    | c. Seat   | d. Beaf |
| 22. a. Sit     | b. Site    | c. Bite   | d. Kite |
| 33. a. Bill    | b. Profile | c. While  | d. Mile |
| 44. a. Assist  | b. Must    | c. Island | d. Mist |

## I. TỪ VỰNG

. Hãy tìm một từ thích hợp để kết thúc mỗi câu sau.

11. It is so difficult. I can't .....
22. This is what he reminds me.....

. Hãy cho các tính từ tương ứng với những động từ sau

- |         |        |            |         |
|---------|--------|------------|---------|
| 11. Eat | 2. Use | 3. Perfect | 4. Talk |
|---------|--------|------------|---------|

. Hãy chọn từ thích hợp để điền vào chỗ trống  
Đánh dấu vào trước từ chọn trong số a, b, c, d.

Give                      Offer

Similar

aa. Same	b. Friendly	c. Exact	d. Shameful
----------	-------------	----------	-------------

Test                      Examination

Annual

aa. Yearly	b. Year	c. Timely	d. Monthly
------------	---------	-----------	------------

. Sắp xếp những từ sau theo chủ điểm chất lượng.

- |          |              |            |         |
|----------|--------------|------------|---------|
| 1. Nures | 3. Policeman | 5. High    | 7. Ugly |
| 2. Large | 4. Architect | 6. Dentist | 8. Good |

#### **IV. ĐỌC HIỂU**

**A. Đọc đoạn văn sau, tìm một từ thích hợp điền vào mỗi chỗ trống.**

When Rod first started his job in Weston, he (1).....in a small hostel. The hostel only (2)..... breakfast, (3)..... canteen(5).....at work. When he finished(4).....

He didn't enjoy (6).....in the hostel very much, so he (7).....to find a flat to rent. He soon found (8).....

**B. Sắp xếp các câu sau thành bài hội thoại hợp lí**

1. Sorry, but I can't tell when I'll finish typing
2. I want it for half an hour only.
3. May I use your typewriter ?
4. Is it so urgent ?
5. I'm sorry. I'll be using it all afternoon
6. It's very urgent. I must get it off today.

#### **V. VIẾT**

**A. Dùng những từ (nhóm từ) gợi ý viết thành câu văn hoàn chỉnh:**

1. I don't usually carry my passport with me / afraid / lose / it
2. Thomas /not let / any one / smoke / his room / usually /

**B. Xem kỹ những tranh sau dùng từ gợi ý dưới đây viết thành một đoạn văn hoàn chỉnh từ 30 đến 100 từ**

Từ gợi ý:

Street, hole, notice, board, blind man, stick, sunglasses, boy, stop, lead, save, danger, good.

Nhóm từ gợi ý:

To lead somebody away from.....



**ĐỀ THI TUYỂN SINH 1995****MÔN : TIẾNG ANH***(Thời gian 180 phút)***NGỮ PHÁP**

Cho dạng đúng của động từ trong ngoặc và viết trả lời vào giấy thi.

Ví dụ : 1.a) ; 2.b)

- 1- Anne assured him that she (finish) it by 11.
- 2- Tom suggested (climb) to the top.
- 3- It's high time that I (must) go.
- 4- I'd rather (stay) at home than (work) for him.

Chọn một câu trả lời đúng trong số a, b, c, d, và viết vào giấy thi, ví dụ : 2.a), 3.b)...

(1) ... is popular sport in Britain and every year hunters (the ople) (2) ... on the results of the races) spend (3) ... money (4) ... it.

- |                     |                 |                   |           |
|---------------------|-----------------|-------------------|-----------|
| a) the horse racing | 2.a) Which bets | 3. a) a lot of    | 4. a) For |
| b) horse racing     | b) Which bet    | b) a great lot of | b) To     |
| c) the horse race   | c) Who bets     | c) Very much      | c) in     |
| d) horse race       | d) Who bet      | d) Very many      | d) on     |

**Đổi các câu sang thể bị động**

- 1- People believed that he was killed by terrorists.
- 2- He doesn't like people laughing at him.
- 3- It's your duty to obey him.
- 4- Someone saw him pick up the gun.

**Đổi các câu sau sang cách nói gián tiếp**

- 1- "Let's stay there till the storm has passed," I said.
- 2- "Don't drive too close to the car in front," said my father.
- 3- "You must not come in without knocking", he told us.
- 4- "You needn't come in tomorrow", he said.

**E. Dùng từ nối trong ngoặc để viết hai câu thành một.**

- 1- You are very young. You can't have a front door key. (too...to)
- 2- It was very hot. You could fry an egg on the pavement. (so...that)
- 3- At last he came. This made us excited. (which)
- 4- I want a kitchen. I can cook. (where).

**II. Chọn một câu trả lời đúng trong số a, b, c, d và viết vào giấy thi. Ví dụ : a) book, b) pen...**

- 1- A doctor who performs operations is a ...  
a) dentist      b) surgeon      c) sergeant      d) physician
- 2- A person who speaks on the radio is a ...  
a) radiator      b) loudspeaker      c) newsman      d) broadcaster
- 3- The employees stopped work in order to get better pay. This means they were on ...  
a) protest      b) strike      c) scorn      d) split
- 4- There are many wild animals at the zoo. The opposite of wild is ...  
a) timid      b) big      c) tame      d) savage

**B. Cho số nhiều của những danh từ sau đây.**

- |             |              |               |                  |
|-------------|--------------|---------------|------------------|
| 1. volcano, | 2. aircraft, | 3. sheep,     | 4. deer,         |
| 5. sky,     | 6. roof,     | 7. passer-by, | 8. woman teacher |

**C. Tìm hai từ gần nghĩa trong các nhóm từ sau**

- 1- Remark, questions, cheques, queues, queries.
- 2- expenses, figures, receipts, estimates, costs.
3. request, report, refer, repay, refund.
4. regulations, decisions, conclusions, discussion, conditions.

**D. Viết dạng quá khứ của những động từ sau:**

- 1- seek, 2- wind, 3- deal, 4- cost, 5- die, 6- fall, 7- catch, 8- choose

**E. Viết dạng tiếp diễn của những động từ sau :**

- 1- begin, 2- open, 3- tidy, 4- die, 5- set, 6- lie, 7- identify, 8- dial

## I. ĐỌC HIỂU

. Điền một từ thích hợp vào chỗ trống và viết vào giấy thi, ví dụ: (1) in, (2) out...

Metric system is a system of weights (1)..... measures used in scientific measurement (2)..... the world, Many countries so use (3)..... metric system for general measurements, (4)..... in North America older system (5)..... measurements are still used. The advantage (6)..... of the metric system is that its (7)..... differ by factor of ten for (8)..... a centimeter is ten millimeters, and (9)..... makes calculations (10)..... easy. Making calculations (11)..... a system where one mile is 1,760 (12)..... and the yard 36 inches is (13)..... more difficult.

The basic units in (14)..... the metric system are the meter (which (15)..... slightly more than a yard) for (16)..... the gram (about 1/28 of (17).....) for weight ; and the liter (just under (18)..... quart) for volume. Smaller and larger (19)..... in the metric system are formed (20)..... adding prefixes to the basic unit. (21)..... prefixes are milli- (22)..... (a hundredth), deci- (a tenth), deka- (ten (23)..... times) and kilo- (24) times).

. Sắp xếp những câu sau đây thành đoạn văn hợp lý bằng cách ghi số, ví dụ, (2), (4), (6)...

(1) It was raining. (2) He was lying on the ground badly injured. (3) An ambulance car was called and the injured man was quickly taken to hospital. (4) On 29 June, 1995 John, a worker was working twenty feet above the ground. (5) He slipped on the wet platform. (6) At 2.45 his work mates found him. (7) He fell to the ground. (8) He fell against the safety rail but it was loose.

## II- VIẾT

Đề 1: Chỉ khi nào chúng ta học tập chăm chỉ, chúng ta mới có thể trở thành con ngoan, trở thành trò giỏi và công dân tốt.

Đề 2: Khi anh ra trường năm 1997 thì tôi mới đang học năm 2 ở Đại học Ngoại thương.

## ĐỀ THI TUYỂN SINH ĐẠI HỌC NĂM 1995

### PHẦN I

#### A. Tìm một từ thích hợp để điền vào chỗ trống trong đoạn văn sau đây :

At ..... (1) when Hamson entered the bar he ..... (2) it was empty ..... (4) then he saw the woman ..... (5) alone at a table in ..... (6) far corner. A woman ? The name he ..... (7) been given - Johnny - suggested a man. He couldn't see her face clearly for she sat with her ..... on the table, holding a glass of beer in her hands and looking ..... (9) it with her bent. She made no ..... (10) that she had noticed him but continued to sit there, silent and still like a figure carved in stone.

#### B. Đọc đoạn văn sau và trả lời câu hỏi sau bài đọc

An Englishman living near Sheffield recently had a most unlucky day's fishing. He was standing on a low bridge when he had the misfortune to knock his of bait into the river. Leaning over the side of the bridge, he tried to look the tin and pull it out of the river. As he did so, his car keys the side of the bridge, he tried to look for the tin, and pull it out of the river. As he did so, his car keys fell out of his pocket and disappeared in the water.

Feeling thoroughly annoyed with himself and his luck, the fisherman learnt over the bridge to try to see where his keys had gone. As he did so, the bridge collapsed and he fell into the river. This was the last straw. The fisherman crawled out of the river and went back to his car. There he discovered that he had locked the doors and could not get in. His anti - thief lock had immobilized his car. There was nothing left for him to do but walk sadly home.

(Câu hỏi :

11. How did the tin of bait get into the river ?
12. When did the fisherman first lean over the bridge ?
13. What made him fall into the river ?
14. How did he get home ? Why ?
15. What do you think is the best title for the passage ?

1. **Sắp xếp những câu sau đây thành một bài hội thoại hợp lý bằng cách ghi số trên giấy làm bài**

1. Hello, Ann. Oh, dear. I'm going out with Tom this evening, and I haven't got anything to wear.
2. That old thing ? No. It makes me look like a sack of potatoes.
3. Could I really ?
4. Well. I'd love to. If you really don't mind.
5. Yes, of course. Would you like to ?
6. What about your red dress ? That's lovely.
7. Hello. Kate. What's the matter ?
8. Well. Why don't you wear something of mine ?

## PHẦN II

A. **Đổi từ in đậm ở cuối mỗi câu sau đây sang dạng phù hợp để điền vào chỗ trống trong câu đó.**

- 1 ..... (1) I'm in favour of the plan, but there are still one or two points that I'm not entirely happy with **base**
2. What a lovely painting ! your daughter must be very ..... (2). Mrs Green **art**
3. English is a ..... (3) easy language for Vietnamese to learn, **compare**
4. The child was punished for ..... (4). **Obey**
5. Librarians spend a lot of their time ..... (5) books. **Class**

B. **Hai từ trong ngoặc ở mỗi câu sau đây là những từ thường bị nhầm lẫn. Hãy chọn từ đúng trong câu và ghi vào giấy làm bài thi.**

1. The dress doesn't fit me. I'll have it (changed/alteređ)
2. Where were you (educated/trained) to be a teacher ?
3. Did you know that Peter had arranged the party (specially/especially) for you
4. I'm afraid the box is full there is no (room/space) for any more suitcase
5. It's much too hot. Let's go and sit in the (shadow/shade) for a while.

### PHẦN III

#### A. Đổi các câu sau đây sang dạng bị động.

1. Did any one ever teach you English ?
2. Someone told him he could no take the examination.
3. Someone will tell her which bus to catch.
4. They saw him walking with his friend before he got lost.
5. They have chosen me to play for the school.

#### B. Đổi các câu sau đây sang lời nói gián tiếp.

1. "I must finish the exercise before I go to bed" he said.
2. He asked : "How far is it to Nam Dinh ?"
3. "It's going to rain tomorrow" he said.
4. "Will you come to my birthday party next week ?" she said.
5. "You'd better go home" they said to me.

#### C. Viếť lại những câu sau đây cho nghĩa của câu không thay đổi .

1. I had better get back to work.

It's.....

2. He really likes cars.

He's crazy.....



3. Who owns that car ?

Who does.....

4. She says that it's good if I make my own decisions

She encourages.....

5. I don't want to go to that party tonight

I don't feel.....

## PHẦN IV

**Dùng những từ và cụm từ gợi ý sau đây để hoàn chỉnh  
bức thư của ông Brown gửi ông Carlson :**

Dear Mr. Carlson,

1. Thank / you / letter / which / arrive / first post/morning

2. Perhaps / you/like / telephone / my secretary / arrange /  
appointment / next week

3. I / be / usually / free / Tuesday / Wednesday / afternoons

4. Think / you / bring / plans / new office block / when / come ?

5. I / be / very interested / see / them

6. Of course / it / be / impossible / say / anything / definite / yet

7. So much / depend / what / it / cost / my company

8. In / meantime / I / look / forward / see you / next week

Yours sincerely

John Brown

### **. Dịch sang tiếng Anh**

11. Việt Nam là một dân tộc yêu chuộng hòa bình nên nhân dân  
Việt Nam đã và đang làm hết sức mình để giữ gìn hòa bình.

22. Kể từ khi công cuộc đổi mới bắt đầu, quan hệ quốc tế của  
Việt Nam không ngừng được mở rộng và củng cố.

# MỤC LỤC

Lời nói đầu	3
Cấu tạo sách	4

## Phần một

### **NHẬN XÉT CHUNG VỀ CÁC LOẠI HÌNH BÀI THI TIẾNG ANH VÀO ĐẠI HỌC VÀ HƯỚNG DẪN CÁCH GIẢI**

A. Ngữ pháp	7
B. Ngữ âm	9
C. Từ vựng	10
D. Bài tập kiểm tra kỹ năng	12
I. Kỹ năng đọc hiểu	13
II. Kỹ năng viết	17

## Phần hai

### **CÁC DẠNG BÀI TẬP**

A. Các bài tập ngữ pháp	23
I. Bài tập về thời của động từ	23
II. Bài tập về thể bị động	41
III. Bài tập về câu gián tiếp	63
IV. Bài tập về các loại câu phức hợp	83
V. Bài tập về giới từ	123
VI. Bài tập về các dạng khác nhau của động từ	150
B. Các bài tập ngữ âm	166
C. Các bài tập từ vựng	182
D. Các bài tập kiểm tra kỹ năng	229
I. Các bài tập kiểm tra kỹ năng đọc hiểu	229
II. Các bài tập kiểm tra kỹ năng viết	408

## Phần ba

### **TÓM TẮT MỘT SỐ HIỆN TƯỢNG NGỮ PHÁP CƠ BẢN**

523

## Phần bốn

### **MỘT SỐ ĐỀ THI MẪU**

537

***Chịu trách nhiệm xuất bản:***

Giám đốc Nguyễn Văn Thoả

Tổng biên tập Nghiêm Đình Vỳ

***Người nhận xét:***

GS Nguyễn Đức Chính

***Biên tập và sửa bản in:*** Đặng Thị Huệ

***Trình bày bìa:*** Phạm Đăng Bình

---

**N LUYỆN TIẾNG ANH**

ã số: 02. 98 - ĐH97- 303. 97

15000 cuốn tại Công ty in Khoa học Kỹ thuật.

xuất bản: 303/CXB. Số trích ngang: 318-KH/XB.

xong và nộp lưu chiểu 11-1997.